

Lucent's



General Knowledge

[downloaded from: shashidhthakur23.blogspot.com](http://shashidhthakur23.blogspot.com)

Lucent's



General Knowledge

[downloaded from: shashidhthakur23.blogspot.com](http://shashidhthakur23.blogspot.com)



GK



GK



CONTENTS

1. Indian History

- I. ANCIENT INDIA** : 1. Harappan/Indus Civilization 2. Vedic Culture 1-126
 3.I. Mahajanapada Period 3.II. Religious Movements 4. Maurya Period
 5.I. Post-Maurya/Pre-Gupta Period 5.II. The Sangam Period 6. Gupta Period
 7. Post-Gupta Period/Vardhana Dynasty. **II. MEDIEVAL INDIA** : 8. Early-Medieval Period I. North India (Rajputa Period) II. South India (Cholas & Others) 9. Sultanate Period I. The Delhi Sultanate II. Vijayanagar & Other Kingdoms 10. Religious Movements I. Bhakti Movement II. Sufi Movement 11. Mughal Period 12. Maratha State & Maratha Confederacy 13. The Advent of the Europeans. **III. MODERN INDIA** : 14. Expansion of British Power (In the context of Bengal, Mysore, Punjab etc.) 15. Economic Impact of British Rule 16. Socio-Religious Movements in 19th-20th Centuries 17. Freedom Struggle I. The Revolt of 1857 II. Moderate Phase III. Extremist Phase IV. The Gandhian Era **IV. MISCELLANEOUS** : Important Dates, Places, Foreign Travellers/Envoy, Abbreviated or Alternative Names, Sayings, Battles, Reforms/Acts, Committees/Commissions, Congress Session and Governor-Generals & Viceroys.

2. World History

..... 127-156

- I. ANCIENT WORLD** : Mesopotamian Civilization, Egyptian Civilization, Harappan Civilization, Chinese Civilization, Iranian Civilization, Greek Civilization, Roman Civilization, Seven Wonders of Ancient World. **II. MEDIEVAL WORLD** : Medieval Europe (Feudalism, Crusades), Arab Civilization, Medieval China, Medieval Japan, Seven Wonders of Medieval World. **III. MODERN WORLD** : Renaissance, Reformation, Geographical Discoveries, Glorious Revolution, Industrial Revolution, American Revolution, French Revolution, Unification of Italy, Unification of Germany, First World War, Russian Revolution, Chinese Revolution, Turkish Revolution, World Depression of 1929-34, Fascism in Italy, Nazism in Germany, Militarism in Japan, Second World War. **IV. MISCELLANEOUS** : Important Dates, Association of places, Abbreviated or Alternative Names, Important Battles.

3. Geography

..... 157-238

- The Solar System, Continents and Oceans, Biosphere, Lithosphere, Hydrosphere, Atmosphere, Latitudes and Longitudes, Different heat zones of the earth, Longitudes and time zones, International Date Line, Motion of the earth, Effect of the tilted axis on day and night, the Atmosphere (composition and layer of the Atmosphere), Weather and Climate, Atmospheric Pressure, Internal Structure of the earth, Rocks, Earthquakes and Volcanoes, Various Landforms (Mountains, Plateaus, Plains, Grasslands, Landforms created by the river system, Landforms created by glacier, Landforms created by the action of wind, Landforms created by the actions of Groundwater), The Indian Sub continent; Position, extent and physical features, Climatic diversity in the Indian Sub-continent, Soil resources of the Indian sub-continent, Agriculture in India, Land use pattern of India, Water resources and their utilization in India, Multipurpose river valley projects, Transport in India,

India-Facts and figures (States and their capitals, Population of India and states, Wildlife sanctuaries and national parks in India, Important Irrigation and power projects, Indian satellites : at a glance), General introduction to Asia, Geography of the Indian subcontinent, Countries with their capitals and currency, River side cities, Wonders of the world, Countries and their main products and industries, Towns associated with some important industries, Famous sites (India), Famous Sites (World), Changed names, Continents earth area, Continents highest and lowest points, Three deepest oceans, Highest mountain peaks (world), Geographical epithets, Important boundary lines, Tribes and their homelands, Glossary

4. Indian Polity and Constitution

..... 239- 318

1. Evolution of Indian Constitution
2. Constituent Assembly and Making of the Constitution
3. Different Sources of the Indian Constitution
4. Important Articles of the Constitution
5. Important Amendments of the Constitution
6. Some Special features of the Indian Constitution
7. Federal and Unitary features of the Indian Union
8. The preamble
9. Lapse of Paramountcy
10. Integration and Merger of Indian States
11. The Union and its Territories
12. Reorganization of States
13. Citizenship
14. Fundamental Rights
15. Directive Principles of State Policy
16. Fundamental Duties
17. Procedure of Amending the Constitution
18. Executive of the Union
19. The Parliament of India
20. Executive of the States
21. Special Position of J & K
22. Panchayats
23. Municipalities
24. The Supreme Court
25. The High Court
26. Inter-State Council
27. Finance Commission
28. Planning Commission
29. National Development Council
30. National Integration Council
31. Inter-State Relations
32. Emergency Provisions
33. Public Service Commissions
34. Election
35. Delimitation Commission of India
36. The Official Languages
37. National Symbols
38. Glossary of Constitutional Terms

5. Indian Economy

..... 319-400

1. Highlights of Indian Economy
 2. Economy and Economics
 3. Characteristics of Indian Economy
 4. Agriculture & Land Development
 5. National Income
 6. Planning
 7. Unemployment
 8. Trade & Commerce
 9. New Economic Policy
 10. Indian Financial System
 11. Indian Fiscal System
 12. Banking in India
 13. Tax System
 14. Industry
 15. Foreign Trade
 16. Miscellaneous Facts
 17. Glossary of Economic and Financial Terms
 18. Some Noteworthy Facts
- ★ Appendix-1 Highlights of Economic Survey 2014-15, ★ Appendix-2 Socio Economic and Caste Census 2011

6. Physics

..... 401-450

1. Unit
2. Motion
3. Work, Energy and Power
4. Gravitation
5. Pressure
6. Floatation
7. Surface Tension
8. Viscosity
9. Elasticity
10. Simple Harmonic Motion
11. Wave
12. Sound Wave
13. Heat
14. Light
15. Static Electricity
16. Current Electricity
17. Magnetism
18. Atomic & Nuclear Physics
19. Electronics
20. Scientific Instruments
21. Inventions
22. Important Discoveries Relating to Physics
23. Various Units of Measurement-Weight
24. Conversion of Units from one System to another System

Indian History

Ancient India

1. Harappan/Indus Civilization (2500 BC-1750 BC)

- The oldest name—Indus Civilization.
- According to archaeological tradition, the most appropriate name—Harappan Civilization (Harappa—the first discovered site).
- According to geographical point of view, the most suitable name—Indus-Saraswati Civilization (the largest concentration of settlement—along the Indus-Saraswati river valley; 80% settlement along the Saraswati).
- The most accepted period—2500 BC-1750 BC (by Carbon-14 dating).
- *John Marshall* was the first scholar to use the term 'Indus Civilization'.
- The Indus Civilization belongs to Proto-Historic Period (Chalcolithic Age/Bronze Age).
- The Indus Civilization was spread over Sindh, Baluchistan, Punjab, Haryana, Rajasthan, Gujarat, Western U.P. and Northern Maharashtra.
- Scholars generally believe that Harappa-Ghaggar-Mohenjodaro axis represents the heartland of the Indus Civilization.
- The Northern-most site of Indus Civilization—*Ropar* (Sutlej)/Punjab (Earlier); *Manda* (Chenab)/Jammu-Kashmir (Now).

The Southern-most site of Indus Civilization—*Bhagatav* (Kim)/Gujarat (Earlier); *Daimabad* (Pravara)/Maharashtra (Now).

The Eastern-most site of Indus Civilization—*Alamgirpur* (Hindon)/Uttar Pradesh.

The Western-most site of Indus Civilization—*Sutkagendor* (Dashk)/Makran Coast (Pakistan-Iran Border).

Capital Cities—Harappa, Mohenjodaro

Port Cities—Lothal, Sutkagendor, Allahdino, Balakot, Kuntasi

Site	River	District	State / Province	Country	Excavators
Harappa	Ravi	Sahiwal	Punjab	Pakistan	Daya Ram Sahni (1921), Madho Swaroop Vatsa (1926), Wheeler (1946)
Mohenjodaro (Nakhlistan i.e. Oasis of Sindh)	Indus	Larkana	Sindh	Pakistan	Rakhal Das Bannerji (1922), Mackay (1927) Wheeler (1930)
Chanhudaro	Indus	Nawabshah	Sindh	Pakistan	Mackay (1925), N.G. Mazumdar (1931)
Lothal	Bhogava	Ahmedabad	Gujarat	India	S.R. Rao (1954)
Kalibanga (i.e. the bangles of black colour)	Ghaggar	Hanumangarh	Rajasthan	India	Amalanand Ghosh (1951), B.V. Lal and B.K. Thapar (1961)
Banawali	Ghaggar	Fatehabad	Haryana	India	R. S. Bist (1973)
Dholavira	Luni	Kutchh	Gujarat	India	J.P. Joshi (1967-68)

7. **Chemistry** 451-496
 1. Substance & its nature 2. Atomic Structure 3. Periodic Classification of Elements
 4. Chemical Bonding 5. Oxidation & Reduction 6. Acids, Bases & Salts 7. Behaviour of Gases 8. Electrolysis 9. Carbon & its Compounds 10. Fuels 11. Metallurgy 12. Important Facts About Some Metals 13. Non-Metals 14. Common Facts

8. **Biology** 497-558
 1. Introduction 2. Classification of Organism 3. Cytology 4. Genetics 5. Organic Evolution, Botany : 1. Classification of Plant Kingdom 2. Plant Morphology 3. Plant Tissue 4. Photo-synthesis 5. Plant Hormones 6. Plant Diseases 7. Ecology 8. Pollution, Zoology : 1. Classification of Animal Kingdom 2. Animal Tissue 3. Human Blood 4. System of Human Body 5. Nutrients 6. Human Diseases 7. Miscellaneous.

9. **Miscellany** 559-630
 1. Firsts in India (Male) 2. Firsts in India (Female) 3. Firsts in World (Male & Female) 4. Superlatives - India 5. Superlatives - World 6. Important Monuments 7. International Boundaries 8. National Emblems 9. National Animals 10. News Agencies 11. Map Lines 12. Political Parties 13. Intelligence Agencies 14. Parliaments 15. Important Signs/Symbols 16. Official Books 17. Newspapers 18. UNO 19. World Organisations 20. UN Secretary Generals 21. International Decades 22. International Years 23. SAARC Years 24. International Weeks 25. Important Days (India & World) 26. India's World Heritage Sites 27. Famous Tourist Spots of India 28. Defence of India 29. Internal Security of India 30. Defence Training Institutions 31. Foundation Day of Some States 32. Research Centres of India 33. Nuclear & Space Research Centres in India 34. Health & Medicinal Research Centres in India 35. Defence Institutes in India 36. Government Industrial Undertakings 37. Musical Instruments & their Exponents 38. States & their Folk Dances 39. Famous Places associated with Eminent Persons 40. Crematorium of Famous Persons 41. Nicknames 42. Great Works associated with Famous Persons 43. Awards & Honours 44. National/Padma Awards 45. Gallantry Awards 46. Jnanpith Awards 47. Dada Saheb Phalke Awards 48. Books & Authors 49. Games & Sports—Olympic Games, Commonwealth Games, Asian Games, SAF Games, Afro-Asian Games, Sports & Related Informations, Cricket & World Cups, Football, Hockey, Tennis, Cups & Trophies, Famous Stadiums, National Games & Sports, Court/Campus/Field, No. of Players in popular Games & Sports 50. National Parks.

10. **Computer** 631-646
 Introduction, Generation of Computer, Some Important Facts related to computers, Hardware, Software, Keyboard Shortcuts (Commands), Glossary, Abbreviations associated with computer, Abbreviations.

- * **Appendix** 647-648
 Census of India 2011 : Figures At a Glance

Site	Archaeological Finds
Harappa	6 Granaries in row, Working floors, Workmen's quarters, Virgin-Goddess (seal), Cemetery (R-37, H), Stone symbols of Lingam (male sex organ) and Yoni (female sex organ). Painted pottery, Clay figures of Mother Goddess, Wheat and Barley in wooden mortar, Copper scale, Crucible for bronze, Copper-made mirror, Vanity box, Dice.
Mohenjodaro	Great Granary, Great Bath (the largest building of civilization), Assembly hall, Shell strips, Pashupati Mahadeva / Proto-Shiva (seal), Bronze Image of a nude woman dancer, Steatite image of bearded man, Human skeletons huddled together, Painted seal (Demi-God), Clay figures of Mother Goddess, A fragment of woven cotton, Brick Kilns, 2 Mesopotamian seals, 1398 seals (56% of total seals of civilization), Dice.
Chanhudaro	City without a citadel, Inkpot, Lipstick; Metal-workers', shell-ornament makers' and bead-makers' shops; Imprint of dog's paw on a brick, Terracotta model of a bullock cart, Bronze toy cart.
Lothal	Dockyard, Rice husk; Metal-workers', shell-ornament makers' and bead-makers' shops; Fire altars, Terracotta figurine of a horse, Double burial (burying a male and a female in a single grave), Terracotta model of a ship, Dying vat, Persian/Iranian seal, Baharainean seal, Painted jar (bird and fox).
Kalibanga	Ploughed field surface (Pre-Harappan), 7 Fire altars, Decorated bricks, Wheels of a toy cart, Mesopotamian cylindrical seal.
Banawali	Lack of chess-board or gridiron pattern town planning, Lack of systematic drainage system, Toy plough, Clay figures of Mother Goddess.
Dholavira	A unique water harnessing system and its storm water drainage system, a large well and a bath (giant water reservoirs), Only site to be divided into 3 parts, Largest Harappan inscription used for civic purposes, A stadium.
Surkotada	Bones of horse, Oval grave, Pot burials.
Daimabah	Bronze images (Charioteer with chariot, ox, elephant and rhinoceros)
>	Mohenjodaro – the largest site of Indus Civilization, Rakhigarhi —The largest Indian site of Indus Civilization.
>	Common Features of Major Cities: 1. Systematic town-planning on the lines of 'grid system' 2. Use of burnt bricks in constructions 3. Underground drainage system (giant water reservoirs in <i>Dholavira</i>) 4. Fortified citadel (exception-Chanhudaro).
>	Surkotada (Kutchh district, Gujarat): the only Indus site where the remains of a horse have actually been found.
>	Main Crops : Wheat and Barely; Evidence of cultivation of rice in <i>Lothal</i> and <i>Rangpur</i> (Gujarat) only. Other Crops : Dates, mustard, sesamum, cotton etc. Indus people were the first to produce cotton in the world.
>	Animals : Sheep, goat, humped and humpless bull, buffalo, boar, dog, cat, pig, fowl, deer, tortoise, elephant, camel, rhinoceros, tiger etc.
>	Lion was not known to Indus people. From <i>Amari</i> , a single instance of the Indian rhinoceros has been reported.
>	There was extensive inland and foreign trade. Foreign trade with Mesopotamia or Sumeria (Modern Iraq), Bahrain etc. flourished.

Imports	From
Gold	Kolar (Karnataka), Afghanistan, Persia (Iran)
Silver	Afghanistan, Persia (Iran), South India
Copper	Khetri (Rajasthan), Baluchistan, Arabia
Tin	Afghanistan, Bihar
Lapis Lazuli and Sapphire	Badak-shan (Afghanistan)
Jade	Central Asia
Steatite	Shaher-i-Sokhta (Iran), Kirthar Hills (Pakistan)
Amethyst	Maharashtra
Agate, Chalcedonies and Carnelian	Saurashtra and West India
>	Exports : Agricultural products, cotton goods, terracotta figurines, pottery, certain beads (from <i>Chanhudaro</i>), conch-shell (from <i>Lothal</i>), ivory products, copper etc.
>	A very interesting feature of this civilization was that <i>Iron was not known to the people</i> .
>	The Sumerian texts refer to trade relations with ' <i>Meluhha</i> ' which was the name given to the Indus region.
>	<i>Shatughai</i> and <i>Mundigaq</i> were the Indus sites found in Afghanistan.
>	The Sumerian texts also refer to two intermediate stations— <i>Dilmun</i> (Bahrain) and <i>Makan</i> (Makran coast). <i>Susa</i> and <i>Ur</i> are Mesopotamian places where Harappan seals were found.
>	The Harappans were the earliest people to produce cotton (It was called ' <i>Sindon</i> ' by the Greeks).
>	As there is no evidence of coins, barter is assumed to have been the normal method of exchange of goods.
>	<i>Lothal</i> was an ancient port of Indus civilization.
>	The Indus Civilization was primarily urban.
>	There is no clear-cut evidence of the nature of polity, but it seems that the ruling authority of Indus Civilization was a class of merchants.
>	The Harappan people didn't worship their gods in temple. No temple in fact has been unearthed. An idea of their religion is formed from the statues and figurines found.
>	The most commonly found figurine is that of Mother-Goddess (<i>Matridevi</i> or <i>Shakti</i>). There is evidence of prevalence of <i>Yoni</i> (female sex organ) worship.
>	The chief male deity was the ' <i>Pasupati Mahadeva</i> ' i.e. the lord of Animals (Proto-Shiva) represented in seals as sitting in yogic posture; he is surrounded by four animals (elephant, tiger, rhino and buffalo) and two deer appear at his feet. There was the prevalence of Phallic (<i>lingam</i>) worship.
>	Thus <i>Shiva-Shakti</i> worship, the oldest form of worship in India, appears to have been part of the religious belief of Harappan people (esp. humped bull).
>	The remains and relics also reveal that zoolatry i.e. animal worship and tree worship (esp. peepal) were in vogue in those days.

- There is the evidence of pictographic script, found mainly on seals. The script has not been deciphered so far, but overlap of letters on some of the potsherds from *Kalibanga* show that writing was boustrophedon or from right to left and from left to right in alternate lines. It has been referred to as Proto-Dravidian.

Note : The oldest script in Indian subcontinent is the Harappan script, but the oldest deciphered script is Brahmi script known from about 5th century BC. Most later Indian script developed from Brahmi.

- Steatite was mainly used in the manufacture of seals.
- Humpless bull is represented in most of the Indus seals.
- Inhumation or complete burial was the most common method of disposal of the dead.
- The origin of the '*Swastika*' symbol can be traced to the Indus Civilization.
- 'Indra is accused of causing the decline of Indus Civilisation' —*M. Wheeler*.
- The Rigveda speaks of a battle at a place named '*Hariyumpia*' which has been identified with *Harappa*.
- The majority of scholars believe that the makers of this civilization were Dravidian.
- Contemporary civilizations of Indus Civilization—*Mesopotamia, Egypt and China*.

2. Vedic Culture (1500 BC-600 BC)

Original Home of the Aryan

- The location of the original home of the Aryans still remains a controversial point. Some scholars believe that the Aryans were native to the soil of India and some other scholars believe that the Aryans were migrated from outside [Central Asia (*Max Muller*)/ Europe/ Arctic region (*B. G. Tilak*)].
- According to popular belief, the Aryans are supposed to have migrated from Central Asia into the Indian subcontinent in several stages or waves during 2000 BC–1500 BC.
- *Boghazkai Inscription* (Asia Minor, Turkey), which mentions 4 vedic gods *Indra, Varuna, Mitra* and *Nasatyas*, proves Central Asian Theory as their homeland.
- The group that came to India first settled in the present Frontier Province and the Punjab – then called *Sapta Sindhu* i.e. region of seven rivers. They lived here for many centuries and gradually pushed into the interior to settle in the valleys of the Ganges and the Yamuna.

Vedic Literature (1500 BC-600 BC)

- It is presumed that the Rig Veda was composed while the Aryans were still in the Punjab.
- Vedic Literature comprises of four literary productions : 1. *The Samhitas or Vedas* 2. *The Brahmanas* 3. *The Aranyakas* 4. *The Upanishads*.
- Vedic Literature had grown up in course of time and was really handed down from generation to generation by word of mouth. Hence these are called *Shruti* (to hear).
- The most important of Vedic Literature are *Vedas*. *Vedas* are called *Apaurasheya* i.e. not created by man but God-gifted and *Nitya* i.e. existing in all eternity.

- There are four Vedas—*Rig Veda, Sama Veda, Yajur Veda* and *Atharva Veda*. The first three Vedas are jointly called *Vedatrayi*i.e. trio of Vedas.
- Of the four Vedas, the *Rig Veda* (Collection of lyrics) is the oldest text in the world, and therefore, is also known as 'the first testament of mankind'. The Rig Veda contains 1028 hymns, divided into 10 mandalas. Six mandalas (from 2nd to 7th mandalas) are called *Gotra/Vamsha Mandalas (Kula Granth)*. The 1st and 10th mandalas are said to have been added later. The 10th mandala contains the famous *Purushasukta* which explains the 4 Varnas – Brahmana, Kshatriya, Vaishya and Shudra. The hymns of Rig Veda were recited by *Hotri*.
- The *Sama Veda* (book of chants) had 1549 hymns. All hymns (excluding 75) were taken from the Rig Veda. The hymns of the Sama Veda were recited by *Udgatri*. This Veda is important for Indian music.
- The *Yajur Veda* (book of sacrificial prayers) is a ritual veda. Its hymns were recited by *Adhvaryus*. It is divided into two parts—*Krishna Yajur Veda* and *Shukla Yajur Veda*. In contrast to the first two which are in verse entirely, this one is in both verse and prose.
- The *Atharva Veda* (book of magical formulae), the fourth and the last one, contains charms and spells to ward off evils and diseases. For a very long time it was not included in the category of the Vedas.
- The *Brahmans* explain the hymns of the Vedas. They are written in prose and ritualistic in nature. *Brahma* means 'sacrifice'. The various sacrifices and rituals have been elaborately discussed in the *Brahmanas*. Every Veda has several Brahmanas attached to it :

<i>Rig Veda</i>	<i>Aitareya and Kaushitiki/ Sankhyan</i>
<i>Sam Veda</i>	<i>Panchvisha (Tandya Maha Brahmana), Shadvinsh, Chhandogya and Jaiminaya</i>
<i>Yajur Veda</i>	<i>Shatapatha</i> (the oldest and the largest Brahmana) and <i>Taittariya</i>
<i>Atharva Veda</i>	<i>Gopatha</i>

- The word *Aranya* means 'the forest'. The 'forest texts' were called *Aranyakas*, because they were written mainly for the hermits and the students living in jungles. The Aranyakas are the concluding portions of the Brahmanas.
- The *Upanishadas* are philosophical texts. They are generally called *Vedanta*, as they came towards the end of the Veda. There are 108 Upanishadas. *Vrihadaranyaka* is the oldest Upanishada.

Literature of Vedic Tradition (600 BC-600 AD)

- Literature of Vedic Tradition (*Smriti*i.e. rememberance literature) comprises of 6 literary works : 1. Vedangas/Sutras 2. Smritis Dharmashastras 3. Mahakavyas (Epics) 4. Puranas 5. Upvedas 6. Shad-Dharshanas.

There are six *Vedangas*:

1. *Shiksha* (Phonetics) : '*Pratishakhya*'—the oldest text on phonetics.
2. *Kalpa Sutras*(Rituals) : a. *Shrauta Sutras/Shulva Sutras*—deal with the sacrifices, b. *Grihya Sutras*—deal with family ceremonies, c. *Dharma Sutras*—deal with Varnas, Ashramas etc.
3. *Vyakarana*(Grammar) : '*Ashtadyayi*' (Panini)—the oldest grammar of the word.

4. **Nirukta** (Etymology) : 'Nirukta' (Yask) based on 'Nighantu' (Kashyap)—collection of difficult vedic words—('Nighantu'—the oldest word-collection of the world; 'Nirukta'—the oldest dictionary of the world).
5. **Chhanda** (Metrics): 'Chhandasutras' (Pingal)—famous text.
6. **Jyotisha** (Astronomy): 'Vedanga Jyotisha' (Lagadh Muni)—the oldest Jyotisha text.
- > There are six famous **Smritis**: (i) **Manu Smriti** (Pre-Gupta Period)—the oldest Smriti text; Commentators: *Vishwarupa, Meghatithi, Gobindraj, Kulluk Bhatt*, (ii) **Yajnavalkya Smriti** (Pre-Gupta Period)—Commentators : *Vishwarupa, Jimutvahan* ('Daybhag'), *Vijnyaneshwari* ('Mitakshara') *Apararka* (a king of Shilahar Dynasty) (iii) **Narad Smriti** (Gupta period), (iv) **Parashara Smriti** (Gupta period), (v) **Brihaspati Smriti** (Gupta period), (vi) **Katyayana Smriti** (Gupta period).
- > There are mainly two **Mahakavyas** (Epics):
1. **The Ramayana (Valmiki)** : It is known as '*Adi Kavya*' (the oldest epic of the world). At present, it consists of 24,000 shlokas i.e. verses (Originally 6,000, Later - 12,000, Finally - 24,000) in 7 Kandas i.e. sections. 1st and 7th Kandas were the latest additions to the Ramayana.
 2. **The Mahabharata (Ved Vyasa)** : The longest epic of the world. At present, it consists of 1,00,000 shlokas i.e. verses (Originally—8,800-Jay Samhita, Later—24,000-Chaturvinshati Sahastri Samhita/Bharata, Finally—1,00,000-Shatasahasti Samhita/Maha Bharata) in 18 Parvans i.e. chapters, plus the Harivamsa supplement. *Bhagavad Gita* is extracted from Bihshma Parvan of Mahabharata. Shanti Parvan is the largest parvan (chapter) of the Mahabharata.
- > The **Purana** means 'the old'. There are 18 famous 'Puranas'. The *Matsya Purana* is the oldest Puranic text. The other important Puranas are the *Bhagavata, The Vishnu, The Vayu and The Brahamnda*. They describe genealogies of various royal dynasties.
- > **The Upavedas** (the auxiliary vedas) were traditionally associated with vedas:
- | Upavedas | Associated with |
|---|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Ayurveda</i> i.e. Medicine | Rig Veda |
| 2. <i>Gandharvaveda</i> i.e. Music | Sama Veda |
| 3. <i>Dhanurveda</i> i.e. Archery | Yajur Veda |
| 4. <i>Shilpyeda/Arthaveda</i>
i.e. the science of craft/wealth (Vishwakarma) | Atharva Veda |
- > There are 6 schools of Indian philosophy known as *Shad-Darshanas*.
- | Darshana | Founder | Basic Text |
|--------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Sankhya Darshana | Kapila | Sankhya Sutra |
| 2. Yoga Darshana | Patanjali | Yoga Sutra |
| 3. Nyaya Darshana | Akshapada Gautama | Nayaya Sutra |
| 4. Vaishesika Darshana | Uluka Kanada | Vaishesika Sutra |
| 5. Mimansa/Purva-Mimansa | Jaimini | Purva Mimansa Sutra |
| 6. Vedant/Uttara-Mimansa | Badarayana | Brahma Sutra/Vedant Sutra |

Rig Vedic/Early Vedic Period (1500 BC-1000 BC)**Geographical Area**

- > Rig Veda is the only source of knowledge for this period.
- > From the names of rivers, mountains (*Himvant* i.e. Himalaya, *Munjavant* i.e. Hindukush) and ocean in Rig Veda we have a clear idea of the geographical area in which Rigvedic people lived.
- > Rig Veda mentions 40 rivers. The *Nadisukta* hymn of the Rig Veda mentions 21 rivers which include the Ganges in the east and the Kubha (Kabul) in the west.
- > Rigvedic people, who called themselves Aryans, were confined in the area which came to be known as *Sapta Sindhu* i.e. land of the seven rivers. Sapta Sindhu comprises *Sindhu* and their five tributaries – *Vitasta, Asikani, Vipas, Parushni & Sutudri* and *Saraswati*.
- > According to the Rig Veda, the most mentioned river—Sindhu, the most pious river—Saraswati, mention of the Ganges—1 time, mention of Yamuna—3 times.
- > **The Dasrajan War (The Battle of Ten Kings)**
According to Rig Veda, the famous Dasrajan war was the internecine war of the Aryans. The Dasrajan war gives names of ten kings who participated in a war against *Sudas* who was *Bharata* king of *Tritsus* family. The ten kings were of the states of Purus, Yadus, Turvasas, Anus and Druhyus along with five others viz. Alinas, Pakhtas, Bhalanas, Sibis and Vishanins. The battle was fought on the bank of Parushni (Ravi) in which *Sudas* emerged victorious.

Polity

- > **The Kula** (the family) was the basis of both social and political organisations. Above the Kula were the *Grama, the Vis, the Jana* and *the Rashtra*. A group of Kula (families) formed a Grama (the village) and so on.
- > Regarding the form of government it was of patriarchal nature. Monarchy was normal, but non-monarchical polities were also there.
- > The Rashtra was ruled by a King or Rajan and the royal descent was by hereditary based on the law of primogeniture. Probably elective monarchy was also known.
- > Very little is known about ministers of the king. *The Purohita* or domestic priest was the first ranking official. He was the king's preceptor, friend, philosopher and guide. Other important royal officials were *Senani* (army chief) and *Gramani* (head of village).
- > The army consisted of foot-soldiers and charioteers. Wood, stone, bone and

Rigvedic Name	Modern Name	Region
Sindhu	Indus	Punjab
Vitasta	Jhelum	Punjab
Asikani	Chenab	Punjab
Vipas	Beas	Punjab
Parushni	Ravi	Punjab
Sutudri	Sutlej	Punjab
Saraswati	Sarsuti	Rajasthan
Drishadvati	Ghaggar	Rajasthan
Kubha	Kabul	Afghanistan
Suvastu	Swati	Afghanistan
Krumu	Kurram	Afghanistan
Gomati	Gomal	Afghanistan

Unit	Head
Kula (the family)	Kulapa
Grama (the village)	Gramani
Vis (the clan)	Vispati
Jana (the people)	Gopa/Gopati
Rashtra (the country)	Rajan

- Metals were used in weapons. Arrows were tipped with points of metal or poisoned horn. References are made to the moving fort (*Purcharishnu*) and a machine for assaulting strongholds.
- The king had religious duties also. He was the upholder of the established order and moral rules.
- Rig Veda speaks of assemblies such as the *Sabha, Samiti, Vidath, Gana*. *Sabha* was committee of few privileged and important individuals. Two popular assemblies, *Sabha* and *Samiti*, acted as checks on the arbitrary rule of kings. Later Vedas record that the *Sabha* functioned as a court of justice.
- Theft, burglary, stealing of cattle and cheating were some of the then prevent crimes.

Society

- The Rigvedic society comprised four varnas, namely *Brahmana, Kshatriya, Vaishya* and *Shudra*. This classification of society was based on the professions or occupations of the individuals.
- Teachers and priests were called *Brahmanas*; rulers and administrators were called *Kshatriyas*; farmers, merchants and bankers were called *Vaishyas*, and artisans and labourers were reckoned as *Shudras*.
- These vocations were followed by persons according to their ability and liking, and the occupations had not become hereditary as they became later on.
- Members of the same family took to different professions and belonged to different varnas as well illustrated by a hymn of the Rig Veda. In this hymn a person says : '*I am a singer, my father is a physician, my mother is a grinder of corn.*'
- The unit of society was family, primarily monogamous and patriarchal.
- Child marriage was not in vogue.
- A widow could marry the younger brother of her deceased husband (*Niyoga*).
- The father's property was inherited by son.
- Right to property existed in respect of moveable things like cattle, horse, gold and ornaments and also in respect of immovable property like land and house.
- The home of the teacher was the school where he taught the particular sacred texts.
- Milk and its products—curd, butter and ghee—formed an important part of the diet. There is also the mention of grain cooked with milk (*Kshirapakamodanam*).
- The meat of fish, birds and animals was eaten.
- The cow was already deemed *Aghanya* i.e. not to be killed.
- Rig Veda prescribes a penalty of death or expulsion from the kingdom to those who kill or injure cows.
- Alcoholic drinks, *Sura* and *Soma* were also consumed.
- Aryans were primarily agricultural and pastoral people who reckoned their wealth in terms of cows.
- Amusements included music, dancing, chariot-racing and dicing. One stanza in the Rig Veda known as the gambler's lament says : '*My wife rejects me and her mother hates me.*'

Religion

- During the Rigvedic time the Gods worshipped were generally the personified powers of Nature. It was believed that divine powers were capable of conferring both boons and punishments on man. Fire was sacred as it was regarded to be the intermediary between man and God.
- There were nearly 33 Gods. Later day tradition classified them into 3 categories of terrestrial (*prithvisthana*), aerial or intermediate (*antarikshasthana*) and celestial (*dyusthana*) god.
 1. **Terrestrial (Prithvisthaniya)**: Prithivi, Agni, Soma, Brihaspati and rivers.
 2. **Aerial/Intermediate (Antarikshasthaniya)**: Indra, Rudra, Vayu-Vata, Parjanya.
 3. **Celestial (Dyusthaniya)** : Daus, Surya (In 5 forms : Surya, Savitri, Mitra, Pushan, Vishnu), Varuna, Aditi, Usha and Asvin.
- *Indra, Agni* and *Varuna* were the most popular deities of Rigvedic Aryans.
- *Indra* or *Purandara* (destroyer of fort) : The most important god (250 Rigvedic hymns are devoted to him); who played the role of warlord and was considered to be the rain god.
- *Agni* : The second most important god (200 Rigvedic hymns are devoted to him); fire god was considered to be the intermediary between the gods and the people.
- *Varuna* : Personified water; was supposed to uphold '*Rita*' or the natural order ('*Ritasayagopa*').
- *Surya* (Sun) was worshiped in 5 forms : *Surya, Savitri, Mitra, Pushan* and *Vishnu*.
- *Surya* (Sun) : God who used to drive daily across the sky in his chariot driven by seven horses.
- *Savitri* (the god of light) : The famous *Gayatri Mantra* is addressed to her.
- *Mitra* : A solar god.
- *Pushan* : The god of marriage; main function—guarding of roads, herdsmen and straying cattle.
- *Vishnu* : A god which covered earth in three steps (*Upakrama*).
- *Soma* : Originally a plant producing a potent drink during courses of *Agnishtoma* sacrifice, could be hemp / *bhang*, called king of plants; identified later with the moon. The 9th mandala of Rig Veda, which contains 114 hymns, is attributed to the *Soma*. That's why it is called 'the *Soma Mandala*'.
- *Other Gods/Goddesses* : *Rudra* (the god of animals), *Dyaus* (the oldest god and the father of the world), *Yama* (the god of death). *Ashwin/Nastya* (the god of health, youth and immortality); *Aditi* (the great mother of gods), *Sindhu* (river goddess).
- Sometimes gods were visualised as animals but there was no animal worship.
- The nature of Rigvedic religion was Henotheism i.e. a belief in many gods but each god standing out in turns as the highest.
- Their religion primarily consisted of the worship of gods with a simple ceremonial known as *Yajna* or sacrifice. Sacrifices consisted of offerings of milk, ghee, grain, flesh and soma.

Economy

- The Aryans crossed the nomadic stage. Yet, great importance was attached to herds of cattle. Various animals were domesticated.
- The vedic people were probably not familiar with cat and camel. Tiger was not known, but the wild animals like lion, elephant and boar were known to them.
- In all probability, very little of trade was there.
- Money and markets were known but they were not extensively used. Cows and gold ornaments of fixed value were the media of exchange. Coins were not known.
- Complexity in producing goods made its appearance. Men of various professions like carpenters, smiths, tanners, weavers, potters and grinders of corn were there.
- The art of healing wounds and curing diseases were in existence. There were experts in surgery. Along with herbs and drugs charms and spells were regarded as equally potential in healing diseases.
- **OCP** (Ochre Coloured Pottery) Culture : 1500 BC-1000 BC.

Later Vedic Period : 1000 BC - 600 BC**Geographical Area**

- During the later Vedic Period, the Aryan settlements covered virtually the whole of Northern India. —*Aryavarta*
- The centre of culture now shifted from Saraswati to Ganges (*Madhya desa*).
- There was mention of more rivers such as *Narmada*, *Sadanira* (modern Gandak), *Chambal* etc.
- The expansion of people towards the east is indicated in a legend of *Satapatha Brahmana*—how *Videha Madhava* migrated from the Saraswati region, crossed Sadanira and came to the land of Videha (modern Tirhut). “He (Agni) then went burning along the earth towards the east, and Gotama Rahugana (the priest) and Videgh Mathava followed after him.” —*Satapatha Brahmana*
- Emergence of *Janapadas*—*Kuru* (Combination of *Purus* and *Bharatas*), *Panchala* (Combination of *Turvashas* and *Kravis*), *Kashi* etc. in Doab region.
- Later Vedic literatures mention Vindhya mountain (Southern mountain).
- Reference to the territorial divisions the later Vedas gives three broad divisions of India, viz. *Aryavarta* (Northern India), *Madhya desa* (Central India) and *Dakhinapath* (Southern India).

Polity

- Large kingdoms and stately cities made their appearance in the later Vedic Period.
- In *Taittiriya Brahmana* we notice the theory of the divine origin of kingship.
- The governmental machinery became more elaborate than before, as a sequel to the growth of the power of the king. New civil functionaries, besides the only civil functionary of the Rigvedic period the purohita came into existence. These were : the *Bhagadudha* (Collector of taxes), the *Suta/Sarathi* (the Royal herald or Charioteer), the *Khasstri* (Chamberlain), the *Akshavapa* (Courier).

- The military officials of the Rigvedic times, the *Senani* (the general) and the *Gramani* (the head of the village) continued to function.
- The period also saw the beginning of a regular system of provincial government. Thus, we find *Sthapatि* being entrusted with the duty of administering outlying areas occupied by the aborigines and *Satapati* being put over a group of one hundred villages. *Adhikrita* was the village official. *Ugras*, mentioned in the *Upanishada*, was probably a police official.
- The popular control over the affairs of the kingdom was exercised through *Sabha* and *Samiti*, as in the Rigvedic period. *Vidatha* had completely disappeared by now.
- Even during the later vedic times, kings did not possess a standing army.
- Judiciary also grew. The king played a great role in administering criminal law.
- The killing of an embryo, homicide, the murder of a Brahmana, in particular, stealing of gold and drinking sura were regarded as serious crimes. Treason was a capital offence.

Society

- As the time passed by *Yajnas* became elaborate and complicated ceremonial leading to the emergence of learned men known as *Brahmanas*.
- And as the Aryans expanded to the east and south, group of people known as *Kshatriyas* emerged to conquer territories and administer them. The remaining Aryans formed a separate class known as *Vaishyas*, a word derived from *Vis* meaning ‘people’. The non-Aryan formed the fourth class known as *Shudras*.
- Nevertheless, these divisions of society were not rigid.
- The institution of *Gotra* i.e. the clan appeared in later Vedic Period.
- The higher castes could marry with the lower ones, but marriage with shudras was not permitted. The idea of pollution appeared in society.
- The earliest reference to the 4 *Ashramas* (the stages of life)—*Brahmacharya*, *Grihastha*, *Vanprastha* and *Sanyasa*—is found in the *Jabala Upanishad*. The Ashrama system was formed to attain 4 *Purusharthas* (*Dharma*, *Artha*, *Kama* and *Moksha*).
- The status of women declined. According to *Aitareya Brahmana* a daughter is the source of misery but a son is the protector of family.
- According to *Maitrayani Samhita* there are three evils—liquor, woman and dice.
- Though monogamy (a man having one wife) was the ideal but polygamy (a man having more than one wife) was frequent.
- Women were prohibited to attend the political assemblies.
- *Yajnavalkya-Gargi dialogue* (*Vrihadarnyaka Upanishada*) indicates that some women had got higher education.

Types of Hindu Marriage (Vivaha)

<i>Brahma Vivaha</i>	Giving the girl to a man with dowry.
<i>Daiva Vivaha</i>	Giving the girl to the priest himself in lieu of his fees.
<i>Arsha Vivaha</i>	Giving the girl to a man after accepting a bride-price.
<i>Prajapatiya Vivaha</i>	Giving the girl to a man without demanding a bride-price.

Gandharva Vivaha Love marriage.

Asura Vivaha Marriage with a purchased girl.

Rakshasa Vivaha Marriage with the daughter of a defeated king or with a kidnapped girl.

Paishacha Vivaha Marriage to a girl after seducing or raping her.

➤ **Anuloma Vivaha**: marriage between a bridegroom from an upper caste and a bride from a lower caste; **Pratiloma Vivaha**—the reverse of Anuloma Vivaha.

➤ **16 Samskaras**: 1. Garbhadhana 2. Pumsavana 3. Simantonnyan 4. Jatakarma 5. Namakaran 6. Nishkramana 7. Annaprashana 8. Chudakarma 9. Karnachhedana 10. Vidyarmbha 11. Upanayana 12. Vedarambha 13. Samavaratana 14. Vivaha 15. Vanprastha 16. Antyesti.

Religion

➤ The earlier divinities **Indra** and **Agni** were relegated into the background while **Prajapati** (creator of the Universe, later known as **Brahma**), **Vishnu** (Patron god of Aryans) and **Rudra** (God of animals, later identified with **Shiva/Mahesha**) rose in prominence. Now **Prajapati** became supreme God.

➤ **Pushana**, who protected cattle in the early Vedic Period now became the god of **Shudras**.

➤ **Brihadaranyaka Upanishada** was first the work to give the doctrine of transmigration (**Punarjanma/Samsara-chakra**) and deeds (**Karma**).

➤ The early simple ceremonial of Rigvedic Period gave place to elaborate sacrifices requiring the services of as many as 17 priests. In the later Vedas and Brahmanas sacrifices (**Yajnas**) came into prominence.

➤ There were two varieties of sacrifices—

1. **Laghuyajnas** (Simple/Private Sacrifices) : Performed by householder e.g. **Pancha Mahayajna**, **Agnihotra**, **Darsha Yajna** (on **Amavasya** i.e. on the last day of the dark fortnight), **Purnamasa Yajna** (on **Purnima** i.e. on the day of full moon) etc.

2. **Mahayajnas** (Grand/Royal Sacrifices) : Sacrifices that could only be undertaken by an aristocratic and wealthy man and the king.

(a) **Rajasuya Yajna** : Royal consecration, which in its full form comprised a series of sacrifices lasting over a year. In later days it was replaced by simplified **Abhisheka** i.e. anointment.

(b) **Vajapeya Yajna** : Drink of strength, which lasted for a period of seventeen days upto full one year.

(c) **Asvamedha Yajna** : Horse sacrifice, which lasted for three days.

12 Ratninas (Satapatha Brahmaṇa)

1. Purohita	the Priest
2. Mahishi	the Queen
3. Yuvaraja	Crown prince
4. Suta/Sarathi	the Royal herald/the Charioteer
5. Senani	the General
6. Gramani	Head of the village
7. Kshata	Gateman/Chamberlain
8. Sangrahitri	Treasurer
9. Bhagadudha	Collector of taxes
10. Akshavapa	Courier
11. Palagala	Friend of King
12. Govikarta	Head of forest department

(d) **Agnishtoma Yajna** : Sacrifice of animals dedicated to Agni, which lasted one day, although Yajnika (performer of Yajna) and his wife spent ascetic life for a year before Yajna. On the occasion of this Yajna, **soma rasa** was consumed.

➤ Towards the end of the Vedic Period, there was the emergence of a strong reaction against cults, rituals and priestly domination; Reflection of this mood is found in the **Upanishadas**.

Economy

➤ Land had now become more valuable than cows. Agriculture began to replace rearing of cattle. The plough was at times drawn by 24 oxen. Manure was known.

➤ Rice, barley, beans, sesame and wheat were cultivated.

➤ Production of goods advanced as indicated by new occupations like fisherman, washerman, dyers, door-keepers and footmen.

➤ Indicating specialisation distinction was drawn between the chariot-maker and the carpenter and the tanner and the hide-dresser.

➤ Considerable advance was made in the knowledge of metals. Mention of tin, silver and iron was made apart from gold and **ayas** (either copper or iron) in the Rig Veda.

➤ Evidence was there regarding organisation of merchants into guilds because of reference to corporations (**Ganas**) and aldermen (**Sreshins**).

➤ **PGW (Painted Grey Ware) Culture** : 1100 BC – 600 BC.

3.1. Mahajanapada Period (600 BC-325 BC)

16 Mahajanapadas (Modern Area)

	Capital
1. Anga (districts of Munger and Bhagalpur in Bihar)	Champa / Champanagari
2. Magadha (districts of Patna, Gaya and Nalanda in Bihar)	Girivraj, Rajgriha / Rajgir (Bimbisara), Patliputra (Udayin), Vaishali (Shishunaga), Patliputra (Kalashok)
3. Vajji (districts of Muzaffarpur & Vaishali in Bihar)	Videha, Mithila, Vaishali
4. Malla (districts of Deoria, Basti, Gorakhpur and Kuishinara and Pawa Siddharthnagar in U.P.)	Siddharthnagar in U.P.)
5. Kashi (district of Varanasi in U.P.)	Varanasi
6. Kosala (districts of Faizabad, Gonda, Bahraich in U.P.)	North Kosal-Sravasti / Sahet-Mahet South Kosal-Saket / Ayodhya
7. Vatsa (districts of Allahabad, Mirzapur in U.P.)	Kausambi
8. Chedi (Bundelkhand area)	Shaktimati / Sotthivati
9. Kuru (Haryana and Delhi area)	Indraprastha (modern Delhi)
10. Panchala (Ruhelkhand, Western U.P.)	North Panchal-Ahichchhatra South Panchal-Kampilya
11. Shurasena (Brajmandal)	Mathura
12. Matsya (Alwar, Bharatpur and Jaipur in Rajasthan)	Viratnagar
13. Avanti (Malwa)	North Avanti-Ujjayini South Avanti-Mahishmati

16 Mahajanapadas (Modern Area)	Capital
14. Ashmaka (between the rivers Narmada and Godavari)	Potana/Patali
15. Gandhara (west part of Pakistan and Afghanistan)	Taxila (near Rawalpindi, Pakistan) and Pushkalavati
16. Kamboja (Hazara district of Pakistan)	Rajapur/Hataka

- Buddhist literature (*Anguttara Nikaya*, *Mahavastu*) and Jain literature (*Bhagavati Sutta*) present a list of 16 Mahajanapadas (i.e., great states) with minor variation of names.
- There were two types of states—monarchical and non-monarchical/republican. Monarchical states—Anga, Magadha, Kashi, Kosala, Vatsa, Chedi, Shursena, Matsya, Avanti, Gandhara. Republican States—Vajji, Malla, Kuru, Panchal, Kamboja, Shakya (Kapilavastu), Koliyas (Ramgrama), Moriya (Pipplivana).

Rise of Magadha

- The political history of India from 6th century BC onwards is the history of struggle between four states—Magadha, Kosala, Vatsa and Avanti for supremacy.
- Ultimately the kingdom of Magadha emerged to be the most powerful one and succeeded in founding an empire.

Reason of Magadha's success

1. Magadha enjoyed an advantageous geographical position in the age of iron, because the richest iron deposits were situated not far away from Rajgir, the earliest capital of Magadha and could be used for making weapons and implements. Iron axes were perhaps useful in clearing the thick forests, and iron-tipped plough-shares ploughed the land better and helped to increase grain production.
2. Magadha lay at the centre of the middle Gangetic plain. The alluvium, once cleared of the jungles, proved immense fertile and food surplus was thus available.
3. Magadha enjoyed a special advantage in military organisation. Although the Indian states were well acquainted with the use of horses and chariots, it was Magadha which first used elephants on a large scale in its war against its neighbours.

Haryanka Dynasty : 544 BC-412 BC

Bimbisara (Shronika) : 544 BC-492 BC

- He was the founder of Haryanka dynasty.
- Magadha came into prominence under the leadership of *Bimbisara*.
- He was a contemporary of *Gautama Buddha*.
- He married the princesses of Kosala (*Kosaldevi* / *Mahakosala*—sister of Kosa King Prasenjit), Lichchhavi (*Chellana*—sister of Lichchhavi Head Chetaka) and Madra (*Khema*—daughter of Madra king), which helped him in his expansionist policy.
- He gained a part of *Kashi* as the dowry in his marriage with the sister of king Prasenjit of Kosala.

- He conquered *Anga*.
- He sent a royal physician, *Jivaka* to Ujjain, when Avanti King *Pradyota* was suffered by jaundice.
- Known as *Seniya*, he was the first Indian king who had a regular and standing army.
- He built the city of New Rajagriha.

Ajatashatru (Kunika) : 492 BC-460 BC

- Bimbisara was succeeded by his son Ajatashatru. Ajatashatru killed his father and seized the throne.
- Ajatashatru followed a more aggressive policy. He gained complete control over *Kashi* and broke the earlier amicable relations by attacking his maternal uncle Prasenjit, the king of Kosala.
- The *Vajji* confederation was Ajatashatru's next target of attack. This war was a lengthy one and tradition tells us that after a long period of 16 years, he was able to defeat the Vajji only through deceit, by sowing the seeds of discord amongst the people of Vajji.
- The three things that played important role to defeat the Vajji—1. *Sunidha* and *Vatsakar*—Ajatashatru's diplomatic ministers, who sowed the seeds of discord amongst Vajjis, 2. *Rathamusala*—a kind of chariot to which a mace was attached 3. *Mahashilakantaka*—a war engine which catapulted big stones.
- In this way *Kashi* and *Vaishali* (the capital of Vajji) were added to Magadha, making it the most powerful territorial power in the Ganges Valley.
- He built the fort of *Rajagriha* and a watch-fort (*Jaladurga*) at a village called *Patali*, on the banks of the Ganges.

Udayin : 460 BC-440 BC

- Ajatshatru was succeeded by his son Udayin.
- His reign is important because he laid the foundations of the city of *Patliputra* at the confluence of the Son and the Ganges and shifted the capital from Rajagriha to Patliputra.
- Udayin was succeeded by *Anuruddha*, *Munda* and *Naga-Dasak* respectively who all were weak and parricides.

Shisunaga Dynasty : 412 BC-344 BC

- *Nag-Dasak* was unworthy to rule. So the people got disgusted and elected Shisunaga as the King, the minister of the last king.
- The most important achievement of *Shisunaga* was the destruction of the Pradyota dynasty of *Avanti*. This brought to an end the hundred year old rivalry between Magadha and Avanti. From then on Avanti became a part of the Magadha rule.
- Shisunaga was succeeded by *Kalashoka (Kakavarna)*. His reign is important because he convened the Second Buddhists Council in *Vaishali* (383 BC).

Nanda Dynasty : 344 BC-323 BC

- The Shisunaga dynasty was overthrown by *Mahapadma* who established a new line of kings known as the Nandas.
- Mahapadma is known as *Sarvakshatrantak* i.e. Uprooter of all the Kshatriyas (Puranas) and *Ugrasena* i.e. Owner of huge army (Pali texts).

- The Puranas call Mahapadma *Ekrat* i.e. the sole monarch. He seems to have overthrown all the dynasties which ruled at the time of Shisungas. He is often described as 'the first empire builder of Indian history'.
- Mahapadma was succeeded by his eight sons. *Dhanananda* was the last one.
- The last king Dhanananda is possibly identical with the *Agrammes* or *Xandrames* of the Greek texts.
- It was during the rule of Dhanananda that the invasion of Alexander took place in north-west India in 326 BC.
- According to Greek writer Curtius, Dhanananda commanded a huge army 20,000 cavalry, 200,000 infantry, 2,000 chariots and 3,000 elephants. It was the might of Dhanananda that terrorised Alexander and stopped his march to the Gangetic Valley.
- The Nanda dynasty came to an end about 322-21 BC and was supplanted by another dynasty known as Mauryas, with *Chandragupta Maurya* as the founder.

Foreign Invasions

I. Iranian/Persian Invasion—Darius's Invasion (518 BC)

- The Achaemenian rulers of Iran (Persia), who expanded their empire at the same time as the Magadhan princes, took advantage of the political disunity on the North-West Frontier of India.
- The Achaemenian ruler *Darius I (Darayabahu)* penetrated into North-West India in 518 BC and annexed Punjab, West of the Indus and Sindh. This area constituted the 20th province (*Kshatrapa*) of Iran, the total number of provinces in the Iranian empire being 28. This province was the most fertile area of the Iranian empire. From this province the empire received 360 talent gold as revenue.
- The Indo-Iranian contact lasted for about 200 years.

Effects of Iranian Invasion

1. It gave an impetus to Indo-Iranian trade and commerce.
2. Through the Iranian, the Greeks came to know about the great wealth of India and this eventually led to Alexander's invasion of India.
3. The Iranian scribes brought into India a form of writing which came to be known as the *Kharosthi* script. It was written from right to left like the Arabic.
4. Iranian influence on the Mauryan Sculpture is clearly perceptible, especially in the bell shaped capitals. Iranian influence may also be traced in the preamble of Ashoka's edicts as well as in certain words used in them.

II. Macedonian Invasion—Alexander's Invasion (326 BC)

- In the 4th century BC, the Greeks and the Iranian fought for the supremacy of the world. Under the leadership of Alexander of Macedonia the Greek finally destroyed the Iranian empire.
- Alexander succeeded his father Philip to the throne of Macedonia. He was then only 20 years of Age.
- From his very childhood he used to dream of world-conquest. He quickly conquered many areas.

- As a preliminary step to conquer India, the Kabul valley and the hilly area of North-West frontier were conquered, and he reached Ohind near Attock in 326 BC.
- The rulers of Taxila and Abhisara submitted but *Porus (Puru)* refused to do so.
- Alexander then crossed the Jhelum by a trick. Porus was defeated in the battle that followed, but Alexander treated him very generously for his bravery. (*Battle of Vitasta* i.e. modern *Jhelum*, Greek-*Hydaspes* – 326 BC).
- This was how the Indians were defeated because of their disunity.
- After a brilliant victory at Sakala, the Greek forces reached the *Beas*. Alexander had to return from this place as his soldiers refused to go any further. The battle of Jhelum and Sakla had opened their eyes and they were afraid of the great Magadhan empire across the Beas.
- After making administrative arrangements for the conquered territory, Alexander marched back in Sep. 325 BC.
- He reached Babylon in 323 BC where he died at the age of 33.

Effects of Alexander's Invasion

1. By opening up both the land and sea routes between India and Europe, it brought both of them closer to each other.
2. Indirectly this invasion made possible the establishment of Indo-Bactrian and Indo-Parthian states, which at a later stage considerably influenced Indian architecture (Gandhara school of sculpture), astronomy, coinage etc.
3. The invasion opened the eyes of Indian politicians to the necessity of creating a unified empire.
4. The date of the Invasion of Alexander is the 'first reliable date in early Indian history' and considerably helps us in solving chronological difficulties.

3.2. Religious Movements (600 BC-400 BC)

Various religious movements viz. Buddhism, Jainism etc. were born and grew up in the Post-Vedic Period known as the Period of Second Urbanisation or the Age of Buddha (6th Century BC to 4th Century BC).

Causes of Religious Movements

1. The vedic philosophy had lost its original purity.
2. The vedic religion had become very complex and had degenerated into superstitions, dogmas and rituals.
3. Supremacy of the Brahmins created unrest in the society and Kshatriyas reacted against the Brahmanical domination.
4. Introduction of a new agricultural economy in Eastern India.
5. The desire of Vaishyas to improve their social position with the increase in their economic position due to the growth of trade.

Buddhism

Buddha's Life

- *Gautama Buddha*, founder of Buddhism, was born in 563 BC (widely accepted), on the vaisakha purnima day at *Lumbinivana* (Rummindehi District, Nepal) in the *Sakya Kshatriya* clan.

- > His father *Suddhodhana* was the republican king of Kapilavastu and mother *Mahamaya* was a princess of Kollia republic.
- > After his mother's early death, he was brought up by his step mother and aunt *Mahaprajapati Gautami*.
- > His father married him at an early age to *Yasodhara* (Princess of Shakya dynasty) from whom he had a son *Rahul*.
- > Four sights—an old man, a diseased person, a dead body and an ascetic—proved to be a turning point in his career.
- > At the age of 29, he renounced home, this was his *Mahabhinishkramana* (great going forth) and became a wandering ascetic.
- > His first teacher was *Alara Kalama* (Sankhya philosopher) from whom he learnt the technique of meditation.
- > His next teacher was *Udraka Ramputra*.
- > At the age of 35, under a pipal tree at *Uruvela (Bodh Gaya)* on the bank of river *Niranjana* (modern name Falgu) he attained *Nirvana* (enlightenment) after 49 days of continuous meditation; now he was a fully enlightened (*Buddha or Tathagat*).
- > Buddha delivered his first sermon at *Sarnath* (Dear park) to his five disciples, this is known as *Dharmachakra Pravartana* (Turning of the wheel of law).
- > He died at the age of 80 in 483 BC at *Kushinagar* (identical with the village Kasia in Kushinagar district of U.P.). This is known as *Mahaparinirvana* (Final Blowing out).
- > *Kanthaka*—Buddha's horse, *Channa*—Buddha's charioteer, *Devadatta*—Buddha's cousin, *Sujata*—the farmer's daughter who gave him rice milk at Bodh Gaya and Other names of Buddha—Gautama (Clan name), Siddharta (Childhood name), Shakya Muni.

Doctrine of Buddhism

Chatwari Arya Satyani (Four Noble Truths)

It is the essence of Buddhism.

1. Life is full of sorrow (*Dukha*): *Sabbam Dukkam*
2. There are causes of sorrow (*Dukha Samudaya*): *Dwadash Nidan/ Pratitya Samutpada*
3. This sorrow can be stopped (*Dukha Nirodha*): *Nirvana*
4. There is a path leading to the cessation of sorrow (*Dukha Nirodha Gamini Pratipada*): *Ashtangika Marga*

Note :

1. Pratitya samutpada is also known as *Hetuvada* (theory of cause-effect) and *Kshanabhanga Vada* (theory of momentariness/impermanence).
2. Desire is root cause of sorrow.
3. The ultimate aim of life is to attain *nirvana*, the eternal state of peace and bliss, which means liberation from the cycle of birth and death.

Great Events of Buddha's Life

	Symbols
Janma (Birth)	Lotus and Bull
Mahabhinishkramana (Renunciation)	Horse
Nirvana/Sambodhi (Enlightenment)	Bodhi tree
Dharmachakra pravartana (First Sermon)	Wheel
Mahaparinirvana (Death)	Stupa

4. *Ashtangika Marga* (Eight fold path) are : right observation, right determination, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right exercise, right memory and right meditation.
5. *Madhyama Marga/ Madhyama Pratipada* (the middle path)—Man should avoid both extremes, i.e. a life of comforts and luxury, and a life of severe asceticism.

Triratna i.e. Three Jewels of Buddhism

1. *Buddha* (the enlightened)
2. *Dharma* (doctrine)
3. *Sangha* (commune)

Buddhist C.	Year	Venue	Chairman	Patron	Result
1st Buddhist Council	483BC	Saptaparni Cave, Rajgriha	Mahakassapa	Ajatashatru (Harayanka Dynasty)	Compilation of Sutta-Pitaka and Vinaya Pitaka by Ananda and Upali respectively
2nd Buddhist Council	383BC	Chullavanga Vaishali	Sabbakami	Kalashoka (Shisunaga Dynasty)	(i) The monks of Vaishali wanted some change in rites. (ii) Schism into Sthaviravadins and Mahasanghikas.
3rd Buddhist Council	250BC	Ashokarama Vihar, Patliputra	Mogaliputta Tissa	Ashoka (Maurya Dynasty)	(i) Compilation of Abhidhamma Pitaka (ii) Decision to send missionaries to various parts of the world
4th Buddhist Council	98 AD	Kundala Vana, Kashmir	Chairman-Vasumitra Vice chairman-Ashvaghosa	Kanishka (Kushana Dynasty)	(i) Compilation of Mahavibha sha shastra (Sanskrit comment on Tripitaka) (ii) the division of Buddhists into Hinayanists and Mahayanists

Buddhist Literature

I. Pali Texts

Tripitaka : Pitaka literally means 'basket' and it was called so, because the original texts were written on palm-leaves and kept in baskets. *Sutta Pitaka*—Buddha's sayings, *Vinay Pitaka*—monastic code, *Abhidhamma pitaka*—religious discourses of Buddha (Abhidhamma Pitaka comprises of Dighgha Nikaya, Majhim Nikaya, Sanyukta Nikaya, Anguttar Nikaya and Khuddak/ Kshudraka Nikaya).

Milindapanho (i.e. Questions of Milinda)—a dialogue between *Milinda* (identical with Indo-Greek ruler *Menander*) and Buddhist saint *Nagasena*. *Dipavamsha* and *Mahavamsha*—The great chronicles of Sri Lanka.

II. Sanskrit Texts

Buddha Charita, Saundarananda, Sutralankar, Sariputra Prakaran and Vajra Suchi—*Ashwagosha*; Mahavibhasha Shastra—*Vasumitra*; Visudhamagga, Atthakathayen and Sumangalvasini—*Buddhagosha*; Madhyamika Karika and Prajnaparimita Karika—*Nagarjuna* etc.

Sects of Buddhism

Hinayana (i.e. the Lesser Vehicle): 1. Its followers believed in the original teaching of Buddha 2. They sought individual salvation through self-discipline and meditation. 3. They did not believe in idol-worship. 4. They favoured *Pali* language. 5. It is known as 'Southern Buddhist Religion', because it prevailed

in the South of India, e.g. Sri Lanka, Burma (Myanmar), Syam (Thailand), Java etc. 6. There were two subsects of Hinayana—*Vaibhasika* and *Sautantrika*.

Mahayana (i.e. the Greater Vehicle) : 1. Its followers believed in the heavenliness of Buddha 2. They sought the salvation of all through the grace and help of Buddha and Bodhisatva 3. They believed in idol-worship 4. They favoured *Sanskrit* language 5. It is known as 'Northern Buddhist Religion', because it prevailed in the North of India, e.g. China, Korea, Japan, etc. 6. There were two subsects of Mahayana—*Madhyamika/ Shunyavada* (founder—Nagarjuna) and *Yogachar/ Vijnanavada* (founder—Maitreyanath and his disciple Asanga).

Vajrayana: 1. Its followers believed that salvation could be best attained by acquiring the magical power, which they called *Vajra*. 2. The chief divinities of this new sect were *the Taras*. 3. It became popular in Eastern India, particularly Bengal and Bihar.

Bodhisattvas

1. **Vajrapani** : like Indra, he holds a thunderbolt, foe of sin and evil.
2. **Avlokitesvara** (the lord who looks down) also called *Padmapani* (the lotus bearer) : kind-hearted.
3. **Manjushri** (Stimulator of understanding) : He holds a book describing 10 paramitas (spiritual perfections).
4. **Maitreya** : The future Buddha.
5. **Kshitigriha** : guardian of purgatories.
6. **Amitabha/ Amitayusha** : Buddha of heaven.

Sacred Shrines

- Lumbini, Bodh Gaya, Sarnath and Kusinagar, where the four principal events of the Buddha's life, namely Birth, Enlightenment, First Sermon and Death took place. To these are added four places Sravasti, Rajgriha, Vaishali and Sankasya—these eight places have all along been considered as the eight holy places (Ashtasthanas).
- Other centres of Buddhism in Ancient India—Amaravati and Nagarjunikonda in Andhra Pradesh; Nalanda in Bihar; Junagadh and Vallabhi in Gujarat; Sanchi and Bharhut in M.P.; Ajanta-Ellora in Maharashtra; Dhaulagiri in Orissa; Kannauj, Kaushambi and Mathura in U.P.; and Jagadala and Somapuri in West Bengal.
- Buddhist architecture was developed in three forms :
 1. **Stupa**—relics of the Buddha or some prominent Buddhist monks are preserved
 2. **Chaitya**—prayer hall
 3. **Vihara**—residence

Buddhist Universities	Place	Founder
Nalanda	Badagaon, Bihar	Kumargupta I (Gupta ruler)
Odantpuri	Biharsharif, Bihar	Gopala (Pala ruler)
Vikramshila	Bhagalpur, Bihar	Dharmapala (Pala ruler)
Somapuri	North Bengal	Dharmapala (Pala ruler)
Jagadal	Bengal	Ramapala (Pala ruler)
Vallabhi	Gujarat	Bhattarka (Maitrak ruler)

Royal Patrons : Bimbisara and Ajatashatru (*Magadhan ruler*), Prasenjit (*Kosala ruler*), Udayan (*Vatsa ruler*), Pradyota (*Avanti ruler*), Ashoka and Dasharatha (*Mauryan ruler*), Milinda/Menander (*Indo-Greek ruler*), Kanishka (*Kushana ruler*), Harshavardhana (*Vardhana ruler*), Gopala, Dharmapala and Rampala (*Pala rulers*).

Note:

1. Ashoka, the greatest patron of Buddhism, called 3rd Buddhist council and sent mission, comprising of his son *Mahendra* and his daughter *Sanghamitra* to Sri Lanka.
2. Kanishka called 4th Buddhist council and sent mission to China, Korea and Japan.
3. Palas of Bengal and Bihar were last great patrons of Buddhism.

Jainism

- According to Jain tradition there were 24 *Thirthankaras* (literally Ford maker, across the stream of existence), the first being Rishabhadeva/Adinatha and last being Mahavira.
- The *Vishnu Purana* and the *Bhagavat Purana* describe Rishabha as an incarnation of Narayana.
- The names of two Jain Tirthankaras—*Rishabha* and *Arishtanemi*—are found in the *Rig Veda*.
- Historicity of early 22 Thirthankaras is ambiguous.
- We have historical proof of only the last two—*Parshwanath* (23rd) and *Mahavira* (24th).
- *Parshwanath* was a prince of Benaras who abandoned the throne and led the life of a hermit and died at *Sammet-Shikar/ Parshwanath (Parasanath)* Hill, *Giridih, Jharkhand*. His four main teachings (*Chaturthi*) were 1. *Ahimsa* (non-injury) 2. *Satya* (non-lying) 3. *Asteya* (non stealing) 4. *Aparigraha* (non-possession). *Mahavira* adopted all these four teachings and added one more, that is *Brahmacharya* (Chastity) to it.

Mahavira's Life

- Mahavira was born in 540 BC in a village *Kundgrama* near *Vaishali* in *Bihar*.
- His father *Siddhartha* was the head of the *Jnathrika Kshetriya* clan under Vajji of Vaishali and his mother *Trishala* was the sister of Chetaka, the king of Vaishali. Mahavira was also related to Bimbisara, the ruler of Magadha, who had married Chellana, the daughter of Chetaka.
- Mahavira was married to *Yashoda* (daughter of Samavira king) and a

24 Tirthankaras		
Name	Symbol	
1. Rishabha	Bull	
2. Ajitnath	Elephant	
3. Sambharnath	Horse	
4. Abhiaandam	Monkey	
5. Sumatinath	Curlew	
6. Padmaprabhu	Red Lotus	
7. Suparswanath	Swastik	
8. Chandraji Prabhu	Moon	
9. Suvidhinath	Crocodile	
10. Shitalnath	Srivatsa	
11. Shreganath	Rhinoceros	
12. Vasupujya	Buffalo	
13. Vimalnath	Boar	
14. Anantnath	Falcon	
15. Dharmanath	Vajra	
16. Shantinath	Deer	
17. Kuntunath	He-Goat	
18. Armath	Fish	
19. Mallinath	Waterpot	
20. Muniswasth	Tortoise	
21. Neminath	Blue Lotus	
22. Arishtanemi	Conch Shell	
23. Parshwanath	Serpent	
24. Mahavira	Lion	

- produced a daughter *Anonja Priyadarshini* whose husband *Jamali*, became the first disciple of Mahavira.
- At the age of 30, after the death of his father, he renounced his family, became an ascetic and proceeded in search of truth. He was accompanied by *Makkha Gosala* but later due to some differences Gosala left him and founded *Ajivika* sect.
 - At the age of 42, under a sal tree at *Jambhikagrama* on the bank of river *Rijupalika*, Mahavira attained *Kaivalya* (supreme knowledge).
 - From now onwards he was called *Kevalin* (perfect learned), *Jina* or *Jitendriya* (one who conquered his senses), *Nigrantha* (free from all bonds), *Arhant* (blessed one) and *Mahavira* (the brave) and his followers were named Jain.
 - He delivered his first sermon at *Pava* to his 11 disciples (known as *11 Gandharas/Gandharvas*). Later, he founded a *Jain Sangha* (Jain commune) at Pava.
 - At the Age of 72 in 468 BC, he passed away at *Pavapuri* near *Biharsharif* in Bihar. *Sudharma* only one of 11 Ganadharas who survived after the death of Mahavira.

Doctrines of Jainism

Triratna i.e. Three Gems of Jainism

The aim of existence is to attain through the triratna of

1. *Samyak Shradha/ Viswas* (Right faith) : It is the belief in Thirthankaras.
2. *Samyak Jnan* (Right knowledge) : It is the knowledge of the Jain creed.
3. *Samyak Karma/ Acharana* (Right action/conduct) : It is the practice of the 5 vows of Jainism.

Pancha Mahavaratas i.e. Five Vows of Jainism

Five vows of Jainism are : 1. *Ahimsa* (non-injury) 2. *Satya* (non-lying) 3. *Asteysi* (non-stealing) 4. *Aparigraha* (non-possession) 5. *Brahmacharya* (chastity). The first four vows were laid down by Parshwanath. The fifth one was added by Mahavira.

Types of Knowledge

There are 5 types of knowledge : 1. *Mati jnana*—Perception through activity of sense organs, including the mind 2. *Shruta jnana*—Knowledge revealed by scriptures 3. *Avadhi jnana*—Clairvoyant perception 4. *Manahparyaya jnana*—Telepathic knowledge 5. *Keval jnana*—Temporal knowledge or Omniscience.

Syadvada i.e. The Theory of May Be/Perhaps : All our judgements are necessarily relative, conditional and limited. According to Syadvada seven modes of prediction (*Saptabhangi Nayavada*) are possible. Absolute affirmation and absolute negation both are wrong. All judgements are conditional. Syadvada is also known as *Anekantvada* i.e. the theory of plurality or multi-sidedness.

The Principles of Jainism as Preached by Mahavira : 1. Rejected the authority of the Vedas and vedic rituals 2. Did not believe in the existence of God 3. Believed in Karma and the transmigration of soul 4. Laid great emphasis on equality.

Jain Council	Year	Venue	Chairman	Patron	Result
1st	300 BC	Patliputra	Sthulabhadra	Chandragupta Maurya	Compilation of 12 Angas.
2nd	512 AD	Vallabhi	Devardhi Kshmasramana	---	Final compilation of 12 Angas and 12 Upangas.

Jain Literature

- The sacred literature of the Svetambaras is written in a type of *Prakrit* called *Ardhamagadhi Prakrit*, and may be classified as follows : 1. 12 *Angas* 2. 12 *Upangas* 3. 10 *Parikarmas* 4. 6 *Chchedasutras* 5. 4 *Mulasutras* 6. 2 *Sutra-Granthis*.

Note: 14 *Purvas/Parvas*—It is the part of 12 Angas and the oldest text of Mahavira's preachings.

- Besides this, the important Jain texts are :
 1. *Kalpasutra* (in Sanskrit)—Bhadrabahu
 2. *Bhadrabahu Charita*
 3. *Parishishta Parvan* (an appendix of *Trishashthishalaka Purush*)—Hemchandra.

Sects of Jainism

- In 298 BC, there was a serious famine in Magadha (South Bihar) leading to a great exodus of many Jain monks to the Deccan and South India (*Shravanbelgola*) along with *Bhadrabahu* and *Chandragupta Maurya*. They returned back after 12 years. The leader of the group, which stayed back at Magadha was *Sthulabhadra*. When the Jains (Bhadrabahu and others) returned from South India, they held that complete nudity be an essential part of the teachings of Mahavira, while the monks in Magadha began to put on white clothes.
- Thus arose the two sects *Shvetambaras* (white clad) and *Digambaras* (sky-clad).
 1. *Shvetambaras* (i.e. those who put on white robes)—*Sthulabhadra*
 2. *Digambaras* (i.e. those who were stark naked)—*Bhadrabahu*.

Examples of Jain Architecture

1. Gomphas i.e. Caves e.g. Hathigumpha, Baghagumpha etc., Udaigiri and Khandagiri (Orissa)—Kharvela
2. Dilwara temples e.g. Vimalavasahi temple, Tejapala temple—Mount Abu (Rajasthan)
3. Temples—Giranar and Palitana (Gujarat)
4. Temples e.g. Pavapuri temple, Rajagrigha temple—Bihar
5. Statue of *Gometeshwar/Bahubali*—Shravanbelgola (Karnataka).

Royal Patrons

I. North India :

1. Nandas; Bimbisar, Ajatshatru and Udayin (Haryank); Chandragupta Maurya, Bindusara and Samprati (Mauryan)—Magadha
2. Pradyota (Avanti)
3. Udayan (Sindhu-Sauvira)
4. Kharavela (Kalinga).

II. South India :

1. Ganga Dynasty
2. Kadamb Dynasty
3. Amoghavarsha (Rashtrakuta Dynasty)
4. Siddharaj Jai Singh and Kumarpala (Chaulukya/Solanki) – the last great patrons of Jainism.

4. Maurya Period (322 BC-185 BC)

Sources for Mauryan History

1. Literary Sources

- > **Kautilya's 'Arthashastra'**: It is the most important literary source for the Mauryas. It is a treatise on government and polity. It gives a clear and methodological analysis of political and economic conditions of the Mauryan period.
- > **Megasthenes's 'Indica'**: Megasthenes was the ambassador of Seleucus Nikator in the court of Chandragupta Maurya. His 'Indica' is foremost among all the foreigners' accounts for Maurya. But its original copy is lost, and it has survived only as quotations in the text of classical Greek writers, such as **Strabo**, **Diodorus**, **Arrian**, **Plutarch** and Latin writers such as **Pliny** and **Justin**. It refers to Mauryan administration, 7-caste system, absence of slavery and usury in India etc.
- > **Visakha Datta's 'Mudra Rakshasa'**: Though it was written during Gupta Period, it describes how Chandragupta Maurya got Chanakya's assistance to overthrow the Nandas. Besides this, it gives an excellent account of the prevailing socio-economic conditions.
- > **Puranas**: Though they are a collection of legends interspersed with religious teachings, they give us the chronology and lists of Mauryan kings.
- > **Buddhist Literature**: 1. Indian Buddhist text **Jatakas** (a part of Khuddaknikaya of Suttapitaka which describes 549 stories of Buddha's previous births) reveal a general picture of socio-economic conditions of Mauryan period. 2. Ceylonese Buddhist chronicles **Dipavamsa** and **Mahavamsa** describe the part played by Ashoka in spreading Buddhism to Sri Lanka. 3. Tibetan Buddhist text **Divyavadana** gives information about Ashoka and his efforts to spread Buddhism.

2. Archaeological Sources

- > **Ashokan Edicts and inscriptions**: There are Rock Edicts, Pillar Edicts and Cave Inscriptions located at several places in the Indian sub-continent. Their importance came to be appreciated only after their decipheration by **James Princep** in 1837 and also the identification of Ashoka as the author of these edicts in the beginning of the 20th century. Majority of them are in the nature of Ashoka's proclamations to the public at large, and only a small group of them describe his own acceptance of Buddhism and his relationship with the Sangha (Commune). Though **Prakrit** was the language used in them, the script varied from region to region (**Kharoshthi** in the North-West, **Greek** and **Aramaic** in the West and **Brahmi** in the East of India).
- > **Other Inscriptions**: Junagadh Rock Inscription of Rudradaman, Sohgaura Copper Plate Inscription in Gorakhpur district of U.P., Mahasthan Inscription in Bogra district of Bangladesh. – All these are directly concerned with the Mauryan Period, though they are believed to be not necessarily those of Ashoka.
- > **Material Remains**: Wooden palace of Chandragupta Maurya, Northern Black Polished Ware (NBPW), Silver and Copper punch-marked coins found in Kumharar (Patna) and other places are the material remains of the Mauryan period.

Ashokan Edicts Contents and Inscriptions

Found at

I. Rock Edicts

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|--|---|
| (i) 14 Major Rock Edicts | Various Principles of Dhamma | Manshera (Pakistan) Shahbajgarhi (Mardan, Pakistan), Kalsi (Dehradun, Uttarakhand), Junagadh (Girnar, Gujarat), Sopara (Thane, Maharashtra), Yerragudi (Kurnool, Andhra Pradesh), Dhauli (Khurda, Orissa), Jaugada (Ganjam, Orissa) |
| (ii) 2 Kalinga Rock Edicts | New system of administration after the Kalinga war | Dauli or Tosali (Khurda, Orissa), Jaugada (Ganjam, Orissa) |
| (iii) Minor Rock Edicts | Personal history of Ashoka and summary of his dhamma | Susaram(Bihar), Maski (Andhra Pradesh), Bhabru-Ashoka and Bairat (Rajasthan), Rupanath (MP), Gavimath, Palkigundu, Siddhpur, Jating Rameshwat, Brahmagiri (Karnataka) |
| (iv) Bhabru-Bairat Rock Edicts | Ashoka's conversion to Buddhism | Bhabru-Bairat (Rajasthan) |

II. Pillar Edicts

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| (i) 7 Pillar Edicts | Appendix to rock Edicts | Merrut-Delhi (Chhoti Lata), Topra-Delhi (Badi Lata), Allahabad (UP); Lauriya Nandangadh, Lauriya Areraj and Rampurva (Bihar) |
| (ii) 4 Minor Pillar Edicts | Signs of fanaticism to Dhamma | Sanchi (MP), Sarnath and Allahabad (UP) |
| (iii) 2 Tarai Pillar Edicts | Ashoka's respect for Buddhism | Rummandei / Lumbini and Nigaliva (Tarai of Nepal) |

III. Cave Edicts

- | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| 3 Barabar Cave Edicts | Ashoka's toleration | Barabar Hills (Gaya, Bihar) |
|-----------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|

Ashokan 14 Major Rock Edicts

Contents

1. Prohibition of animal sacrifices and festive gatherings.
2. Measures of social welfare.
3. Respect to Brahamanas.
4. Courtesy to relatives, elders, consideration for animals.
5. Appointment of Dhamma Mahamatras and their duties.
6. Need for efficient organisation of administration (orders to Dhamma Mahamatras).
7. Need for tolerance among all religious sects.
8. System of Dhamma-yatras.
9. Attack on meaningless ceremonies and rituals.
10. Conquest through Dhamma instead of war.
11. Explanation of Dhamma-policy.
12. Appeal for tolerance among all religious sects.
13. Kalinga war, mention 5 contemporary Hellenic (Greek) kings.
14. Inspiration to spend religious life.

Origin of the Mauryas

- The Puranas describe them as *Shudras*.
- 'Mudrakshasa' of Vishakhadatta uses the terms *Vrishal/Kulhina* (of low clan).
- The Classical writers, such as Justin, describe Chandragupta only as a man of humble origin.
- The Junagarh Rock Inscription of Rudradaman (150 AD) has some indirect evidence, suggesting that the Mauryas might have been of *Vaishya* origin.
- The Buddhist work, on the other hand, try to link the Mauryan dynasty with the *Sakya Kshatriya* clan to which Buddha belonged. According to them, the region from which the Mauryas came was full of peacocks (*Mor*), and hence they came to be known as '*Moriyas*'. It is obvious from this that the Buddhists were trying to elevate the social position of Ashoka (their patron) and his predecessors.
- In conclusion, we can say that the Mauryas belonged to the *Moriya* tribe and were certainly of a low caste, though it is not clear as to which low caste.

Chandragupta Maurya : 322 BC-298 BC

- Chandragupta dethroned the last Nanda ruler *Dhananand* and occupied *Patliputra* in 322 BC with the help of *Kautilya (Chankya)*.
- In 305 BC, Chandragupta Maurya defeated *Seleucus Nikator*, who surrendered a vast territory including Aria (herat), Arachosia (Kandhar), Gedrosia (Baluchistan) and Paropanisade (Kabul), in return for 500 elephants. According to treaty between Chandragupta and Seleucus, the Hindukush became boundary between their states.
- *Megasthenes* was a Greek ambassador sent to the court of Chandragupta Maurya by Seleucus Nikator.
- Chandragupta became a Jain and went to *Chandragiri Hill, Sravanbelgola* (Karnataka) with Bhadrabahu, where he died by slow starvation (*Kaya-Klesha/Salekhan*).
- Under Chanragupta Maurya, for the first time, the whole of Northern India was united.
- Trade flourished, agriculture was regulated, weights and measures were standardised and money came into use.
- Taxation, sanitation and famine relief became the concerns of the state.

Bindusara : 298 BC-273 BC

- Chandragupta Maurya was succeeded by his son Bindusara.
- Bindusara, known to the Greeks as *Amitrochates* (derived from the Sanskrit word *Amitraghata* i.e. slayers of foes), is said to have carried his arms to the Deccan (upto Mysore).
- Bindusara asked *Antiochus I* of *Syria* to send some sweet wine, dried figs and a sophist. Antiochus I sent wine and figs but politely replied that Greek philosophers are not for sale.
- Bindusara patronised *Ajivikas*.

Ashoka : 273 BC-232 BC

- According to Buddhist texts when Ashoka, the son of Bindusara, was born, his mother, happy to have a child, said, 'Now I am Ashoka', i.e., without sorrow. And so the child was named.

- It appears from the available evidence (Buddhist literature mainly) that there was a struggle for the throne among the princes on the death of Bindusara.
- According to Buddhist tradition, Ashoka usurped the throne after killing his 99 brothers and spared *Tissa*, the youngest one. Radhagupta a minister of Bindusara helped him in fratricidal struggle.
- This war of succession accounts for interregnum of four years (273-269 BC), and only after securing his position on the throne, Ashoka had himself formally crowned in 269 BC.
- Under Ashoka, the Mauryan Empire reached its climax. For the first time, the whole of the sub-continent, leaving out the extreme south, was under imperial control.

Ashoka

Devanampriyas Ashoka Rajas

Raja Ashoka

Raja Ashoka Dewanampiya

Piyadassi Raja Magadh

Piyadassi Raja

Piyadassi

Ashoka Maurya

Ashoka Vardhan

Maski minor rock edict.

Gurjara minor rock edict

Nittur minor rock edict

Udegulum minor rock edict.

Bhabru-Bairat minor rock edict.

Barabar cave inscription

Kandhar major rock edict and Deepvamsa.

Rudradaman's Junagarh rock edict.

Puranas.

- Ashoka fought the *Kalinga war* in 261 BC in 9th years of his coronation. The king was moved by the massacre in this war and therefore abandoned the policy of physical occupation in favour of policy of cultural conquest. In other words, *Bherighosa* was replaced by *Dhammadhosa*.
- Ashoka was not an extreme pacifist. He did not pursue the policy of peace for sake of peace under all conditions. Thus, he retained Kalinga after his conquest and incorporated it into his empire.
- Ashoka sent missionaries to the kingdoms of the Cholas and the Pandiyas, and five states ruled by Greek kings (Antiochus II, Syria; Philadelphos Ptolemy II, Egypt; Antigonus, Macedonia; Maggus, Syrina; Alexander, Epirus). We also know that he sent missionaries to Ceylon (Sri Lanka) and Suvarnbhumi (Burma) and also parts of South-East Asia.

Ashoka's Dhamma

- Ashoka's Dhamma cannot be regarded as a sectarian faith. Its broad objective was to preserve the social order it ordained that people should obey their parents, pay respect to Brahmanas and Buddhist monks and show mercy to slaves and servants.
- He held that if people behaved well they would attain Swarga (heaven). He did never say that they would attain Nirvana, which was the goal of Buddhist teachings.

Later Mauryas : 232 BC-185 BC

- The Mauryan dynasty lasted 137 years.
- Ashoka's death was followed by the division of the Mauryan Empire into two parts-Western and Eastern.

- The Western part came to be ruled by *Kunala* (son of Ashoka) and the Eastern part came to be ruled by *Dasaratha*.
- The last Mauryan ruler, *Brihadratha*, was assassinated in 185 BC by his commander-in-chief, *Pushyamitra Sunga*, who established his own Sunga dynasty.
- **Causes for the Decline :** 1. Highly centralised administration (*Romila Thapar*)
2. Pacific policy of Ashoka (*H.C. Raychaudhuri*) 3. Brahmanical reaction (*H.P. Sastri*) 4. The partition of the Mauryan Empire 5. Weak later-Mauryan Rulers
6. Pressure on Mauryan economy (D.D. Kosambi) 7. Neglect of North-West Frontier.

Mauryan kings	Other names of the king	Ambassador (Greek king)
Chandragupta	Sandrocottus-Strabo, Justin Megasthenes (302-298 BC) (Seleucus Androcottus-Arrian, Plutarch Nikator-Persia and Babylonia) Vrishala/Kulahina(i.e.oflow clan)- Vishakhadatta (Mudrarakshasa)	
Bindusara	Amitrochates—Greek texts Vindupala—Chinese text Sinhasena—Jain text Bhadrasara—Vayu Purana	Dimachos (Antiochus I - Syria) Dionysius (Philadelphos/Ptolemy II-Egypt)

Mauryan Administration

I. Central Administration

- **The king :** The Mauryan government was a centralised bureaucracy of which the nucleus was the king. According to Kautilya/Chanakya, there are 7 elements of states (*Saptanga theory*)—*Raja* (the king), *Amatya* (the secretaries), *Janapada* (territory), *Durg* (Fort), *Kosha* (the treasure), *Sena* (Army) and *Mitra* (Friend). The king was regarded as the soul among all the seven elements of the state.
- **The Mantri Prishad :** The king was assisted by Mantri Parishad, whose members included – 1. *The Yuvaraja* (the crown prince) 2. *The purohita* (the chief priest) 3. *The Senapati* (the commander-in-chief) (iv) a few other ministers.

Important officials

Sannidhata	Chief treasury officer
Samaharta	The collector general of revenue
Vyavaharika (Dharmastha)	Chief Justice of Dharmasthiya Nyayalaya (Civil Court)
Pradeshta	Chief Justice of Kantakashodhan Nyayalaya (Criminal Court)
Dhamma Mahamatra	A new post created by Ashoka, empowered with the dual functions of propagating Dhamma and taking care of the common folk for their material well-being.
Rashtrapala/Kumara	The viceroys in charge of a province
Pradesika	They were the modern district magistrate
Rajukas	They were the later day Patwaris and responsible for surveying and assessing the land
Yukta	A subordinate revenue officer of the district level
Sthanika	The collecting officer directly under the control of the Pradeshika
Gopa	Responsible for accounts

Nagaraka	The officer in charge of the city administration
Akshapatala	Accountant General
Sitaadhyaksha	Supervised agriculture
Panyadhyaksha	Superintendent of commerce
Samsthaadhyaksha	Superintendent of Market
Pautavadhyaksha	Superintendent of weights and measures
Navaadhyaksha	Superintendent of ships
Sulkaadhyaksha	Collector of tolls
Akaradhyaksha	Superintendent of mines
Lohadhyaksha	Superintendent of Iron

II. Provincial Administration

Province	Capital
Uttarapatha i.e. Northern Province	Taxila
Avantirashtra i.e. Western Province	Ujjain
Prachi i.e. Eastern and Central Province	Patliputra
Kalinga i.e. Eastern Province	Toshali
Dakshinapatha i.e. Southern Province	Suvarnagiri

Note : According to the Junagadh Rock Edict of Rudradaman, Saurashtra was governed by *Pushyagupta*, the vaishya, at the time of Chandragupta Maurya and by the Yavan king *Tushaspa* at the time of Ashoka.

Administrative Unit	Head
Chakra (i.e. province)	Rashtrapala/Kumara
Ahar/Vishaya (i.e. District)	Pradeshika (administrative) and Rajuka (land revenue)
Sangrahana (a group of 10 villages)	Gopa
Gram (i.e. village)	Gramika

III. Municipal Administration

- Kautilya devotes a full chapter to the rules of the *Nagaraka* i.e. city superintendent. His chief duty was maintenance of law and order.
- Megasthenese account of the system : 6 committees of five members each, and their functions; 1st – Industrial Arts, 2nd – Entertainment of Foreigners, 3rd – Registration of Births and Deaths, 4th – Trade and Commerce, 5th – Public sale of manufactured goods, and 6th – Collection of taxes on the articles sold (1/10th of purchase price).

IV. Army

- The most striking feature of Mauryan administration was the maintenance of a huge army. They also maintained a Navy.
- According to Megasthenese the administration of Army was carried by a board of 30 officers divided into 6 committee, each committee consisting of 5 members. They are 1. Infantry 2. Cavalry 3. Elephants 4. Chariots 5. Navy 6. Transport.
- In the Mauryan period, there were two types of *Gudhapurushas* (detectives) – *Sansthana* (Stationary) and *Sanchari* (Wandering).

Economy

- The state controlled almost all economic activities.
- Tax collected from peasants varied from $1/4$ to $1/6$ of the produce.
- The state also provided irrigation facilities (*Setubandha*) and charged water tax.
- Tolls were also levied on commodities brought to town for sale and they were collected at gate.
- The state enjoyed monopoly in mining, forest, salt, sale of liquor, manufacture of arms etc.
- *Sohgaura* (Gorakhpur district, U.P.) copper plate inscription and *Mahasthana* (Bogara district, Bangladesh) inscription deal with the relief measures to be adopted during a famine.
- **Important ports:** *Bharukachch/Bharochand Supara* (Western coast), *Tamralipit* in Bengal (Eastern coast).
- During Mauryan period, the punch-marked coins (mostly of silver) were the common units of transactions.

Society

- *Kautilya/Chanakya/Vishnugupta* is not as rigid on the Varna system as the earlier Smriti writers.
- Kautilya's 'Arthashastra' looked upon the *Shudras* as an Aryan community which is distinguished from Malechha or non-Aryan community.
- Reduction of gap between the *Vaishyas* (most of whom were now concentrating on trade though others continued cultivation) and the *Shudras* (quite a few of whom were now agriculturists and others being artisans).
- *Megasthenes* states that Indian society was divided into 7 classes :
 1. Philosophers
 2. Farmers
 3. Soldiers
 4. Herdsman
 5. Artisans
 6. Magistrates
 7. Councillors.
 The 'classes' mentioned above appear to have been economic than social.
- Though Megasthenes stated that there were no slavery in India; yet, according to Indian sources, slavery was a recognised institution during Mauryan reign. It appears that Megasthenes was thinking of slavery in full legal sense as it existed in the West.
- Women occupied a high position and freedom in the Mauryan society. According to Kautilya, women were permitted to have a divorce or remarry. Women were employed as personal body-guards of the king, spies and in other diverse jobs.

Mauryan Art

- Anand Coomarswamy classified Mauryan Art into two groups :

 1. **Royal/Court Art** : The Royal Palace of Chandragupta Maurya (Kumharat Patna) and City of Patliputra, Ashokan Pillars, Caves, Stupas etc.
 2. **Folk/Popular Art** : 1. Figure Sculpture of Yaksha-Yakshini etc. e.g. Yaksha of Parkham (Mathura), Yakshini of Besanagar/Vidisha (M.P.), Chanwar-bearer Yakshini of Didarganj (Patna). 2. Terracotta objects. 3. Inscribed stone portrait of Emperor Ashok/Broken relief sculpture of Emperor Ashok (Kanaganhalli, Karnataka).

- The Mauryas introduced stone masonry on large scale during Ashoka.
- Fragments of stone pillars and wooden floor and ceiling indicating the existence of an 80-pillared hall have been discovered at Kumhrar on outskirts of Patna. Seeing this *Fahien* remarks as follows : '*These palaces are so beautiful and excellent that they appear to be the creation of God rather than of men*'.
- The pillars represent the masterpieces of Mauryan sculpture. Each pillar is made of single piece of sandstone, only their capitals, which are beautiful pieces of sculpture in form of lion or bulls, are joined with pillar on the top.
- Four lion capital at Sarnath and Sanchi. Lion capital of Sarnath was adopted as 'National Emblem' of India on 26 Jan., 1950.
- Single lion capital at Rampurva and Lauriya Nandangarh.
- Single bull capital at Rampurva.
- A carved elephant at Dauli and engraved elephant at Kalsi.
- The Mauryan artisans who started the practice of hewing out caves from rocks for monks to live in. The earliest example are *Barabar caves* (Sudama, World Hut, Chaupada of Karna, Rishi Lomesh) in Gaya (Ashokan). The other examples are *Nagarjuni caves* in Gaya (*Dasharath*).
- Stupas were built throughout the empire to enshrine the relics of Buddha. Of these, the most famous are at Sanchi and Bharhut.

'At all times, whether I am eating, or am in the women's apartments, or in my inner apartments, or at the cattleshed, or in my carriage, or in my gardens—wherever I may be—my Mahamattar should keep me in touch with public business'. —*Rock Edict VI*
 'All men are my children'.

—*Kalinga Rock Edict I (Dhauli)*

5.I. Post-Maurya/Pre-Gupta Period (185 BC-319 AD)**I. Native Successors of Mauryas****Sunga Dynasty : 185 BC - 73 BC**

[Capital-Vidisha (M.P.)]

- Sunga Dynasty was established by *Pushymitra Sunga*, a Brahmin Commander-in-Chief of last Mauryan ruler named Brihadratha in 185 BC.
- Pushyamitra was a staunch adherent of orthodox Hinduism. However, the great Buddhist stupa at Bharhut (in M.P.) was built during the reign of Sungas.
- Pushyamitra was succeeded by his son *Agnimitra*, the hero of Kalidasa's drama '*Malvikagnimitra*'.
- After Agnimitra, a series of weak rulers such as Vasumitra, Vajramitra, Bhagabhadra, Devabhuti, followed, leading to the decline of the dynasty.
- During their rule there was a revival of Brahminical influence. The Bhagavata religion became important.
- *Patanjali*, author of the 'Mahabhasya', was born at Gonarda in Central India. Patanjali was the priest of 2 Asvamedha Yajnas, performed by Pushymitra Sunga.
- In arts, the Bharhut Stupa is the most famous monument of the Sunga period.
- The fine gateway railing which surrounds the Sanchi stupa, built by Ashoka, constructed during the Sunga period.
- Other examples of Sunga Art : Vihar, Chaitya and Stupa of Bhaja (Poona), Amaravati Stupa, Nasika Chaitya etc.

Kanva Dynasty : 73 BC - 28 BC

- > In 73 BC, Devabhuti, the last ruler of the Sunga dynasty, was murdered by his minister **Vasudeva**, who usurped the throne and founded the Kanva dynasty.
- > The period of Kanva rule came to an end in 28 BC.

Satavahana Dynasty : 60 BC - 225 AD**[Capital - Pratishtana/Paitahan (Maharashtra)]**

- > The most important of the native successors of the Mauryas in the Deccan and Central India were the Satavahanas.
- > The Satavahanas are considered to be identical with the Andhras who were mentioned in the Puranas.
- > The early Satavahana kings appeared not in Andhra but in Maharashtra where most of their early inscriptions have been found.
- > **Simuka** (60 BC-37 BC) was the founder of the Satavahana dynasty.
- > **Satakarni I**, its 3rd ruler, raised its power and prestige by conquests.
- > **Hala**, its 17th ruler, was the author of 'Gathasaptasati' or, 'Sattasai' in Prakrit. **Gunadhyaya**, the author of 'Vrihat Katha' (in Prakrit), was the contemporary of Hala.
- > It was **Gautamiputra Satakarni** (106 - 130 AD) who revived the Satavahana power and defeated the Saka Ksatrap Nahapana. He was the greatest Satavahan ruler (23rd Satavahana ruler).
- > **Vasishthiputra Sri Satakarni**, its 24th ruler, was married to the daughter of Saka Kstrapa Rudradaman, but defeated by him twice.
- > **Yajna Sri Satakarni**, its 27th ruler, was the dynasty's last great ruler.
- > **Pulamavi III**, its 30th ruler, was the last Satavahana ruler.
- > Satavahanas were finally succeeded by the Ikshvakus in 3rd Century AD.
- > Satavahanas started the practice of donating land with fiscal and administrative immunities to Brahmanas and Buddhist monks, which eventually weakened their authority. The earliest inscriptional evidence of land grant in India belongs to 1st century BC.
- > Under the Satavahanas, many Chaityas (worship halls) and Viharas (monasteries) were cut out from rocks mainly in North-West Deccan or Maharashtra. The famous examples were **Nasik**, **Kanheri** and **Karle**.
- > Stupas (large round structure erected over a sacred relic) were seen scattered all around Ellora. The most famous of these attributed to the Satavahana period are **Amravati**, a sculptural treasure house, and **Nagarjunakonda**.
- > The official language of the Satavahanas was **Prakrit**.
- > The Satavahanas issued their coins in lead (mainly), copper, bronze and potin.

Cheti/Chedi Dynasty of Kalinga

- > The history of Kalinga after the death of Ashoka is shrouded in obscurity. A new dynasty, known as the Cheti or Chedi dynasty, rose in the region probably in the 1st century BC.
- > Our information about this dynasty is derived solely from the **Hathigumpha inscription** (near Bhubaneshwar, Orissa) of **Kharavela**, the 3rd ruler of dynasty.
- > A follower of Jainism, Kharavela was liberal patron of Jain monks for whose residence he constructed caves on the **Udayagiri** hill, near Bhubaneshwar in Orissa.

[Capital - Patliputra]**II. Foreign Successors of Mauryas****The Indo-Greeks : 2nd Century BC**

- > Indo-Greeks (Bactrian Greeks) were the first foreign rulers of North-Western India in the Post-Maurya period.
- > The most famous Indo-Greek ruler was **Menander** (165 BC-145 BC), also known as **Milinda**. He was converted to Buddhism by Nagasena or Nagarjuna.
- > The Indo-Greek rule is important in the history of India because of the large number of coins which they issued.
- > The Indo-Greeks were the first rulers in India to issue coins which can definitely be attributed to the kings.
- > They were the first to issue gold coins.
- > They introduced Hellenic i.e. Greek features in art giving rise to **Gandhara school** in the North-Western India.

The Sakas : 1st Century BC-4th Century AD

- > The **Sakas**, also known as **Scythians**, replaced the Indo-Greeks in India.
- > Among the five branches of Sakas with their seats of power in different parts of India, the most important was the one which ruled in Western India till the 4th Century AD.
- > The most famous Saka ruler in India was **Rudradaman** (130 AD-150 AD). He is famous not only for his military conquests (particularly against the Satavahanas) but also for his public works (he repaired the famous Sudarsan lake of the Mauryan period) and his patronage of Sanskrit (he issued the first-ever long inscription in chaste Sanskrit).
- > Other important Saka ruler in India were Nahapana, Ushayadeva, Ghamatika, Chashtana etc.
- > In about 58 BC a king of Ujjain - Vikramaditya - is supposed to have fought effectively against the Sakas. An era called **Vikrama Samvat** is reckoned from 58 BC.

The Parthians : 1st Century BC-1st Century AD

- > Originally the **Parthians (Pahlavas)** lived in Iran, they replaced the Sakas in North-Western India, but controlled an area much smaller than the Sakas.
- > The most famous Parthian king was **Gondaphernes** in whose reign **St. Thomas** is said to have come to India for the propagation of Christianity.

The Kushans : 1st Century AD-3rd Century AD

- > The Kushans were one of the five Yuchi clans of Central Asia.
- > They replaced the Parthians in North-Western India and then expanded to the lower Indus basin and the upper and middle Gangetic basin.
- > The first Kushan dynasty was founded by **Kadphises I/ Kujul Kadphises**. The second king was **Kadphises II/ Vema Kadphises** who issued gold coins.
- > The second Kushan dynasty was founded by **Kanishka**. Its kings extended the Kushan power over upper India. Their capitals were at **Peshawar (Purushapura)** and **Mathura**.
- > The most famous Kushan ruler was Kanishka (78 AD - 101 AD), also known as 'Second Ashoka'. He started an era in 78 AD which is now known as the **Saka era** and is used by the Government of India.

- Kanishka was a great patron of Mahayana Buddhism. In his reign **4th Buddhist council** was held in **Kundalavara, Kashmir** where the doctrines of the Mahayana form of Buddhism were finalised.
- The last great Kushan ruler was Vasudeva I.
- The Kushans controlled famous **silk route** starting from China, passing through their empire on to Iran and Western Asia. This route was a source of great income to the Kushans.
- The Kushans were the first rulers in India to issue gold coins on a wide scale.
- In the royal court of Kanishka a host of scholars found patronage. **Parsva, Vasumitra, Asvaghosha, Nagarjuna, Charak** and **Mathura** were some of them.

Facts About Post-Mauryas

Three school of Sculpture :

- Amuravati School** (150 BC - 400 AD) – Satyavahanas
- Gandhar School** (50 BC - 5th Century AD) – Saka - Kushans
- Mathura School** (150 AD - 300 AD) – Saka-Kushans.

Note: The influence of Greek sculpture is very evident in the Gandhar school, while Mathura school evolved an indigenous form.

- In 46-47 AD, **Hippalus**, a greek sailor, discovered the monsoon sea-route to India from West Asia.
- Important ports** : **Barygaza (Bhanbh)** and **Barbairicum** (Western Coast); **Arikamedu (Pudukkottai)** according to 'Periplus'—near Pandicheri-Eastern Coast.
- 'Bullion was flowing out of Rome to India'—**Pliny**.
- 'Geographica'—**Strabo**, 'Geography'—**Ptolemy**, 'Natural History'—**Pliny**, 'Periplus of the Erythrian Sea'—Unknown.
- India had contacts with Central Asia, China, Graeco-Roman World and South-East Asia.

5.II. The Sangam Period (1st-3rd Century AD)

Three Early Kingdoms

Kingdom	Emblem	Capital	First Ruler	Famous Ruler
The Chera	Bow	Vanji / Karayur; Main Ports : Muzris and Tondi	Udiyangeral	Senguttuvan (Red Chera)
The Chola	Tiger	Uraiaur-Inland capital-famous centre for cotton trade; Puhar / Kaveripattanam-coastal capital-main port	Elara	Karikala
The Pandya	Fish	Madurai-Inland capital-venue Mudukudumi Nendujeliyan of 1st and 3rd sangam; Korkai / Colchoi-coastal capital-famous for pearls.	Mudukudumi Nendujeliyan	

The Cheras

- The Chera country occupied the portion of both Kerala and Tamil Nadu.
- The capital of Cheras was **Vanji**.
- Its main ports were **Muzris** and **Tondi**.

- The Romans set up two regiments at **Muzris** (identical with **Cranganore**) in Chera country. They also built a temple of Augustus at Muzris.
- One of the earliest and better known among Chera rulers was **Udiyangeral**. It is said that he fed both the armies of Kurukshetra war and so earned the title Udiyangeral.
- The greatest of Chera king, however, was **Senguttuvan** or **Red Chera**. It is said that he invaded the North and even crossed the Ganges.
- He was also the founder of the famous **Pattini cult** related to worship of goddess of chastity—**Kannagi**.

The Cholas

- The Chola kingdom called as Cholamandalam was situated to the North-East of Pandya kingdom between Pennar and Vellar rivers.
- The Chola kingdom corresponded to the modern Tanjore and Tiruchirappalli districts.
- Its inland capital was **Uraiyaur**, a place famous for cotton trade. One of the main sources of wealth for Cholas was trade in cotton cloth.
- Puhar** identical with **Kaveripattanam** was the main port of Cholas and served as alternative capital of Cholas.
- The earliest known Chola king was **Elara** who conquered Sri Lanka and ruled over it for nearly 50 years.
- Their greatest king was **Karikala** (man with charred leg) who founded **Puhar (Kaveripattanam)** and constructed 160 km of embankment along the Kaveri river with the help of 12,000 Sri Lankan slaves.
- They maintained an efficient navy.
- The Cholas were wiped out in the attack of Pallavas from the North.

The Pandyas

- The Pandyas were first mentioned by Megasthenes, who said their Kingdom was famous for pearls.
- The Pandya territory included modern districts of Tirunelveli, Ramnad and Madurai in Tamil Nadu. It had its capital at Madurai, situated on the banks of Vaigai river.
- The Pandya king profited from trade with Roman Empire and sent emissaries to Roman emperor **Augustus** and **Trojan**.
- The Pandyas find mention in the Ramayana and Mahabharata.
- The earliest known Pandyan ruler was **Mudukudumi**.
- The greatest Pandya king, **Nendujelian**, accused **Kovalan** of theft. As a result, the city of Madurai was laid under a curse by **Kannagi** (Kovalan's wife).

Sangam Administration

- The king was the centre of administration. He was called **Ko, Mannam, Vendan, Korravan** or **Iraivan**.
- Avai** was the court of the crowned monarch.
- Important officials (Panchmahasabha):** 1. **Amaichchar** (Ministers) 2. **Purohitar** (Priests) 3. **Dutar** (Envoys) 4. **Senapatiyar** (Commander) 5. **Orar** (Spies).

- The kingdom was divided into **Mandalam / Nadu** (Province), **Ur** (town), **Peru** (Big village), **Sirur** (Small village).
- Pattinam** (Name of coastal town), **Puhar** (Harbour areas), **Cheri** (Suburb of town).
- Revenue Administration**: **Karai** (Land Tax), **Irai** (Tribute paid by feudatories and booty collected in war), **Ulgu** (Custom duties), **Iravu** (Extra demand or forced gift), **Variyam** (A well known unit of territory yielding tax), **Variyar** (Tax collector).
- It is said that in Chola territory, watered by Kaveri, the space in which an elephant could lie down produced enough to feed seven persons. It implies the lands were very fertile with irrigation facilities.

Sangam Literature

Sl. No.	Venue	Under the Chairmanship of	Surviving Texts	Patron (Pandya Rulers)
Ist Sangam	Ten-Madurai (Old Agastasya capital of Pandyas, (Agattiyar) engulfed in sea)		x	89
IInd Sangam	Kapatapuram / Alvai (engulfed in sea)	Agastaya (founder chairman); only Tolakapiyyar (later chairman)	'Tolkappiyam'	59
IIIrd Sangam	North Madurai	Nakkirar	Ettutogai, Pattu-pattu, Patinenkilakanakku etc.	49

- Sangam** was an assembly of Tamil poets held under royal patronage of Pandyan kings in Madurai. According to tradition, the assembly lasted for 9,990 years and was attended by 8,598 poets and 197 Pandyan kings.
- The first Sangam** was attended by Gods and legendary sages All its works have perished.
- Of **the second Sangam**, the only surviving work is **Tolkappiyam**, an early work on Tamil grammar written by **Tolakapiyyar**.
- Of **the third Sangam**, the mostly works are surviving. These are **Ettutogai** (i.e. 8 anthologies), **Pattupattu** (i.e. 10 idylls), **Patinenkilakanakku** (i.e. 18 didactical texts) etc.
- Ettutogai and Pattupattu are called Melakanakku (18 major works) and narrative in form. Patinenkanakku is called Kilakanakku (18 minor works) and didactive in form.
- Kural** or **Muppal**, a part of Patinenkilakanakku and written by **Tiruvalluvar** is called 'The Bible of Tamil Land'. It is treatise on polity, ethics and social norms.

The Epics: Silappadikaram, Manimekalai, Sivaga Sindamani etc.

- Silappadikaram (the story of the Anklet)**: Written by **Iango Adigal**, it deals with the story of Kovalan and Madhavi of Kaveripattinam. It is called 'Illiay of Tamil poetry'.
- Manimekalai** : Written by **Sittalai Sattanar**, it deals with the adventures of Manimekalai, the daughter born of Kovalan and Madhavi. It is a sequel of Silappadikaram and strongly tinged with Buddhism.

- Sivaga Sindamani (Jivaka Chintamani)**: Written by Jain **Tiruttakrdevas** and strongly tinged with Jainism.
- Bharatam** : Written by **Perudevanar**.

Panchinai (five Tamil regions)	Occupation	Inhabitants
Kurinji (hilly backwoods or montane)	Hunting, Gathering	Kurvar, Vetar
Palai (Parched or arid zone)	Cattle lifting, Highway robbery	Eyinar, Maravar
Mullai (Pastoral tract)	Shifting Agriculture, Animal husbandry	Ayar, Idaiyar
Marutam (Wetland)	Plough Agriculture	Ulavar, Vellalar
Neital (littoral/coastal)	Fishing, Salt extraction	Paratavar, Valayar

6. Gupta Period (319 AD-540 AD)

- In 4th Century AD a new dynasty, the Guptas, arose in Magadha and established a large kingdom over the greater part of Northern India (though their empire was not as large as that of the Mauryas). Their rule lasted for more than 200 years.
- This period is referred as the 'Classical Age' or 'Golden Age' of ancient India and was perhaps the most prosperous era in the Indian history.
- According to epigraphic evidence, the founder of the dynasty was a person named **Gupta**. He used the simple title of Maharaja.
- Gupta was succeeded by his son **Ghatotkach**, who also inherited the title of Maharaja.

Chandragupta I : 319-334 AD

- He was the first Gupta ruler to assume the title of **Maharajadhiraja**.
- He strengthened his kingdom by matrimonial alliance with the powerful family of Licchhavis who were the rulers of Mithila. His marriage to Licchhvi princess **Kumaradevi**, brought to him enormous power, resources and prestige. He took advantage of the situation and occupied the whole of fertile Gangetic Valley.
- He started the **Gupta Era** in 319-20 AD.
- Chandragupta I was able to establish his authority over Magadha, Prayaga and Saketa.
- Original type of Gold Coins (Dinaras)**: Chandragupta I-Kumaradevi type.

Samudragupta : 335-380 AD

- Samudragupta was the greatest king of Gupta dynasty.
- The most detailed and authentic record of his reign is preserved in the **Prayaga Prasasti / Allahabad pillar inscription**, composed by his court poet **Harisena**.
- According to Prayaga Prasasti, he was a great conqueror.
- In the Gangetic Valley and Central India, Samudragupta annexed the territories

- of the defeated monarchs, but in South India he remained content with victories alone and did not annex the territories of the vanquished rulers.
- Samudragupta's military campaigns justify description of him as the '*Napoleon of India*' by V.A. Smith.
- The reference to his dominion over Java, Sumatra and Malaya islands in the sea shows that he had a navy.
- When he died his mighty empire bordered that of the Kushan of Western province (modern Afghanistan and Pakistan) and Vakatakas in Deccan (modern Southern Maharashtra).
- His greatest achievement was the political unification of most of India or Aryavarta into a formidable power.
- **Titles:** *Kaviraja* i.e. king of poets (*Prayaga Prasasti*), *Param Bhagavat* (Nalanda copper plate), *Ashvamedha-parakrama* i.e. whose might was demonstrated by the horse-sacrifice (coin), *Vikram* i.e. prowess (coin), *Sarva-raj-ochchhettai* i.e. uprooter of all kings (coin) etc. Note: Only Gupta ruler had the title of *Sarva-raj-ochchhettai*.
- **Original types of Gold Coins (Dinars):** Garud type, Dhanurdhari i.e. Archer type, Axe type, Ashvamedha type, Vyaghrahanan i.e. Tiger killing type, Veena-vadan i.e. lute playing type.
- Samudragupta was a Vaishnavite.
- According to the Chinese writer Wang-Huen-Tse, *Meghavarman*, king of Sri Lanka, sent an embassy to Samudragupta for his permission to build a monastery for Buddhist pilgrims at Bodh Gaya.

Chandragupta II 'Vikramaditya' : 380-414 AD

- According to 'Devi Chandragupta' (Vishakhadatta), Samudragupta was succeeded by *Ramgupta*. It seems Ramgupta ruled for a very short period. He was 'the only Gupta ruler to issue copper coins'.
- *Ramgupta*, a coward and impotent king, agreed to surrender his queen *Dhruvadevi* to Saka invader. But the prince Chandragupta II, the younger brother of the king, resolved to go to the enemy's camp in the guise of the queen with a view to kill the hated enemy. Chandragupta II succeeded in killing the Saka ruler.
- Chandragupta II also succeeded in killing Ramgupta, and not only seized his kingdom but also married his widow Dhruvadevi.
- Chandragupta II extended the limits of empire by matrimonial alliances (with the Nagas and Vakatakas) and conquests (Western India). He married *Kulernaga* of Naga dynasty and married his daughter *Prabhavatigupta* with Vakataka prince *Rudrasena II*.
- As a result of the overthrow of Saka rule in Western India, the Gupta empire extended upto Arabian sea. He issued silver coins in the memory of victory over Sakas. He was 'the first Gupta ruler to issue silver coins' and adopted the titles *Sakari* and *Vikramaditya*. *Ujjain* seems to have been made the second capital by Chandragupta II.
- *Mehraulti* (near Kutub Minar, Delhi) Iron Pillar inscription says that the king defeated the confederacy of Vangas and Vahilkas (Bulkh).

➤ **Navaratna** (i.e. nine gems) of Chandragupta II : 1. *Kalidasa* (Poetry-Malvikagnimitra, Meghadutam, Kumarsambhavam, Raghuvamshama; Dramas-*Amarsinhkoshsha*) 2. *Amarsinh* (Amarsinhkoshsha) 3. *Dhanavantri* (Navanitakam-medicine text) 4. *Varahmihira* (Panch Sidhantaka, Vrihatsamhita, Vrihat Jataka, Laghu Jataka) 5. *Vararuchi* (Vartika-a comment on Ashtadhyayi) 6. *Ghatakarna* 7. *Kshapranak* 8. *Velabbhatt* 9. *Shanku*.

➤ It was in Chandragupta's time that the Chinese pilgrim *Fahien* visited India.

➤ **Titles :** *Devagupta/Devaraja/Devashri, Parama Bhagavata, Narendra Chandra, Sinh Vikram* etc.

➤ **Original types of Gold coins (Dinars):** Ashvarohi type, Chhatradhari type, Chakra-Vikram type etc.

Kumaragupta I : 415-455 AD

- Chandragupta II was succeeded by his son Kumaragupta I.
- Towards the end of his reign, the Gupta empire was threatened from the North by the *Huns*, who were temporarily checked by his son Skandagupta.
- Kumaragupta was the worshipper of god *Kartikeya*.
- He founded the *Nalanda Mahavihara* which developed into a great centre of learning.
- **Titles :** *Mahendraditya, Mahendra Sinh* and *Ashvamedha Mahendrah* (coins) etc.
- **Original types of Gold Coins (Dinars):** Khadgadhari type, Gajarohi type, Gajarohi Sinh-nihanta type, Khang-nihanta i.e. rhinoceros-slayer type, Kartikeya type, Apratigh-mudra type etc.

Skandagupta : 455-467 AD

- Skandagupta, the last great ruler of the Gupta dynasty.
- During his reign the Gupta empire was invaded by the *Huns*. He succeeded in defeating the *Huns*. Success in repelling the *Huns* seems to have been celebrated by the assumption of the title 'Vikramaditya' (Bhitari Pillar Inscription).
- The continuous attacks of the *Huns* weakened the empire and adversely affected its economy. The gold coinage of Skandagupta bears testimony to this.
- The decline of the empire began soon after his death.
- **Titles :** *Vikramaditya* and *Kramaditya* (coins), *Param Bhagavat* (coins), *Sharkropama* (Kahaum Pillar Inscription), *Devaraja* (Arya Manjushri Mula Kalpa) etc.

The Huns : 500-530 AD—Huns were primitive pastoralists owing herds of cattle and horses but knowing nothing of agriculture. They roamed in the Steppe in search of pasture and water. From the Oxus, the white Huns came into Afghanistan, destroyed the local power and, after establishing themselves there, began to pour into India in 458 AD. However, Skandagupta who was at the time ruling in Northern India, checkmated them effectively. Whenever the Gupta empire's resistance collapsed the Huns occupied the areas upto Central India and Malwa about 500 AD. There were two powerful Hun rulers *Toramana* and his son *Mihirkula*. They ruled during 500-530 AD. Mihirkula, a Shaivite, was a persecutor of Buddhism. In 530 AD, the Huns were uprooted by Yashodarman of Mandsaur.

Vakatakas : 3rd Century-5th Century AD—The Vakatakas were the most important power that held sway over parts of Deccan and Central India after the fall of the Satavahanas and before the rise of Chalukyas. The founder of the Vakataka dynasty was *Vindhya-sakti* (255 AD). Vindhya-sakti was succeeded by his son *Pravarasena I* (275-335 AD), who was the real founder of the Vakataka empire. He performed 4 *Ashvamedha Yajnas*. After his death, the empire was divided. *Rudrasena I* took over the reigns of main branch i.e. Northern branch. He was the contemporary of Samudragupta. Rudrasena I was succeeded by *Prithvisena I*. He was contemporary of Chandragupta II. Chandragupta married his daughter Prabhavatigupta to the prince Rudrasena II. Prithvisena I was succeeded by his son *Rudrasena II*. Rudrasena II died after a short reign of five years, leaving behind two minor sons—*Divakarasa* and *Damodarsena*. Prabhavatigupta ruled as a regent of her son. Later, Damodarsena, became ruler, with the name *Pravarasena II*. Pravarasena II composed 'Setubandh/Ravanaho' (Poetry) in Marathi Script.

Gupta Inscriptions

Rulers	Inscriptions	Their Character
Samudragupta	Prayaga/ Allahabad Stone Pillar	Prasasti
	Eran Stone Pillar	Prasasti
	Nalanda Copper Plate	Royal Charter
Chandragupta II	Mehrauli Iron Pillar	Prasasti
	Junagarh Rock	Prasasti
	Bhitari Pillar	Prasasti
Skandagupta	Indore Stone Pillar	Royal Charter (Evidence of sub-infeudation)
	Paharpur Copper Plate	Royal Charter (Evidence of state ownership of land)
Buddhagupta		

Administration

- Centralised control was not as fully realized under Guptas as it had been under the Mauryas.
- Guptan administration was, thus, highly decentralised, and as patrimonial bureaucracy reached its logical conclusion. In hereditary grants it reflected the quasi-feudal character of the economy.
- It comprised a network of self governing tribes and tributary kingdoms and their chiefs often served as representatives of imperial powers.
- The Gupta king took exalted titles like the Mahadhiraja, Samrat, Ekadhiraja, Chakravartin, befitting their large empire and imperial status.
- The practice of appointing the crown prince (*Kumara*) came in vogue.
- The Gupta kings were assisted by a council of ministers (*Mantripari-shad/ Mantrimandalam*). The existence of such a council is implied in the Prayaga/ Allahabad Pillar Inscription, which speaks of the delight of the 'Sabbhyas' (members) at the selection fo Samudragupta for the throne.
- Among the high officers we may take special notice of the *Kumaramatyas* and the *Sandhivigrahika*, who are not known to inscriptions of earlier period.
- The *Kumaramatyas* formed the chief cadre for recruiting high officials under the Guptas. It was from them the Mantris, Senapati, Mahadanda-nayaka (Minister of Justice) and Sandhivigrahika (Minister of peace and war) were generally chosen.

- The office of *Sandhivigrahika* first appears under Samudragupta, whose amatya *Harisena* held this title.
- Other important officials: *Mahapratihari* (the Cheif usher of the Royal Palace), *Dandapashika* (Chief officer of Polcie Department), *Vinayasthitishapak* (Chief Officer of Religious affairs), *Mahapilupati* (Chief of Elephant corps), *Mahashvapati* (Chief of Cavalry) etc.

- The important *Bhuktis* (i.e. provinces) of Gupta period were: Magadha, Barddhaman, Pundra Vardhana, Teerbhukti (Norther Bihar), Eastern Malwa, Western Malwa and Saurashtra.

Administrative Unit	Head
Bhukti/Bhoga (i.e. Province)	Uparika/Bhogapati
Vishaya (i.e. District)	Vishayapati/Ayukta
Vithika/Nagar (i.e. City)	Nagarpati/Purapala
Gram (i.e. village)	Gramika

- The administration of city was in the hand of a council (*Paura*), which consisted of the president of the city corporation, the chief representative of the guild of merchants, a representative of the artisans and the Chief Accountant.
- Whereas under the Mauryas, the city committee was appointed by the Maurya government, under the Guptas, it was comprised of the local representatives.
- Decentralisation of the administrative authority began during the Gupta period.
- It was during the Gupta rule that the village headmen became more important than before.
- The Gupta military organisation was feudal by character (though the emperor had a large standing army).
- In the Gupta period for the first time civil and criminal law were clearly defined and demarcated.
- Gupta kings depended primarily on land revenue, varying from $1/4$ to $1/6$ of the produce.
- In Gupta period the army was to be fed by the people whenever it passed through the countryside. This tax was called *Senabhatta*.
- The villagers were also subjected to forced labour called *vishti* for serving royal army and officials.
- The Gupta period also experienced an excess of land grants, (*Agarhara* grants, *Devagrahara* grants). Land grants included the transfer of royal rights over salt and mines, which were under the royal monopoly during the Maurya period.

Society

- The varna system begins to get modified owing to the proliferation of castes. This was chiefly due to three factors : (i) A large number of foreigners had been assimilated into the Indian society primarily and were known as *Kshatriyas* (ii) There was a large absorption of tribal people into Brahmanical society through land grants. The acculturated tribes were absorbed into the *Shudra Varna*. (iii) Guilds of craftsmen were often transformed into castes as a result of the decline of trade and urban centres and the localised character of crafts.
- The social positions of the *Shudras* seems to have improved in this period. They were permitted to listen to the epics and *Puranas* and also worship a new god called Krishna.

- From around the 3rd century onwards the practice of untouchability appears to have intensified and their number registered a rise. *Katyayana*, a smriti writer of the Gupta periods, was the first to use the expression *asprasya* to denote the untouchable.
- The position of women deteriorated further. Polygamy was common.
- Early marriages were advocated and often pre-puberty marriages took place.
- The first example of *Sati* appears in Gupta time in 510 AD in Eran in Madhya Pradesh. (*Bhanugupta's Eran Inscription* – 510 AD)
- Women were denied any right to property except for *Stridhana* in the form of jewellery and garments.
- Under the patronage of Gupta ruler, Vaishnavism became very popular.
- The gods were activated by their unions with the respective consorts. Thus, Laxmi got her association with Vishnu and Parvati got her association with Shiva.
- This was the period of evolution of Vajrayanism and Buddhist tantric cults.
- Idol worship became a common feature of Hinduism from Gupta period onwards.

Economy

- It is argued by many scholars that the state was the exclusive owner of land. The most decisive argument in favour of the exclusive state ownership of land is in the *Pahadpur Copper Plate inscription* of Buddhagupta.
- From the economic stand point, we may classify land under the Gupta period into 5 groups : 1. *Kshetra Bhoomi*-Cultivable land 2. *Khila*- Waste land 3. *Vastu Bhoomi*-Habitable land 4. *Charagah Bhoomi*-Pasture land 5. *Aprahata Bhoomi*-Forest land.
- In the Gupta period land survey is evident from the *Poona plates of Prabhavati Gupta* and many other inscriptions.
- An officer named *Pustapala* maintained records of all land transactions in the district.
- The Guptas issued the largest number of gold coins in ancient India, but in gold content, Gupta coins are not as pure as Kushanas.
- The Guptas also issued good number of silver coins for local exchange.
- The Gupta copper coins are very few as compared to those of Kushanas, which show that use of money did not touch common people.
- Gupta period witnessed decline in long distance trade.
- Trade with the Roman Empire declined after 3rd century AD.

Bhaga

King's customary share of the produce normally amounting to 1/6th of the produce, paid by all cultivators.

Bhoga

Periodic supplies of fruits, fire wood, flowers etc., which the villagers had to furnish to king.

Bali

Originally it was a voluntary offering by the people to the king, but later it became compulsory. During the Gupta period, it seems to be an additional and oppressive tax.

Uparikara

An extra tax levied on all subjects.

- Indian merchants began to rely more heavily on the South-East Asian trade.
- The ports of the East coast- *Tamralipti*, *Ghantashala* and *Kandura*-handled the North-Indian trade with South-East Asia; and those of the West coast- *Bharaoach*, *Chaul*, *Kalyan* and *Cambay*-traded with the Mediterranean and West Asia.

Culture

- The architecture of the Gupta period may be divided into three categories :

 1. Rock-cut caves : *Ajanta* and *Ellora* Group (Maharashtra) and *Bagh* (MP).
 2. Structural Temples : *Dasavatara temple* of Deogarh (Jhansi district, UP)-the oldest and the best, *Siva temple* of Bhumra (Nagod, MP), *Vishnu* and *Kankal temple* (Tigawa, MP), *Parvati temple* of Nanchana-Kuthwa (Panna district, MP), *Shiva temple* of Koh (Satna, Panna, MP), *Krishna brick temple* of Bhittargaon (Kanpur, UP), *Laxman temple* of Sirpur (Raipur, MP), *Vishnu temple* and *Varah temple* of Eran (MP).
 3. Stupas : *Mirpur khas* (Sindh), *Dhammadekh* (Saranath) and *Ratnagiri* (Orissa).

- The art of architecture attained great heights. By evolving the *Nagara Style (Shikhar style)*, the Gupta art ushers in the history of Indian architecture. Shikhara Shrine, a Vaishnava symbol, one of the most characteristic features of temple architecture, found its fullest development during this period. The temple architecture, with its *garbha griha* (shrine room) in which the image of the god was placed, began with the Guptas.
- The fragmentary remains of *Dasavatara temple of Deogarh* is the example of the most ornate and beautifully composed Gupta temple building.
- The centres of the Gandhar sculptures declined and their places were taken by *Benaras*, *Patliputra* and *Mathura*.
- For the first time we get images of *Vishnu*, *Shiva* and other Gods.
- Among the best specimen of the images of Buddha is a *seated Buddha image of Sarnath*, which depicts the Buddha preaching the Dhamma.
- Of the Brahmanical images perhaps the most impressive was *the Great Boar (Varah)* carved in relief at the entrance of a cave at Udayagiri.
- The painting of this period are found in *Bagh* (Dhar district, MP), and *Ajanta* (Aurangabad district, Maharashtra). The frescoes of the Ajanta caves are the masterpieces of the paintings of this age.

Religious Literature

A. Hindu Texts : Some of the old religious books (viz, *Vayu Purana*, *Vishnu Purana*, *Matsya Purana*; *Ramayan* and *Mahabharata*, *Manu Smriti*) were re-written. *Narada Smriti*, *Parashara Smriti*, *Brihaspati Smriti* and *Katyayana Smriti* were written in this period.

B. Buddhist Texts : Abhidharma Kosha (*Dignaga*), *Vishudhimagga* (*Buddhaghosa*)

C. Jain texts : *Nyayavartam* (*Siddhseva*)

Secular Literature

Ritusamhar (first poetry), *Meghadutam*, *Kumarasam-bhavam*, *Raghuvamsam*; *Malavikagnimitra* (first drama), *Vikramorvashi-yam*, *Abhijnana-Shakun-talam* (*Kalidasa*); *Mudrarakshasa* (*Visakhadatta*), *Kiratarjuniya* (*Bharavi*); *Kavyadarsa*, *Dasa Kumar Charita* (*Dandin*); *Mrichchhakatika* (*Sudraka*); *Panchatantra* (*Vishnu Sharma*); *Kamasutra* (*Vatsyayan*).

Scientific Literature

Aryabhata, Surya Siddhanta (*Aryabhatta*), Brahmasidhanta (*Brahmagupta*), Pancha Sidhantaka, Vrishni Samhita, Vrishni Jataka, Leghu Jataka (*Varahamihira*), Ashtanga Hridaya (medicine) (*Vagbhata*), Navanitakam (*Dhanvantri*), Mahabhashkarya, Leghubhashkarya (*Bhaskara*), Bhasyavyuveda (*Polkopya*).

Note:

1. 'Manusmriti' was translated in English under the title of 'Institutes of Hindoo Law' by *William Jones*.
2. 'Abhijnana Shakuntalam' (i.e. recognition of Shakuntala) was translated in English by *William Jones*.
3. *Kalidasa* is known as 'the Shakespeare of India'.
4. 'Mrichchakatika' (i.e. the clay cart), love story of a poor brahman *Charudatta* and virtuous courtesan *Vesantasena*, is notable for its realistic depiction of city life.
5. 'Kamasutra' is the earliest book on sex.
6. 'Brahmasidhanta' was translated in Arabic under the title of 'Sind Hind'.

Gupta Period : Golden Age of Ancient India—Reality or Myth ?**Arguments :**

For : 1. There were political units; foreign rule was completely removed and peace and prosperity prevailed 2. Enlightened character of government, i.e. taxes were light, punishment mild, etc. 3. Revival of Hinduism but there was tolerance of all other religions 4. Use of Sanskrit developed and art and literature flourished during the period 5. Great personage like Kalidasa, Amarsinha, Dhanavantri, Aryabhata, Varahamihira etc. lived during this period.

Against : 1. Existence of too many feudatories 2. Absence of large Central army and Bureaucracy 3. Development of Feudal elements (Increasing land grants, Serfdom, Sub-infeudation etc.) 4. Decline of trade and Guilds 5. Decline of urban centres 6. Increasing Varna distinction and social disorder 7. Decline in status of women.

7. Post-Gupta Period/Vardhana Dynasty (550 AD-647 AD)**Pushyabhuti/Vardhana Dynasty**

- The Pushyabhuti or Vardhana dynasty was founded at *Thaneswar* (Kurukshetra district, Haryana) by *Pushyabhuti* probably towards the beginning of the 6th century. Pushyabhuti were the feudatories of the Guptas, but has assumed independence after the Hun invasions.
- The first important ruler of the dynasty was *Prabhakaravardhana* (580-605 AD).
- Prabhakaravardhana was succeeded by his eldest son *Rajyavardhana* (605-606 AD).
- Rajyavardhana had to face problems from the day of his succession to the throne. *Grahavarman*, the Maukhari ruler of Kannauj and husband of *Rajyashri* (sister of Rajyavardhana) was murdered by *Deva Gupta* (the ruler of Malwa) who in alliance with *Shashanka* (ruler of Gaud or North-Western Bengal) now occupied Kannauj and imprisoned Rajyashri.
- Rajyavardhana, therefore, undertook a campaign against Deva Gupta and killed him but he was killed by Shashanka in 606 AD. In the meanwhile Rajyashri escaped into the forests of Central India.

Harshavardhana : 606-647 AD

- After the killing of Rajavardhana, his younger brother, Harshavardhana also known as *Siladitya*, ascended the Pushyabhuti throne in 606 AD and from this year started the *Harsha Era*.
- After ascending the throne Harsha first rescued his widowed sister Rajyashri, from the Vindhyan forest, where she was going to throw herself into the fire.
- Harsha drove out Shashanka from Kannauj who had occupied it after killing of Rayavardhana. He not only unified *Kannauj* with Thaneswar but also made it his new capital, which made him the most powerful king of North India.
- Harsha thereafter, proceeded towards the east against *Shashanka* with a view to avenge the death of his brother, Rajavardhana and brother-in-law, Grahavarman. Harsha was not successful in his first expedition against Gaud, but in his second expedition towards the close of his reign, after the death of Shashanka (died in 637 AD), he conquered Magadha and Shashanka's empire.
- Harshavardhana defeated *Dhruvasena II*, the Maitraka ruler of Vallabhi. However, Harsha, in order to secure the safety of the western boundary, reinstated him and gave his daughter in marriage to Dhruvasena II. Dhruvasena II accepted the position of a feudatory vassal. It was an important diplomatic achievement of Harsha.
- The course of Harsha's conquests suffered a serious setback on his expedition towards the Deccan. *Pulkeshin II* of Chalukya dynasty of Vatapi/Vadami inflicted a decisive defeat on him at the bank of Narmada. It was the only defeat of Harsha's victorious life. The Chalukya records describe Harsha as the lord of whole of Northern country (*Sakalottarapatheshvara*).
- The area under his control covered many parts of Northern India, Eastern Rajasthan and the Ganges Valley as far as Assam. His empire included territories of distant feudal kings too.
- Harsha maintained diplomatic relations with China. In 641 AD, he sent an envoy to Tai-Tsung, the Tang Emperor of China. Three Chinese missions subsequently visited his court. *Huen-Tsang*, the celebrated Chinese pilgrim, visited India during Harsha's reign. He spent about eight years (635-643 AD) in the dominions of Harsha.
- Huen-Tsang mentions two most celebrated events of Harsha's reign the assemblies at Kannauj and at Prayaga. The *Kannauj assembly* (643 AD) was held in the honour of Huen-Tsang and to popularise Mahayana sect of Buddhism. The *Prayaga assembly* was held in 643-644 AD. In *Prayaga*, Harshavardhana used to celebrate religious festivals at the end of every five years, at the confluence of the Ganges, the Yamuna and the Saraswati. It is said that this was the beginning of *Kumbha fair*.
- Harshavardhana was a Shaiva by faith, but he showed equal respect to other sects. Huen-Tsang portrays him as a liberal Buddhist (Mahayana) who also honoured gods of other sects.
- According to Huen-Tsang, *Nalanda University*, meant for Buddhist monks, was maintained by the revenue from 100 villages which granted by Harshavardhana.

- He died in 647 AD. Harsha does not appear to have any heir to his throne, which was usurped after his death by his minister named Arunashva.
- Harshavardhana was not only a patron of learning, but was himself an accomplished author. He wrote three Sanskrit plays—*Nagananda*, *Ratnavali* and *Priyadarsika*. He gathered around him a circle of learned men, of whom *Banabhatta*, the author of *Harshacharita* (an important historical work narrating the incidents of the earlier part of Harsha's reign) and *Kadambari* (a poetical novel of great literary merit) and *Mayur*, the author of *Mayur Shatak* and *Surya Shatak* are the well known.
- Harsha governed his empire on the same lines as the Guptas did, except that this administration had become more feudal and decentralised.

States of the Deccan and South India

Chalukyas of Vatapi/Badami : 543-755 AD

- The Vakataka power was followed by Chalukyas.
- Chalukyas established their capital at Vatapi/Badami in the district of Bijapur in Karnataka.
- *Pulakesin II* (609-42 AD) was able to check Harsha's design to conquer Deccan.
- *Aihole inscription* is an eulogy written by his court poet *Ravikirti*.
- He sent an ambassador to the Persian King Khusrau II in 625 AD and also received one from him.
- The Chinese pilgrim *Huen-Tsang* visited his kingdom.
- Pallava ruler *Narsimhavarman 'Mammala'* invaded the Chalukya kingdom, killed Pulakesin II and captured Vatapi. He adopted the title *Vatapikonda* i.e. the conqueror of Vatapi.
- In 757 AD, Chalukyas were overthrown by their feudatories, the Rashtrakutas.

Vesara Style/Deccan Style

- Chalukyas began the Vesara style or Deccan style in building structural temples, which however, reached culmination, only under the Rashtrakutas and the Hoyasalas.
- **Specimens of Chalukyan Temples :** 1. Vesara style—*Jinendra temple/Meguti temple*—Aihole (Ravikirti); *Vishnu temple*—Aihole, *Ladh Khan temple* (attributed to god Surya)—Aihole, *Durga temple*—Aihole; Aihole is called a 'town of temples' because it contains about 70 temples. 2. Nagara style : *Papanatha temple*—Pattadakal 3. Dravida style : *Virupaksha temple* and *Sangamesvara temple*—Pattadakal.

Pallavas of Kanchi : 575-897 AD

- There is controversy regarding the origin of Pallavas. Possibly the Pallavas were a local tribe who established their authority in the Tondaimandalam or the land of creepers.
- They were orthodox Brahmanical Hindus and their capital was Kanchi.
- Both Chalukyas and Pallavas tried to establish their supremacy over land between Krishna and Tungabhadra.
- Pallava king *Narsimhavarman* (630-668 AD) occupied Chalukyan capital

Vatapi in about 642 AD and assumed the title *Vatapikonda* i.e. conqueror of Vatapi.

- Pallavas were instrumental in spreading Indian culture in South-East Asia. Till the 8th century AD Pallava influence was predominant in Cambodia. The Pallava type of Shikhara is to be found in the temples of Java, Cambodia and Annam.

Pallava Art

- Pallavas began the Dravida style of temple architecture, which reached culmination under the rule of Cholas.
- The development of temple architecture, particularly Dravida style, under the Pallavas can be seen in four stages :

<i>Mahendravarmana Group</i>	<i>Mahendravarmana I (600-630 AD)</i>	Temple at Bhairavkona (North Arcot Distt.), Ananteswar temple at Undavalli (Guntur Distt.)
<i>Mammala Group</i>	<i>Narsimhavarman I 'Mammala'(630-668 AD)</i>	Mandapa temples and Ratha temples (Sapt Pagodas) at Mammalapuram (Mahabalipuram)
<i>Rajasimha Group</i>	<i>Narsimhavarman II 'Rajsimha' (680-720 AD)</i>	Kailashnatha and Vaikunth Perumal Temple at Kanchi, Shore temple at Mammalapuram
<i>Aparajit Group</i>	<i>Nandivarman 'Aparajit' (879-897 AD)</i>	Mukteshwar and Matangeshwar temple at Kanchi, Parshurameswar temple at Gudimallam

- The Pallavas also contributed to the development of sculpture in South India. The Pallava sculpture is indebted largely to the Buddhist tradition. It is more monumental and linear in form, thus avoiding the typical ornamentation of the Deccan sculpture. The best example is the Descent of the Ganges or Arjuna's Penance at Mammalapuram.

Gupta 'n' Post-Gupta Dynasties and Their Founders

Dynasty	Founder
The Chalukyas of Vatapi	Jayasimha
The Gangas of Talakad	Konakanivarma
The Guptas of Magadha	Shri Gupta
The Kadambas of Vanavasi	Mayurasharman
The Kingdom of Gaud	Shashanka
The Kingdom of Thaneswar	Pushyabhuti
The Later-Guptas of Magadha-Malwa	Krishnagupta
The Maitrakas of Vallabhi	Bhattarka
The Maukhariis of Kannauj	Yajnavarman
The Pallavas of Kanchi	Simhavarman
The Pandyas of Madurai	Kodungon
The Vakatakas	Vindhya shakti

Medieval India

8. Early-Medieval Period (650-1206)

I. North India (Rajputa Period)

After Harshavardhana, the Rajputas emerged as a powerful force in Northern India and dominated the Indian political scene for nearly 500 years from the 7th century.

10 Important Rajputa Kingdoms	Period	Capital	Founder
Chauhan / Chahaman of Delhi-Ajmer	7th Cen.-1192	Delhi	Vasudeva
Pratihara / Parihar of Kannauj	730-1036	Avanti, Kannauj	Nagabhatt I
Pawar / Parmar of Malwa	790-1150	Ujjain, Dhar	Seeak II 'Sri Harsha'
Chaulukya / Solanki of Kathiyawar	942-1187	Anihalvada	Mularaja I
Rastrakuta of Malkhand	752-973	Malkhand / Manyakheta	Dantidurg (Danti Varman II)
Chandela of Jejakabhukti	831-1202	Khajuraho, Mahoba, Kalinjar	Nannuk Chandela
Kalchuri / Haihaya of Chedi	850-1211	Tripuri	Kokkala I
Gadhawal / Rathor of Kannauj	1090-1194	Kannauj	Chandradeva
Tomar of Surrounding areas of Haryana and Delhi	—	Dhillika	—
Guhilot / Sisodiya of Mewar	8th Cen.-1930	Chittor	Bappa Rawal, Hammir I

Tripartite Struggle

- Towards the close of the 8th century AD, there were three great power in India - the *Palas* in the East, the *Gurjar-Pratihara* in the North and the *Rashtrakutas* in the Deccan.
- The tripartite struggle for the supremacy among the Palas, Partiharas and the Rashtrakutas was the important event of these centuries.
- The main cause for this struggle was the desire to possess the city of Kannauj (Kannauj Distt., UP) which was then a symbol of sovereignty.

The Palas : 750-1150

Capital : Muddagiri/Munger (Bihar)

- *Copala* founded the Pala empire in 750 AD.
- His son *Dharmapala* (770-810) succeeded him. Dharmapala revived *Nalanda University*.
- He founded the *Vikramshila University*.
- The Pala dynasty was succeeded by *Sena dynasty* of Bengal. *Jayadeva* ('Gita Govinda') was the great court poet of *Luxman Sen*.

The Pratiharas : 730-1036

- The Pratiharas are also called Gurjara-Pratiharas probably because they originated from Gujarat or South-West Rajasthan.
- *Bhoja / Mihir Bhoja* (836-882) was the greatest ruler of this dynasty.
- He was a devotee of Vishnu and adopted the title of '*Adivarah*'.

The Rashtrakutas : 752-973

- *Dantidurg* (752-756), who fixed his capital at *Malkhand / Malkhed* (Gulbarga distt., Karnataka), founded the Kingdom.
- The greatest Rashtrakuta rulers were *Govinda III* (793-814) and *Amoghavarsha* (814-878). Amoghavarsha ruled for 64 years but by temperament he preferred pursuit of religion and literature to war. He was himself an author and wrote *Kavirajamarga*, the earliest Kannada book on Poetics.
- The famous rock-cut *temple of Kailash (Shiva) at Ellora* was built by one of the Rashtrakuta kings *Krishna I*.

Other Important Rulers

- **Prithviraj Chauhan (1178-92)** : He ruled over Delhi and Agra and fought two important battles, viz. *First Battle of Tarain* was fought in 1191 between the forces of Prithviraj Chauhan and Mohammad Ghori in which the latter was defeated. *Second Battle of Tarain* was fought in 1192 when Mohammad Ghori again invaded India in which Prithviraj Chauhan was defeated and captured and later on slain. The Kingdom of Delhi fell to Mohammad Ghori. The Battle of Tarain had great significance in the political scene as it led to the establishment of Muslim rule over North India and, subsequently, in the South for several centuries.
- **Jai Chand Gadhawal/Rathor (1169-94)** : He was the last Rajputa King who was also defeated and killed by Mohammad Ghori in the *Battle of Chandawar* (1194).
- **Rana Kumbha, the Sisodiya ruler of Mewar (1433-68)** : Rana Kumbha was the famous ruler of Mewar. He defeated Mohammad Khilji and erected the Tower of victory (*Vijay Stambha*) in *Chittor*. His successors *Rana Sangram Singh (Rana Sanga)* and *Rana Pratap* were also great kings of Mewar state.
- **Salient features of the Rajputa Kingdoms** : The country remained free of invasions but lost foreign contact. The caste system was rigid. The Rajputas were proud, warrior and people but hospitable. In the field of culture many great fortresses and temples were built by them such as *Khajuraho* (MP), *Lingaraja temple* (Bhubaneshwar, Orissa), *Sun temple* (Konarka, Orissa), the *Jagannath temple* (Puri), *Dilwara temple* (Mount Abu).
- **Causes of the Decline of Rajputas** : Lack of unity and foresightedness, caste system, and defective military organization were some of the causes for the downfall of the Rajputas.

II. South India (Cholas and Others)

The Chola Empire : 850-1279AD

Capital : Tanjore, Gangaikondacholapuram

- The founder of the Chola dynasty was *Vijayalaya*, who was at first a feudatory of the Pallavas. He captured Tanjore in 850 AD.
- The greatest Chola rulers were *Rajaraja* (985-1014AD) and his son *Rajendra I* (1014-1044AD).
- *Rajaraja* built *Vrihadeshwar / Rajarajeswar* temple (attributed to Shiva) at Tanjore.

- **Rajendra I** conquered Orissa, Bengal, Burma and Andaman and Nicobar islands. The Chola dynasty was at its zenith during his reign.
- Rajendra I assumed the title of Gangaikondachola and built a city called Gangaikondacholapuram.
- The last ruler of Chola dynasty was Rajendra III.
- The king was the head of central authority helped by a council of ministers, but the administration was democratic.
- The Chola empire was divided into **Mandalams** (Province) and these in turn were divided into **Valanadu** (Commissionary), **Nadu** (District) and **Kurram** (a group of villages).
- The arrangement of local self-government is regarded as the basic feature of the administration of Cholas.
- Land revenue and trade tax were the main sources of income.
- The style of architecture which came into vogue during this period is called Dravida e.g. **Kailashnath temple of Kanchipuram**.
- Another aspect was image-making which reached its climax in dancing figure of Shiva called **Nataraja**.
- **Kambana** who wrote **Ramavataram** was one of the greatest figures of Tamil poetry. His Ramayana is also known as **Kamba Ramayana**.
- **Kambana, Kuttana** and **Pugalendi** are considered as 'three gems of Tamil poetry'.
- In the temples, the **Vimana** or the tall pyramidal tower dominates the whole structure of the shrine and imparts an extraordinary dignity to it.
- **Gopuram** and **Garbhagriha** are the other two important structures.
- The best specimens are the temples of Vijayalaya, Choleshwara, the Nageshwara temple, the Koranganath temple and the Muvarakovitha temple.

Other Kingdoms of South

Kingdom	Capital	Real Founder
Western/Later Chalukyas (973-1200)	Kalyani, Karnataka	Tailap II
Kakatiyas (1110-1326)	Warangal, Andhra Pradesh	Prolaraja II
Yadavas (1187-1312)	Devagiri, Maharashtra	Bhillam V
Hoyasalas (1173-1342)	Dwarasamudra, Karnataka	Vittigadev 'Vishnuvardhan'

Note : The temple of Hoyaleshwara at Dwarasamudra (Modern Halebid) is the greatest achievement of Hoyasala art.

9. Sultanate Period (1206-1526AD)

I. The Delhi Sultanate

The Background of Delhi Sultanate

- **First Muslim Invasion-Mohammad Bin Qasim's Invasion (712AD)** : Mohammad Bin Qasim invaded India in 712 AD and conquered Sindh which became the province of Omayyad Khilafat.
- **First Turk Invasion-Mahmud Ghaznavi's Invasion (998-1030 AD)** : Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni led about 17 expeditions to India to enrich himself by

taking away the wealth from India. In 1025 he attacked and raided the most celebrated Hindu temple of Somnath that lies on the coast in the extreme south of Kathiawar. The temple was destroyed in 1026 AD.

- **Second Turk Invasion-Mohammad Ghori's Invasion (1175-1206 AD)** : Mohammad Ghori invaded India and laid the foundation of the Muslim dominion in India. He may be considered the 'founder of muslim rule' in India.
- **Reasons for the Success of Turks in India** : 1. Rajputas lacked unity and organisation and were divided by rivalries 2. There was no central government 3. The Rajput Kingdoms were small and scattered 4. The Turks were better organised and took advantage of the lack of mutual co-operation among the Rajputas.

The Delhi Sultanate : 1206-1526 AD

- Mohammed Ghori's conquests became the nucleus of a new political entity in India-the Delhi Sultanate. This period can be divided into 5 distinct periods viz. 1. The Slave Dynasty (1206-90) 2. The Khilji Dynasty (1290-1320) 3. The Tughlaq Dynasty (1320-1414) 4. The Sayyid Dynasty (1414-51) 5. The Lodhi Dynasty (1451-1526).

The Slave Dynasty : 1206-90 AD

Qutubuddin Aibak : 1206-10

- A Turkish slave by origin, he was purchased by Mohammad Ghori who later made him his Governor. After the death of Ghori, Aibak became the master of Hindustan and founded the Slave Dynasty in 1206. For his generosity, he was given the title of **Lakh Bakhsh** (giver of Lakhs).
- He died in 1210 while playing **Chaugan** or Polo.
- He constructed two mosques-**Quwat-ul-Islam** at Delhi and **Adhai din ka Jhonpra** at Ajmer. He also began the construction of **Qutub Minar**, in the honour of famous Sufi Saint **Khwaja Qutubuddin Bakhtiyar Kaki**.
- Aibak was a great patron of learning and patronised writers like **Hasan-un-Nizami**, author of 'Taj-ul-Massir' and **Fakhruddin**, author of 'Tarikh-i-Mubarak Shahi'.

Shamsuddin Iltutmish : 1211-36

- He was a slave of Qutubuddin Aibak and occupied the throne of Delhi in 1211 after deposing **Aram Bakhsh**.
- He was a very capable ruler and is regarded as the 'real founder of the Delhi Sultanate'. He made **Delhi** the capital in place of Lahore.
- He saved Delhi Sultanate from the wrath of **Chengiz Khan**, the Mongol leader, by refusing shelter to **Khwarizm Shah**, whom Chengiz was chasing.
- He introduced the silver coin (**tanka**) and the copper coin (**jital**). He organised the **Iqta System** and introduced reforms in civil administration and army, which was now centrally paid and recruited.
- He set up an official nobility of slaves known as **Chahalgani/ Chalisa** (group of 40).
- He completed the construction of **Qutub Minar** which was started by Aibak.
- He patronised **Minhaj-us-Siraj**, author of 'Tabaqat-i-Nasiri'.

Ruknuddin : 1236

- He was the son of Iltutmish and was crowned by her mother, *Shah Turkan*, after death of Iltutmish. He was deposed by Razia, daughter of Iltutmish when he was out of capital to curb a rebellion in Avadh against him.

Razia Sultan : 1236-40

- Though Iltutmish had nominated his daughter Razia as the successor, the nobles placed Ruknuddin Firoj on the throne. However, Razia got rid of Ruknuddin and ascended the throne.
- She was the 'first and only Muslim lady who ever ruled India'.
- She was popular among the people but was not acceptable to the nobles and theologians. She further offended the nobles by her preference for an Abyssian slave *Yakut*.
- Soon after her accession, the governors of Multan, Badaun, Hansi and Lahore openly revolted against her. There was a serious rebellion in Bhatinda. *Altunia*, governor of Bhatinda refused to accept suzerainty of Razia. Razia accompanied by Yakut marched against Altunia.
- However, Altunia got Yakut murdered and imprisoned Razia. Subsequently, Razia married Altunia and both of them marched towards Delhi.
- In 1240 AD, Razia became the victim of a conspiracy and was assassinated near Kaithal (Haryana).

Bahram Shah : 1240-42

- After Razia, Iltutmish's third son Bahram Shah was put on the throne by the powerful turkish council *Chalisa*.
- He was considered only as de jure ruler, while Naib-e-mamlakat (the regent) was the de facto ruler.
- Bahram Shah lost his life after his failed attempt to assert his authority once on the throne.

Masud Shah : 1242-46

- He was the son of Ruknuddin but was deposed after *Balban* and Nasiruddin Mahamud's Mother, *Malika-e-Jahan*, conspired against him and established Nasiruddin Mahamud as the new Sultan.

Nasiruddin Mahamud : 1246-66

- He was the son of Iltutmish and was known as the *Darvesi King* as he was very pious and noble. He died in 1266.

Ghiyasuddin Balban : 1266-87

- Balban ascended the throne in 1266.
- He broke the power of *Chalisa* and restored the prestige of the crown. That was his greatest contribution towards the stability of the Sultanate.
- To keep himself well-informed Balban appointed spies.
- He created a strong centralised army to deal with internal disturbances and to cheek Mongols who were posing a serious danger to Delhi Sultante.
- He established the military department *Diwan-i-Arz*.
- The Persian court model influenced Balban's conception of Kingship. He took up the title of *Zil-i-Ilahi* (Shadow of God).

- He introduced *Sijda* (prostration before the monarch) and *Paibos* (kissing the feet of monarch) as the normal forms of salutation.
- He destroyed the Mewati Rajputa brigandage in the *doab*, where forests were cut and forts built.
- In his last days he overlooked the Sultanate affairs due to the death of his eldest and most loving son, *Muhammad*, and rebellion by his closest and most loved slave, *Tughril*. Muhammad died fighting the Mongolians in 1285 while Tughril was captured and beheaded.

Kaiqubad : 1287-90

- A grandson of Balban was seated on the throne by *Fakruddin*, the Kotwal of Delhi who assumed high political authority during the last days of Balban. But Kaiqubad was killed by the Khiliji family, which saw the end of Slave dynasty and beginning of Khiliji dynasty at Delhi throne.

The Khilji Dynasty : 1290-1320 AD**Jalaluddin Khilji : 1290-96**

- Jalaluddin Khilji founded the Khilji dynasty.

Alauddin Khilji : 1296-1316

- He was a nephew and son-in-law of Jalaluddin Khilji. Alauddin Khilji killed him and succeeded the throne in 1296.
- He was the first Turkish Sultan of Delhi who separated religion from politics. He proclaimed 'Kingship knows no Kinship'.

Alauddin's Imperialism

- Alauddin annexed Gujarat (1298), Ranthambhor (1301), Mewar (1303), Malwa (1305), Jalor (1311). In Deccan, Alauddin's army led by *Malik Kafur* defeated *Ram Chandra* (Yadava ruler of Devagiri), *Pratap Rudradeva* (Kakatiya ruler of Warangal), Vir *Ballal* III (Hoyasala ruler of Dwarsamudra) and *Vir Pandya* (Pandya ruler of Madurai).

Administrative Reforms

- In order to avoid the problems created by the nobles, Alauddin issued 4 ordinances. *The Ist ordinance* aimed at the confiscation of the religious endowments and free grants of lands. By *the IIInd ordinance* Alauddin reorganised the spy system. *The IIIrd ordinance* prohibited the use of wine. *The IVth ordinance* issued by Alauddin laid down that nobles should not have social gathering and they should not inter-marry without his permission.
- He introduced the system of *Dagh* (the branding of horse) and *Chehra* (descriptive roll of soldiers).
- Alauddin ordered that all land was to be measured and then the share of state was to be fixed.
- The post of special officer called *Mustakharaj* was created for the purpose of collection of revenue.
- The peasants had to pay the produce as land revenue.
- Alauddin sought to fix cost of all commodities. For the purpose he set up three markets at Delhi : one market for food grains, the second for costly cloth and third for horses, slaves and cattle. Each market was under the control of a high

officer called *Shahna* who maintained a register of the merchants and strictly controlled the shopkeepers and the prices. The check on market was kept by two officers- *Diwan-i-Riyasat* and *Shahna-i-Mandi*.

- All goods for sale were brought to an open market called *Sara-i-Adal*.
- Many forts were built by him and the most important of them was Alai fort. He also constructed the *Alai Darwaja*, the entrance gate of Qutub Minar. He also built the Palace of thousand Pillars called *Hazar Sutun*.
- He was a patron of art and learning. *Amir Khusrau*, the poet-musician was his favourite court poet.
- In 1316, after death of Alauddin, Malik Kafur, called *Hajardinari* seized the throne. Before Kafur died, he nominated Shihabuddin (Alauddin's 6 year old prince) as King but imprisoned the eldest prince Mubarak Khan. Kafur was killed by the loyalists of the royal family of Alauddin.

Mubarak Khan : 1316-20

- After the death of Kafur, Mubarak khan was freed from prison and worked as regent for Shihabuddin. He captured the throne at the first opportunity he got, but could rule only for a years as he sank into debauchery and could not give up his dissipated lifestyle. He awarded his lover *Mubarak Hassan* authority over army and palace guards, who soon obtained full control over Sultan's palace. Mubarak Hassan was given the title Khustau Khan by the Sultan and within months Khusrau killed Mubarak Khan and assumed the title of Nasirudin in mid-1320.

Khusrau Khan : 1320

- Khusrau Khan was killed by Ghazi Malik, governor of Dipalpur, when he tried to oppose a rebellion by Ghazi Malik and his son Fakhruddin Jauna. This brought the end of Khilji dynasty and established the Tughlaq dynasty on the throne of Delhi.

The Tughlaq Dynasty : 1320-1414 AD

Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq : 1320-25

- Khusrau Khan, the last king of the Khilji dynasty was killed by Ghazi Malik. Ghazi Malik ascended the throne assuming the title Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq.
- He died in an accident and his son Jauna (Ulugh Khan) succeeded him under the title Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq.

Mohammad-bin Tughlaq : 1325-51

- Prince *Jauna*, son of Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq ascended the throne in 1325.
- He tried to introduce many administrative reforms. He had 5 ambitious projects for which he became particularly debatable.

1. **Taxation in the Doab (1326)**: The Sultan made an ill-advised financial experiment in the Doab between the Ganges and Yamuna. He not only increased the rate of taxation but also revived and created some additional *Abwabs* or cesses. Although the share of the state remained as in time of Alauddin, it was fixed arbitrary not on the basis of actual produce. Prices were also fixed artificially for covering the produce into money. It is said that the increase was twenty fold and to this were added *Ghari* or house tax and the *Charahi* or pasture tax. The Sultan created a new department of Agriculture called *Diwan-i-Kohi*. The

main object of this department was to bring more land under cultivation by giving direct help to peasants.

2. **Transfer of Capital (1327)** : The most controversial step which Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq undertook soon after his accession was the so-called transfer of capital from *Delhi* to *Devagiri*. Devagiri had been a base for the expansion of Turkish rule in South India. It appears that the Sultan wanted to make Devagiri second capital so that he might be able to control South India better. Devagiri was thus named *Daulatabad*. After a couple of years Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq decided to abandon Daulatabad largely because he soon found that just as he could not control South India from Delhi, he could not control North from Daulatabad.

3. **Introduction of Token Currency (1329)** : Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq decided to introduce bronze coins, which were to have same value as the silver coins. Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq might have been successful if he could prevent people from forging the new coins. He was not able to do so and soon the new coins began to be greatly devalued in markets. Finally Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq decided to withdraw the token currency. He promised to exchange silver pieces for bronze coins.

4. **Proposed Khurasan Expedition (1329)** : The Sultan had a vision of universal conquest. He decided to conquer Khurasan and Iraq and mobilised a huge army for the purpose. He was encouraged to do so by Khurasani nobles who had taken shelter in his court. Moreover, there was instability in Khurasan on account of the unpopular rule of Abu Said. This project was also abandoned.

5. **Qarachil Expedition (1330)** : This expedition was launched in Kumaon hills in Himalayas allegedly to counter Chinese incursions. It also appears that the expedition was directed against some refractory tribes in Kumaon-Garhwal region with the object of bringing them under Delhi Sultanate. The first attack was a success but when the rainy season set in, the invaders suffered terribly.

- His five projects led to revolts. His last days were spent in checking the revolts (altogether 36 revolts in 25 years).

1335 Mudurai became independent (Jalaluddin Ahsan Shah)

1336 Foundation of Vijayanagar (Harihar and Bukka), Warangal became independent (Kanhaiya)

1341-47 Revolts of Sada Amirs and Foundation of Bahamani in 1347 (Hasan Gangu)

- He died in *Thatta* while campaigning in Sindh against Taghi, a turkish slave.

Firoz Shah Tughlaq : 1351-88

- He was a cousin of Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq. After his death the nobles and theologians of the court selected Firoz Shah as the next Sultan.
- After his accession Firoz Tughlaq was faced with the problem of preventing the imminent break up of Delhi Sultanate. He adopted the policy of trying to appease the nobility, army and theologians and of asserting his authority over only such areas, which could be easily administered from the centre. He therefore made no attempt to re-assert his authority over South India and Deccan.
- He decreed that whenever a noble died his son should be allowed to succeed to his position including his Iqta and if he had no sons, his son-in-law and in his absence his slave was be succeed.

- Firoz extended the principle of heredity to the army. Soldiers were allowed to rest in peace and to send in their place their sons. The soldiers were not paid in cash but by assignments on land revenue of villages (*Vajeha*). This novel technique of payment led to many abuses.
- Firoz tried to win over the theologians proclaiming that he was a true Muslim king and the state under him was truly Islamic. In order to keep the theologians satisfied a number of them were appointed to high offices.
- He tried to ban practices which the orthodox theologians considered as non Islamic. Thus he prohibited the practice of Muslim women going out to worship at graves of saints.
- It was during the time of Firoz that *Jizya* became a separate tax. Firoz refused to exempt the Brahmanas from payment of Jizya since this was not provided for in *Shariat*.
- The new system of taxation was according to Quran. Four kinds of taxes sanctioned by the Quran were imposed. These taxes were *Kharaj*, *Zakat*, *Jizya* and *Khams*. Kharaj was the land tax, which was equal to 1/10 of the produce of the land, Zakat was 2% tax on property, Jizya was levied on non-Muslims and Khams was 1/5 of the booty captured during war.
- In order to encourage agriculture, the Sultan paid a lot of attention to irrigation. Firoz repaired a number of canals and imposed *Haque-i-Sharb* or *Hasil-i-Sharb* (water tax).
- He was a great builder. The cities of Fatehabad, Hisar, Jaunpur and Firozabad stand to his credit.
- The two pillars of Ashoka, one from Topra (Haryana) and other from Merrut (U.P.) were brought to Delhi.
- The Sultan established at Delhi a hospital described as *Dar-ul-Shifa*.
- A new department of *Diwan-i-Khairat* was set up to make provisions for the marriage of poor girls.
- Another step which Firoz took was both economic and political in nature. He ordered his officials that whenever they attacked a place they should select handsome and well-born young boys and send them to Sultan as slaves.
- However, his rule was marked by peace and tranquility, and the credit for it goes to his Prime Minister *Khan-i-Jahan Maqbul*.
- He died in 1388.

After Firoz Shah Tughlaq : 1388-1414

- The Tughlaq dynasty could not survive much after Firoz Shah's death. The Malwa, Gujarat and Sharqi (Jaunpur) Kingdoms broke away from the Sultanate.
- **Timur's Invasion : 1398-99.** Timur, the lame, a Turkish Chief and cruel conqueror from Mongolia and descendant of Chengiz Khan, invaded India in 1398 during the reign of *Muhammad Shah Tughlaq*, the last ruler of Tughlaq dynasty. Taimur's army mercilessly sacked and plundered Delhi. Timur returned to Central Asia, leaving a nominee named Khizr Khan to rule to Punjab. In 1404 he died while on his way to conquer China.

The Sayyid Dynasty : 1414-50 AD

- **Khizr Khan (1414-21)** : Timur's nominee captured Delhi and was proclaimed

the new Sultan. He was the first of the Sayyid dynasty which ruled over Delhi and surrounding districts.

- **Mubarak Shah (1421-34)** : He succeeded Khizr at the throne after his successful expeditions against Mewatis, Katehars and the Gangetic Doab area. He was killed by the nobles in his own court.
- **Muhammad Shah (1434-43)** : The nobles put Muhammad Shah on the throne, but he could not survive the in-fighting among the nobles in the court. He was authorised to rule only a meagre area around 30 miles, and rest the of the Sultanate was ruled by nobles.
- **Alam Shah (1443-51)** : The last Sayyid king descended in favour of Bahlol Lodhi and retired. Thus began the Lodhi dynasty which was confined to Delhi and a few surrounding areas.

The Lodhi Dynasty : 1451-1526 AD

Bahlol Lodhi : 1451-88

- Bahlol Lodhi was one of the Afghan Sardars. He established himself in Punjab after the invasion of Timur.
- He founded the Lodhi dynasty.

Sikandar Lodhi : 1489-1517

- Sikandar Lodi was the son of Bahlol Lodhi who conquered Bihar and Western Bengal.
- He shifted his capital from Delhi to *Agra*, a city founded by him.
- Sikandar was a fanatical Muslim and broke the sacred images of the Jwalamukhi Temple at Nagar Kot and ordered the temples of Mathura to be destroyed.
- He took a keen interest in the development of agriculture. He introduced the *Gaz-i-Sikandari* (Sikandar's yard) of 32 digits for measuring cultivated fields.

Ibrahim Lodhi : 1517-26

- He was the last king of the Lodhi dynasty and the last Sultan of Delhi.
- He was the son of Sikandar Lodhi.
- The Afghan nobility was brave and freedom-loving people but it was because of its fissiparous and individualistic tendencies that the Afghan monarchy was weakened. Moreover, Ibrahim Lodhi asserted the absolute power of the Sultan. As a result, some of the nobles turned against him.
- At last Daulat Khan Lodhi, the governor of Punjab invited Babur to overthrow Ibrahim Lodhi. Babur accepted the offer and inflicted a crushing defeat on Ibrahim Lodhi in *the first battle of Panipat* in 1526. Ibrahim Lodhi was killed in the battle Normal and with him ended the Delhi Sultanate.

Causes of Decline of Delhi Sultanate

The main causes were:

1. Despotic and military type of government which did not have the confidence of the people
2. Degeneration of Delhi Sultans (esp. the wild projects of Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq, Incompetence of Firoz Tughlaq)
3. War of succession as there was no fixed law for succession
4. Greed and incompetency of the nobles
5. Defective military organisation
6. Vastness of empire and poor means of communication
7. Financial instability
8. Number of slaves increased to 1,80,000 in Firoz Tughlaq's time which was a burden on the treasury
9. Invasion of Timur.

Mongolian Invasions During Delhi Sultanate

Regime of Sultan	Year	Events
Iltutmish	1221 AD	Chengiz Khan came up to the bank of Indus.
Masud	1241 AD	Tair Bahadur entered Punjab. Towards the end of the 1245 AD, Balban fought back the Mongolians and recovered Multan which was captured by the Mongols.
Balban	1279 AD	Prince Muhammad of Multan, Bughra Khan from Samana and Malik Mubarak of Delhi combined together to defeat the Mongols.
Balban	1286 AD	Tamar invaded India. Prince Muhammad was killed in the battle, and was decorated with the <i>Khan-i-Shahid</i> title.
Jalaluddin Khilji	1292 AD	Abdullah came to the Northern part of India. About 4,000 Mongols got converted to Islam and became the famous 'New Musalman'.
Alauddin Khilji	1296-99 AD	Zafar Khan defeated the Mongols at Jalandhar and Sald. their leader was taken prisoner. Zafar Khan was killed in the battle.
Alauddin Khilji	1304 AD	Ali Beg and Tash were defeated.
Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq	1329 AD	Tarmashirin Khan was able to reach the outskirts of Delhi but was defeated by Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq.

Administration under Delhi Sultanate

- The Turkish Sultan in India declared themselves Lieutenant of the faithful i.e. of the Abbasid caliphate of Baghdad and included his name in *Khutba*, it did not mean that the caliph became the legal ruler. The caliph had only a moral position.
- Political, legal and military authority was vested in the Sultan. He was responsible for administration and was also the commander-in-chief of the military forces.
- No clear law of succession developed among Muslim rulers. Thus military strength was the main factor in succession to the throne.

Central Administration

Department	Head (Founded by)
Diwan-i-Wizarat (Department of Finance)	Wazir
Diwan-i-Ariz (Military Department)	Ariz-i-Mumalik
Diwan-i-Insha (Department of Correspondence)	Dabir-i-Mumalik
Diwan-i-Risalat (Department of Appeals)	Dabir-i-Mulq
Diwan-i-Mustakharaj (Department of Arrears)	(Founded by Alauddin khilji)
Diwan-i-Riyasat (Department of Commerce)	Rais-i-Mumalik (Founded by Alauddin khilji)
Diwan-i-Kohi (Department of Agriculture)	(Founded by Md-bin-Tughlaq)
Diwan-i-Bandgan (Department of Slaves)	(Founded by Firoz Tughlaq)
Diwan-i-Khairat (Department of Charity)	(Founded by Firoz Tugulaq)
Diwan-i-Isthaq (Department of Pensions)	(Founded by Firoz Tughlaq)

Administrative Unit	Head
Iqta (i.e. Province)	Muqtii or Wali
Shiq (i.e District)	Siqdar
Paragana (i.e. Taluka)	Chaudhary and Amil
Gram (i.e. Village)	Muqaddam, Khut

Art and Architecture Under Delhi Sultanate

- The new features brought by the Turkish conquerors were : 1. the dome 2. the lofty towers 3. the true arch unsupported by beam 4. the vault.
- They also brought with them an expert knowledge of the use of concrete and mortar, which had hitherto been little used in India.
- *The Adhai-din ka Jhonpra* at Ajmer has a beautiful prayer hall, an exquisitely carved Mehrab of white marble and a decorative arch screen.
- The first example of true or voussoired arch is said to be the *tomb of Ghiyasuddin Balban* in Mehrauli (Delhi).
- In the Khilji period the usage of voussoired arch and dome was established and for all. Famous examples is *the tomb of Hazrat Nizamuddin Aulia* at Delhi.
- The Tughlaq buildings show stark simplicity and sobriety, probably indicating less financial resources as well as puritanical tests. Sloping walls and a dark appearance characterise the buildings. Some notable Tughlaq monuments were the fort of Tughlaquabad, the tomb of Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq which marked a new phase in Indo-Islamic architecture by serving as a model for later tombs and the fort of Adilabad.
- The Sayyid period was too short to allow construction of elaborate buildings.
- The construction of double domes was the main feature of Lodhi Architecture. One building worth noting is the *Moth ki Masjid* erected by the prime minister of Sikandar Lodhi.

Literature of Delhi Sultanate

Book	Author	Historical Importance
Tahqiq-i-Hind	Alberuni	Alberuni was an Arabian scholar who wrote about the Slave dynasty
Tabaqat-i-Nasiri	Minhaj-us-Siraj	Gives an account of Iltutmish's reign
Laila-Majnu	Amir Khusrau	Court poet of Alauddin Khilji
Khazain-ul-Futuh	Amir Khusrau	Describes conquests of Alauddin Khilji
Tughlaq-Nama	Amir Khusrau	Gives account of Ghiyasuddin's reign
Nuh-Siphir	Amir Khusrau	Poetic description of Alauddin Khilji
Fatawa-i-Jahandari	Ziauddin Barani	Gives an account of the Tughlaq dynasty
Tarikh-i-Firoz Shahi	Ziauddin Barani	Gives an account of Firoz Shah's reign
Fatwah-i-Firoz Shahi	Firoz Shah	Gives an account of his reign
Kitab-fi-Tahqiq	Alberuni	About Indian sciences
Qanun-e-Masudi	Alberuni	About astronomy
Jawahar-fil-Jawahir	Alberuni	About mineralogy
Qamas	Firozabadi	Arabic words dictionary

Book	Author	Historical Importance
Taj-ul-Maathir	Hasan Nizami	History of Ilbaris, the slave dynasty
Chach Namah	Abu Bakr	History of Sindh region
Lubab-ul-Alab	Bhukhari	Persian anthology
Khamsah	Amir Khusrau	Literature and Poems
Shah Namah	Firdausi	About Mahmud Ghazni's reign
Kitab-ul-Rehla	Ibn Battutah	A travelogue with stories
Miftah-ul-Futuh	Amir Khusrau	Jalaluddin's conquest and life
Multa-ul-Anwar	Amir Khusrau	Literary masterpieces
Ayina-i-Sikandari	Amir Khusrau	Literary masterpieces
Hasht Bihisht	Amir Khusrau	Literary masterpieces
Shirin Khusrau	Amir Khusrau	Literary masterpieces
Tarik-i-Firoz Shahi	Shams-i-Shiraj Afif	History of Tughlaqs
Futuh-us-Salatin	Isami	About Bahmani Kingdom

9.II. Vijayanagar and Other Kingdoms

VIJAYANAGAR EMPIRE : 1336-1565 AD

- Vijayanagar kingdom and the city were founded by Harihar and Bukka (sons of Sangama) who were feudatories of Kakatiyas and later became minister in the court of Kampili.
- Vijayanagar kingdom lay in the Deccan, to the south of the Bahmani kingdom.
- Vijayanagar period can be divided into four distinct dynasties viz. Sangama, Saluva, Tuluva and Aravidu.

The Sangama Dynasty : 1336-1485 AD

- **Harihar I and Bukka I (1336-56)** : They laid the foundation of Vijaya-nagar. Vijayanagar-Bahamani conflict began with the foundation of kingdoms. Clash of interests in three areas : Raichur doab (between Krishna and Tungabhadra), Krishna-Godavari delta and Marathwada.
- **Bukka I (1356-79)** : Bukka I strengthened the city of Vidyanagar and renamed it Vijayanagar. He restored harmony between the warring Vaishnavas and the Jains. The Rais of Malabar, Ceylon and other countries kept ambassadors at his court.
- **Harihar II (1379-1404)** : Bukka I was succeeded by his son Harihar II.
- **Deva Raya I (1406-22)** : He was the third son of Harihar II. His greatest achievement was his irrigation works where a dam was built across the Tungabhadra, with canals leading to the city. **Nicolo de conti** visited Vijayanagar during his reign.
- **Deva Raya II (1423-46)** : He was the grandson of Deva Raya I. Ahmad Shah of Bahamani invaded Vijayanagar and exacted a war indemnity. Deva Raya II began the practice of employing Muslim cavalrymen and archers in the army.

Dynasty	Period	Founder
Sangama	1336-1485	Harihar and Bukka
Saluva	1485-1505	Saluva Narasimha
Tuluva	1505-1570	Veer Narasimha
Aravidu	1570-1650	Tirumala

on large scale (Their induction had begun during Deva Raya I). He was called **Praudh Deva Raya**. In his inscriptions he has the title of **Gajabetevara** (the elephant hunter). Sri Lanka paid a regular tribute to him. He had learning for Vira Shavism, yet he respected other religions. **Dindima** was the court poet, whereas **Srinatha** was given the title of 'Kavisarvabhauma'. **Abdur Razzak**, the envoy of Shah Rukh visited Vijayanagar during his reign.

The Saluva Dynasty : 1486-1505 AD

➤ **Saluva Narasimha (1486-91)** : He founded the Saluva dynasty.

➤ **Tirumal (1491) and Immadi Narasimha (1491-1505)** : Both were minors during the regency of **Narsa Nayaka**. **Vasco Da Gama** landed in Calicut during his reign in 1498.

The Tuluva Dynasty : 1505-70 AD

➤ **Vira Narasimha (1505-09)** : Vir Narasimha, the son of Narsa Nayaka, became the king after the assassination of Immadi Narasimha, the last Saluva ruler.

Krishna Deva Raya : 1509-29 AD

➤ Saluva Timma, the chief minister of Vira Narasimha, placed Krishna Deva Raya, the brother of Vira Narasimha, on the throne.

➤ Krishna Deva Raya maintained friendly relations with **Albuquerque**, the Portuguese governor, whose ambassador Friar Luis resided in Vijayanagar. He won Orissa (Gajapati kingdom) for Vijayanagar and Vijayanagar emerged strongest during his reign.

➤ He built the **Vijaya Mahal** (House of Victory), the **Hazara Rama temple** and the **Vithal Swami temple**.

➤ He took the titles of **Yavanaraja Sthapnacharya** (restorer of the Yavana kingdom i.e. Bidar kingdom) and **Abhinava Bhoja**. He is also known as **Andhra Bhoj** and **Andhra Pitamaha**.

➤ He was a gifted scholar in both Telugu and Sanskrit, of which only two works are extant : the Telugu work on polity '**Amuktamalyada**' and the Sanskrit drama '**Jambavati Kalyanam**'.

➤ His court was adorned by the 'Ashtadiggajas' (the eight celebrated poets of Telugu) : 1. **Peddana** ('Manucharitam') 2. **Timmaya** ('Parijata Apaharanama') 3. **Bhattamurthi** 4. **Dhurjati** 5. **Mallan** 6. **Raju Ramchandra** 7. **Surona** 8. **Tenali Ramkrishna** ('Panduranga Mahamatya').

➤ Krishna Deva Raya, a contemporary of **Babur**, was the most illustrious ruler of the Deccan.

➤ **Duarte Barbosa** and **Dominigo Paes**, Portuguese travellers, visited Vijaya-nagar during the time of Krishna Deva Raya.

➤ **Achyuta Deva Raya (1529-42)** : Krishna Deva Raya nominated his brother Achyuta Deva Raya as the successor. During his reign, **Farnao Nunij**, a Portuguese horse trader, visited Vijayanagar.

➤ **Venkata I (1542) and Sadashiva Raya (1543-76)** : Real power was exercised by **Rama Raja/Raya** and his two brothers. The five successor states of the Bahamani empire were divided through Rama Raja's diplomacy. The **Battle of Talikota** (also called the **Battle of Rakshasa-Tangadi**) was fought on 23 Jan., 1565. Rama Raja was taken prisoner and executed by Hussain Nizam Shah I.

The city of Vijayanagar, which was the pride of medieval world, was mercilessly destroyed. *Caesar Frederick*, a Portuguese traveller, visited Vijayanagar in 1567-68 during the reign of Sadashiva Raya.

The Aravidu Dynasty : 1570-1650 AD

- > Tirumala Raya, the brother of Rama Raja, ruled in the name of Sadashiva Raya. On his failure to repopulate Vijayanagar, he shifted the capital to *Penugonda*. He divided his empire into three practically linguistic sections.
 - > The empire slowly shrunk and the Aravidu dynasty ended in 1646.
- Administration**
- > *Nayankar System* was the special feature of provincial administration.
 - > *Ayngar System* was the special feature of village administration. A body of 12 functionaries, known as ayangars, conducted village affairs.
 - > They were granted tax free lands *Manyans* which they were to enjoy in perpetuity.
 - > The Vijayanagar rulers issued gold coins called *Varahas* or *Pagodas*. The *Perta* was half a Varaha. *The Fanam* was one tenth of Perta. All were of gold mixed with alloy. The *Tar* was a silver coin. The *Jital* was a copper coin.

Society

- > It was the only empire in Medieval India which employed women in the state services. Women even went to battles. Also, it was only state that promoted widow remarriage. Status of women improved during this time.
- > Viprulu: Brahmins, Rajulu: Kshatriya, Nalavajativaru: Shudras Vipravinodins : Artisans, Kaikollas : Weavers, Sahagaman : Sati, Besabaga : Forced labour.

Architecture

- > The Vijayanagar rulers produced a new style of architecture called as *Provida* style. The large number and prominence of pillars and piers are some of the distinct features. Horse was the most common animal on the pillars.
- > Another important features were the *Mandapa* or open pavilion with a raised platform, meant for seating deities and *Amman Shrine*.
- > Important temples were *Vithalswami* and *Hazara Rama Temple* at Hampi, *Tadapatri* and *Parvati temples* at Chidambaram and *Varadraja* and *Ekambarnath temples* at Kanchipuram.
- > The Vijayanagar rulers started the practice of inscribing the stories of the Ramayana and the Mahabharata on the walls of the various temples. Vithalswami and Hazara Rama Temple are examples of this type of wall inscription.

Bahmani Kingdom

- > *Alauddin Hasan Bahman Shah (1347-58)* : He was also known as *Hasan Gangu*. He founded the Bahmani kingdom with its capital at *Gulbarga* (First capital).
- > *Tajuddin Firoz Shah(1397-1422)* : The greatest among them all. He was determined to make Deccan the cultural centre in India. He inducted large number of Hindus in the administration on large scale. He paid much attention

to the ports of his kingdom, Chaul and Dabhol which attracted trade ships from Persian Gulf and Red Sea.

Ahmad Shah Wali(1422-35) : Transferred the capital from Gulbarga to Bidar.

Break up of Bahmani Empire into 5 Kingdoms

5 Kingdoms	Year	Founder	Dynasty	Annexation (by)
1. Berar	1484	Fataullah Imad Shah	Imad Shahi	1574 (Ahmadnagar)
2. Bijapur	1489	Yusuf Adil Shah	Adil Shahi	1686 (Aurangzeb)
3. Ahmadnagar	1490	Malik Ahmad	Nizam Shahi	1633 (Shahjahan)
4. Golconda	1518	Quli Qutub Shah	Qutub Shahi	1687(Aurangzeb)
5. Bidar	1526-27	Amir Ali Barid	Barid Shahi	1610(Bijapur)

Ibrahim Adil Shah, the greatest ruler of Adil Shahi dynasty, introduced *Dakhini* in place of Persian as court language.

- > *Gol Gumbaj* was built by *Muhammad Adil Shah*; it is famous for the so-called 'Whispering Gallery'.
- > *Quli Qutub Shah* built the famous *Golconda Fort*.
- > *Muhammad Quli Qutub Shah* was the greatest ruler of Qutub Shahi dynasty and it was he who founded the city of *Hyderabad* originally known as *Bhagyanagar* after the name of the Sultan's favourite, Bhagyamati and he also built the famous *Charminar*.

Other Provincial Kingdoms

Kingdom	Capital	Founder
Jaunpur (Sharqui)	Jaunpur	Malik Sarwar (Khwaja Jaha)
Malwa	Dhar, Mandu	Dilawar Khan Ghori
Gujarat	Ahmadabad	Ahmad Jafar Khan, Muzaffar shah
Bengal	Lakhnauti, Pandua, Ekdala	Shamsuddin Iliyas Shah
Khandesh	Burhanpur and Asirgadh	Malik Raza Faruqui

10. Religious Movements in 15th-16th Centuries

I. Bhakti Movement

- > The Bhakti movement was based on the doctrine that the relationship between God and man is through love and worship rather than through performing any ritual or religious ceremonies.
- > It was in South India for the first time that Bhakti movement grew from a mere religious doctrine to a broad based popular movement based on social and religious equality. It was led by popular saint poets called '*Alvars*', who represented emotional side of Vaishnavism through collective songs called *Prabandhas*. It declined after the 10th century.
- > But it was revived as a philosophical and ideological movement by '*Acharyas*' (who represented intellectual side of Vaishnavism in the 11th century). Most important among them was *Ramanuja*, whose disciple *Ramananda* took it to North India.
- > **Main Features :** 1. Discarded rituals and sacrifices 2. Emphasised purity of heart and mind, humanism and devotion 3. Monotheistic in nature 4. God has

Lucent's General Knowledge

either form (*Saguna*) or be formless (*Nirguna*). 5. Knowledge was a constituent part. 6. An egalitarian movement. Denounced casteism. 7. Best form of worship is singing Bhajans and realisation of God by personal effort. No need of priestly class. 8. Saint, preached in local languages.

Philosophy	Founder
Vishishtadvaita	Ramanuj Acharya
Dvaitadvaita/Bhedabheda	Nimbark Acharya
Dvait	Madhva Acharya
Shuddhadvaita	Vishnu Swami

Bhakti Saints

- > **Ramanuja (1017-1137)** : The Vaishnava saint from South India. The earliest exponent of Bhakti movement and *Vishishtadvaita* philosophy.
- > **Ramananda (14-15 Century)** : The first great Bhakti saint of North India who opened the doors of Bhakti without any distinction of birth, caste, creed or sex.
- > **Kabir (1440-1510)** : The most radical disciple of Ramananda, who was opposed to caste, creed, image worship, unnecessary rituals and sought to remove distinction between Hindus and Muslims and believed in social unity.
- > **Guru Nanak (1469-1538)** : A Nirguna Bhakti saint and social reformer. The first Sikh Guru and founder of Sikhism.
- > **Chaitanya (1486-1533)** : One of the great saints of Krishna Bhakti cult and founder of *Gaudiya* or *Bengal Vaishnavism*.
- > **Vidyapati (14-15th Century)** : Maithili saint-poet who wrote thousands of love-ballads on Radha-Krishna ('Padavali').
- > **Purandar Das (1480-1564)** : The foremost and the most prolific Vaishnav saint-composer in Karnataka. Believed to have laid the foundations of the modern phase of Karnataka music.
- > **Mirabai (1498-1546)** : The Rathor princess of Mewar and daughter-in-law of Rana Sanga of Mewar. The most well-known woman Bhakti saint of the Krishna cult of Vaishnavism.
- > **Vallabhacharya (1479-1531)** : A great saint of the Krishna Bhakti cult of Vaishnavism, who propounded the philosophy of *Pushti Marg*.
- > **Surdas (1483-1563)** : A blind poet of Agra. He sang the glory of Krishna in his '*Sursagar*'.
- > **Tulsidas (1532-1623)** : The greatest saint-poet of the Ram Bhakti cult of Vaishnavism. The celebrated author of '*Ramcharitamanas*', '*Kavitawali*' and '*Gitawali*'.
- > **Shankara Deva (1449-1568)** : The founder of the Vaishnava devotional movement in Assam.
- > **Dadu Dayal (1544-1603)** : A Nirguna Bhakti saint belonging to the tanner caste, who was born in Gujarat but spent his whole life in Rajasthan. Founder of the *Dadu panth*.
- > **Thyagaraja (1767-1847)** : A Telugu who spent his life in Tamil Nadu. The greatest saint-composer of Karnataka music. He adorned God in the form of Rama, the incarnation of Vishnu and Hero of Valmiki's *Ramayana*.

Bhakti saints of Maharashtra Dharma

- > **Jnanesvara/Jnanadeva (1271-1296)** : The fountain-head of the Bhakti movement in Maharashtra, founder of Marathi language and literature, wrote

a long commentary on the *Bhagavad Gita* called the '*Bhavartha-dipika*', more commonly known as '*Jnanesvari*'.

- > **Namadeva (1270-1350)** : A contemporary of Jnanesvara. He was a tailor by caste and was opposed to all caste distinctions. The object of his devotion was *Vishnu* or *Vithal* (identified with Vishnu) of Pandharpur. The cult of Vithoba or Vithal known as *Varkari* sect was founded by Namadeva.
- > **Eknath (1533-1599)** : A great scholar saint from Maharashtra who wrote a commentary on the Ramayana called the '*Bhavartha Ramayana*' and another commentary on the eleventh book of the Bhagavata Purana.
- > **Tukaram (1598-1650)** : The greatest Bhakti poet from Maharashtra, wrote devotional poems, known as *Abhangas* which are the glory of devotional poetry.
- > **Ramdas (1608-1681)** : The last great saint poet from Maharashtra. '*Dasabodha*' is the compilation of his writings and sermons.

II. Sufi Movement

- > Sufism is the mystical movement in Islam. The sufis while accepting the Shariat did not confine their religious practice to formal adherence and stressed cultivation of religious experience aimed at direct perception of God.
- > The sufi doctrine was based on union with God which can be achieved through love of God, prayers, fasts and rituals, without reference to Hindu or Muslim.
- > **Main Features :** 1. Organised in different *Silsilas*(orders) 2. Absorbed variety of ideas and practices from Hinduism, Christianity, Buddhism and Zorastrianism. 3. Sufis aimed at service of mankind through spiritual self development 4. Eager for Hindu-Muslim unity and cultural synthesis 5. Opposed to orthodoxy, they preached faith and devotion to God. 6. Discouraged materialistic life but not in favour of complete renunciation.

Sufi Saints

- > **Khwaja Ali Hujwiri (11th Century)** : Also Known as *Data Ganj Baksh* the earliest Sufi saint of eminence known to have settled in India, the author of the celebrated manual of Sufism entitled '*Kashf-ul-Mahjub*'.
- > **Shaikh Bahauddin Zakariya (1182-1262)** : The founder of the *Suhara-wardi* order who founded the first leading *Khanqah* in India at Multan.
- > **Khwaja Muinuddin Chisti (1141-1236)** : The founder of the *Chisti* order-the first and most popular liberal Sufi order in India. He settled down at Ajmer about 1206. Other Chisti Sufi saints who followed khwaja Muinuddin Chisti or Khwaja Ajmeri were: *Sheikh Hamiduddin Nagauri* (1192-1274); *Khwaja Qutubuddin Bakhtiyar Kaki* (died 1236) in whose memory Qutub Minar was built by Iltutmish; *Baba Fariduddin Ganj-i-Shakar* (1175-1265) popularly known as *Baba Farid* built his Khanqah at Ajodan (Punjab) and was the first great Punjabi poet of Sufism; *Shaikh Nizamuddin Auliya* (1236-1325) who gained the popular title *Mehboob-i-Ilahi* (the beloved of the God), built his Khanqah in Delhi and was one of the most famous Sufi saint of the Chisti Order; *Shaikh Nasiruddin Mahmud* (d.1365), the charismatic Chisti saint, who was later known as *Chirag-i-Delhi* (the Lamp of Delhi); *Syed Muhammad Gesu Daraz* (d. 1421) who settled down at Gulbarga (Karnataka) was popularly

- known as **Bandanawaz** (Benefactor of God's creatures) and authored more than 30 books on Sufism—he was one of the early writers and poets in Urdu.
- **Shaikh Badruddin Samarkandi (13 Century)** : Founded **Firdausi** order which was restricted to Bihar.
- **Shah Nayamatullah Qadiri and Shah Abdullah Shuttari (15th Century)**: Shah Nayamatullah Qadiri founded the **Qadiriya** order and Shah Abdullah Shuttari (d. 1458) founded the **Shuttari** order. The former spread in Uttar Pradesh and Deccan, while the latter spread mainly in Madhya Pradesh and Gujarat. **Miryan Mir** (1550-1635) was the most popular Sufi saint of the Qadiriya order.
- **Khwaja Baqi Billah (1536-1603)** : Founded the **Naqshbandi** order and its most famous saint was **Shaikh Ahmad Sirhindi** (d. 1625) known as **Mujaddid Alif**.

Achievements of Bhakti and Sufi Movements

1. They influenced each other and inherited from each other 2. Bhaktism reformed Hinduism and Sufism liberalised Islam 3. Both put breaks on orthodoxy. 4. Both encouraged social reform measures 5. Atmosphere of inter-religious fraternity was created. Hindu and Muslims reconciled 6. Development of regional languages 7. A cultural synthesis took place which transformed a Muslim rule in India to a national govt. under Akbar.

Sufi Words	Meaning
Tasawwuf	Sufism
Shaikh/Pir/	Spiritual teacher
Murshid	
Murid	Disciple
Khalifah	Successor
Khanqah	The hospice
Sama	Musical recital
Raksa	Dance
Fana	Self annihilation
Ziyarat	Pilgrimage to the tombs of Sufi saints

11. Mughal Period (1526-40 and 1555-1857)

Babur : 1526-30

- The foundation of the Mughal rule in India was laid by Babur in 1526.
- He was a descendant of Timur (from the side of his father) and Chengiz Khan (from the side of his mother).
- Babur defeated **Ibrahim Lodhi** in the **first battle of Panipat** on April 21, 1526 and established Mughal dynasty which lasted till the establishment of British rule in India.
- In 1527, he defeated **Rana Sanga** of Mewar at **Khanwa**.
- In 1528, he defeated **Medini Rai** of Chaneri at **Chanderi**.
- In 1529, he defeated **Muhammad Lodhi** (uncle of Ibrahim Lodhi) at **Ghaghra**.
- In 1530, he died at Agra. His tomb is at Kabul.
- He adopted **Tughluma** and flanking party system and first to use gunpowder and artillery in India.
- He wrote his autobiography **Tuzuk-i-Baburi** in Turki in which he gives an excellent account of India and his empire. Tuzuk-i-Baburi was translated in Persian (named **Baburnama**) by **Abdur Rahim Khanekhana** and in English by **Madam Bebridge**.
- He compiled two anthologies of poems, **Diwan** (in Turki) and **Mubaiyan** (in Persian). He also wrote **Risal-i-Usaz** or letters of Babur.

Humayun : 1530-40 and 1555-56

- He was the son of Babur and ascended the throne in 1530. His succession was challenged by his brothers **Kamran**, **Hindal** and **Askari** alongwith the Afghans.
- He fought two battles against **Sher Shah** at **Chausa** (1539) and at **Kannauj/Bilgram** (1540) and was completely defeated by him.
- He escaped to Iran where he passed 12 years of his life in exile.
- After Sher Shah's death Humayun invaded India in 1555 and defeated his brothers the Afghans. He once again became the ruler of India.
- He died while climbing down the stairs of his library (at **Din Panah**) in 1556 and was buried in Delhi.
- His sister, **Gulbadan Begum**, wrote his biography **Humayunama**.
- He built **Din Panah** at Delhi as his second capital.

Sur Empire (Second Afghan Empire) : 1540-55

Sher Shah : 1540-45

- He was the son of **Hasan Khan**, the Jagirdar of Sasaram. Ibrahim Lodhi transferred his father's jagir to him.

Administrative Unit Head

Iqta (i.e. Province)	Haqim and Amin
Sarkar (i.e. District)	Shiqdar-i-Shiaqdar and Munsif-i-Munsifan
Pargana (i.e. Taluka)	Shiqdar and Munsif
Gram (i.e. Village)	Muqaddam and Amil

- In 1527-28, he joined Babur's service and then returned to South Bihar as deputy governor and guardian of the minor king Jalal Khan Lohani, son of Bahar Khan Lohani.
- Sher Shah usurps throne as **Hazarat-i-Ala**. He gained Chunar by marrying **Lad Malika**, the widow of governor of Chunar Fort.
- In 1539, he defeated Humayun in the **battle of Chausa** and assumed the title **Sher Shah** as emperor.
- In 1540, he defeated Humayun in the **battle of Kannauj/Bilgram** and annexed Kannauj.
- As an emperor, he conquered Malwa (1542), Ranthambhor (1542), Raisin (1543), Rajputana-annexation of Marwar (1542), Chittor (1544) and Kalinjar (1545). He died in 1545 while conquering Kalinjar.
- During his brief reign of 5 years he introduced a brilliant administration, land revenue policy and several other measures to improve the economic conditions of his subjects.
- He issued the coin called **Rupia** and fixed standard weights and measures all over the empire.
- He also improved communications by building several highways. He built the **Grand Trunk Road** (G.T. Road), that runs from Calcutta to Peshawar.
- He set up cantonment in various parts of his empire and strong garrison was posted in each cantonments.
- He introduced the principle of local responsibility for local crimes. Muqaddams were punished for failure to find culprits.
- Land was measured and 1/3rd of the average was fixed as land tax. The peasant was given a **patta** (title deed) and a **qabuliyat** (deed of agreement) which fixed

the peasant's rights and taxes. Zamindar were removed and the taxes were directly collected.

- He built Purana Qila at Delhi. — *shenshah*
- He was buried in Sasaram.
- Sher Shah was succeeded by Islam Shah (1545-54); Islam Shah by Muhammad Adil Shah (1554-55).

Akbar : 1556-1605

- Akbar, the eldest son of Humayun, ascended the throne under the title of Jalaluddin Muhammad Akbar Badshah Ghazi at the young age of 14 at Kalanaur, Punjab and his tutor Bairam Khan was appointed as the regent.
- Second Battle of Panipat (5 Nov., 1556) was fought between Hemu (the Hindu General of Muhammad Adil Shah) and Bairam Khan (the regent of Akbar). Hemu was defeated, captured and slain by Bairam Khan.
- This war ended the Mughal-Afghan contest for the throne of Delhi in favour of the Mughals and enabled Akbar to reoccupy Delhi and Agra.
- Akbar ended the regency of Bairam Khan in 1560 and at the age of 18 assumed the reigns of the kingdom.
- Akbar was under the influence of Maham Anga and Adham Khan junta from 1560 to 1562. [Petticoat Govt. : 1560-62]
- In his bid to expand his empire he conquered various provincial states.
- The Rajputa kingdom of Mewar put up a fierce defence under Rana Uday Singh (1537-72) and his son Rana Pratap (1572-97).
- Akbar tried to win over the Rajputas wherever possible and inducted Rajputa kings into Mughal service and treated them at par with Mughal nobility. By marrying Harakha Bai, daughter of Bharmal/Biharmal (Kutchhwaha Rajputa Ruler of Amer, Capital-Jaipur) in 1562. Akbar displayed his secular policy with the Hindus. Most of the Rajputa Kings recognised the supremacy of Akbar except Rana Pratap Singh and his son Amar Singh (Sisodiya Rajputas of Mewar, Capital-Chittor).
- The Battle of Haldighati (1576) was fought between Rana Pratap of Mewar and Mughal army led by Man Singh of Amer. Rana Pratap was defeated but he did not submit and continued the struggle.

Akbar's Conquests

Year	Province	From
1560-62	Malwa	Baz Bahadur
1561	Chunar	Afghan
1562	Merata	Jaimal
1564	Gondwana(Gadh Katanga)	Rani Durgawati (regent of Bir Narayan)
1568	Chittor	Rana Uday Singh
1569	Ranthambor	Surjan Hada
1569	Kalinjar	Ram Chandra
1570	Marwar	Chandrasena, Kalyanmal, Raj Singh, Rawal Harirai
1572	Gujarat	Bahadur Shah

Year	Province	From
1574-76	Bengal-Bihar	Daud Khan Karrani
1576	Haldighati	Rana Pratap
1581	Kabul	Mirza Hakim
1585-86	Kashmir	Yusuf Khan and Yakub Khan
1590-91	Sindh	Jani Beg Mirza
1590-92	Orissa	Kutul Khan and Nisar Khan
1591	Khandesh	Ali Khan
1595	Baluchistan	Yusufzai Tribes
1595	Kandhar	Muzaffar Husain Mirza
1597-1600	Ahmadnagar	Chand Bibi (regent of Bahadur Shah)
1601	Asirgarh	Miran Bahadur Khan

Important Years of Akbar

- 1562 Visited Ajmer first time
- 1562 Ban on forcible conversion of war-prisoners into slaves
- 1563 Abolition of Pilgrimage Tax
- 1564 Abolition of Jaziya
- 1571 Fondation of Fatehpur Sikri
- 1574 Mansabdari System introduced
- 1575 Ibadatkhana was built
- 1578 Parliament of Religions in Ibadatkhana
- 1579 Proclamation of 'Mazhar' (written by Faizi)
- 1580 Dahsala Bandobast introduced
- 1582 Din-i-Ilahi/Tauhid-i-Ilahi
- 1584 Ilahi Samvat i.e. Calender
- 1587 Ilahi Gaz i.e. Yard

- As a revolt against the orthodoxy and bigotry of religious priests, Akbar proclaimed a new religion, Din-i-Ilahi in 1581. The new religion was based on a synthesis of values taken from several religions like Hinduism, Islam, Jainism and Christianity. It did not recognize the prophet, Birbal was the only Hindu who followed this new religion. Din-i-Ilahi, however, did not become popular.
- Akbar built Fatehpur Sikri, Agra Fort, Lahore Fort and Allahabad Fort and Humayun's Tomb at Delhi. Fatehpur Sikri, place near Agra—it is said that Akbar had no son for a long time. Sheikh Salim Chisti, a Sufi saint blessed Akbar with a son who was named Salim/Sheikho Baba (Jahangir). In honour of Salim Chisti, Akbar shifted his court from Agra to Fatehpur Sikri.
- He was patron of the art and in his court many persons flourished.
- **Navaratna i.e. nine jewels of Akbar :** 1. Birbal (administrator) 2. Abul Fazl (scholar and statesman) 3. Faizi (scholar and statesman, brother of Abul Fazl) 4. Todarmal (Finance Minister, Dahsala Bandobast/Jabti) 5. Bhagwandas (Mansabdar, son of Bharmal) 6. Man Singh (Mansabdar, Grandson of Bharmal) 7. Tansen (Musician) 8. Abdur Rahim Khanekhana (Statesman, Hindi poet) 9. Mulla Do Pyaja.
- Tulsidas ('Ramcharitamanas') also lived during Akbar's period.
- When Akbar died, he was buried at Sikandara near Agra.
- Akbar is considered 'the real founder of the Mughal empire' in India.
- He was the first Mughal ruler who divorced religion from politics.

Lucent's General Knowledge

70

- Birbal was killed in the battle with Yusufzai Tribe (1586).
- Abul Fazl was murdered by Bir Singh Bundela (1601).
- Akbar gave Mughal India one official language (Persian).

Jahangir : 1605-27

- Salim, son of Akbar, came to the throne after Akbar's death in 1605. He issued 12 ordinances.
- He is known for his strict administration of justice. He established *Zanjir-i-Adal* (i.e. Chain of Justice) at Agra Fort for the seekers of royal justice.
- In 1611, Jahangir married *Mihar-un-nisa*, widow of Sher Afghan, a Persian nobleman of Bengal. Later on she was given the title *Nurjahan*. Nurjahan excercised tremendous influence over the state affairs. She was made the official *Padshah Begum*.
- Jahangir issued coins jointly in Nurjahan's name and his own.
- Jahangir also married *Manmati/Jagat Gosai/Jodha Bai* of Marwar, and a Kachhwaha princess.
- In 1608, Captain William Hawkins, a representative of East India Company came to Jahangir's court. He was given the mansab of 400. In 1615 Sir Thomas Roe, an ambassador of King James I of England also came to his court. Though initially Jahangir resisted, later on he granted permission to the English to establish a trading port at Surat.
- A political triumph during Jahangir reign was the submission of *Rana Amar Singh* of Mewar (1615). Jahangir captured the strong fort of Kangara (1620). A part of Ahmadnagar was also annexed. *Malik Amber* ceded back to the Mughal the territory of Balaghat (Maharashtra).
- His reign was marked by several revolts. His son *Khusrau*, who received patronage of 5th Sikh Guru *Arjun Dev*, revolted against Jahangir (1605). Arjun Dev, was later sentenced to death for his blessing to the rebel prince (1606). During his last period, *Khurram (Shanjahan)*, son of Jahangir, and *Mahavat Khan*, military general of Jahangir also revolted (Khurram : 1622-25 and Mahavat Khan : 1626-27).
- He wrote his memoirs *Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri* in Persian.
- He was buried in Lahore.

Shahjahan : 1628-58

- Mother's name-*Jagat Gosai/Jodha Bai* (daughter of Raja Jagat Singh).
- Shahjahan ascended the throne in 1628 after his father's death.
- He was best known for his Deccan and foreign policies.
- The first thing that he had to face was revolts in Bundelkhand (Jujhar Singh Bundela of Orchha : 1628-35) and the Deccan (Khan-i-Jahan Lodhi, the governor of Deccan : 1629-31)
- Three years after his accession, his beloved wife *Mumtaj Mahal* (original name- *Arzumand Bano*) died in 1631. To perpetuate her memory he built the Taj Mahal at Agra in 1632-53.
- In 1631-32, he defeated the Portuguese.
- In addition to Jahangir's empire, Nizam Shahi's dynasty of Ahmadnagar was

- brought under Mughal control (1633) by Shahjahan. The Deccan Sultanate of Bijapur and Golconda accepted his suzerainty in 1636.
- He sent his army to Balkh in order to secure the defence of North-Western India (1647). Shahjahan who had recovered Kandhar (Afghanistan) in 1638 from the Iranians lost it again in 1647 despite three campaigns under prince Murad, Aurangzeb and Dara.
 - Shahjahan's reign is described by French traveller *Bernier* and *Tavernier* and the Italian traveller *Nicoli Manucci*. Peter Mundi described the famine that occurred during Shahjahan's time.
 - Shahjahan's reign is said to have marked the pinnacle of the Mughal dynasty and empire. He is known for the promotion of art, culture and architecture during his time. The *Red Fort*, *Jama Masjid* and *Taj Mahal* are some of the magnificent structures built during his reign.
 - Shahjahan's failing health set off the war of succession among his four sons in 1657. Aurangzeb emerged the victor who crowned himself in July 1658. Shahjahan was imprisoned by his son Aurangzeb in the Agra Fort where he died in captivity in 1666. He was buried at Taj (Agra).

War of Succession

War of Bahadurpur, near Banaras	Feb. 1658	Dara and Shah Shuja
War of Dharmat, near Ujjain	April 1658	Dara and Aurangzeb-Murad
War of Sumugarh, near Agra	May 1658	Dara and Aurangzeb-Murad
War of Khajua, near Allahabad	Dec. 1658	Aurangzeb and Shah Shuja
War of Deorai, near Ajmer	Mar. 1659	Aurangzeb and Dara

Aurangzeb : 1658-1707

- Aurangzeb defeated Dara at Dharmat (1658), Samugarh (1658) and Deorai in which Samugarh was decisive one and Deorai was last one.
- After victory, Aurangzeb was crowned at Delhi under the title *Alamgir*. He ruled for 50 years till his death in Feb., 1707 in Ahmadnagar.
- During the first 23 years of the rule (1658-81) Aurangzeb concentrated on North India. During this period the Marathas under *Shivaji* rose to power and were a force to reckon with.
- Aurangzeb captured *Guru Teg Bahadur*, the 9th Guru of Sikhs in 1675 and executed him when he refused to embrace Islam. The 10th and last Sikh Guru, *Guru Gobind Singh*, son of Guru Teg Bahadur, organised his followers into community of warrior called *Khalsa* to fight the Muslim tyranny and avenge the killing of his father. Guru Gobind Singh was, however assassinated in 1708 by an Afghan at Nander in Deccan. *Banda Bairagi*, a trusted disciple of Guru Gobind Singh continued the war against Mughals.

Revolts During Aurangzeb's reign

Revolts	Year of Beginning	Leaders	Causes
I. North India (1658-81)			
Jat	1669	Gokula, Rajaram, Churamani	Agrarian policy
Bundela	1671	Champat Rai, Chhatrasal	Political and religious

Revols	Year of Beginning	Leaders	Causes
Satnami	1673	Followers of Satnami Sect	Religious suppression
Sikh	1675	Guru Teg Bahadur, Guru Gobind Singh	Religious
Rajput: Rathor (Marwar)	1678	Durgadas (General of Ajit singh)	Succession to throne of Marwar
II. South India (1682-1707)			
Annexation of Bijapur	1686	Sikandar Adil Shah	Violation of treaty
Annexation of Golconda	1687	Abul Hasan Kutub Shah	Helping attitude to Maratha
Mughal-Maratha Struggle	1689	Sambhaji, Rajaram, Tarabai	Rising aspiration of Maratha nationalism

- Aurangzeb left the North in 1682 and for the next 25 years (1682-1707) made desperate bids to crush the Marathas.
- Shivaji was the most powerful Maratha king and an arch enemy of Aurangzeb. When Aurangzeb could not eliminate him, he conspired in 1665 with Jai Singh of Amber, a Rajput, to eliminate Shivaji. On a assurance given by Jai Singh, Shivaji visited Aurangzeb's court. Shivaji was imprisoned by Aurangzeb but he managed to escape and in 1674 proclaimed himself an independent monarch. He died in 1680 and was succeeded by his son Sambhaji, who was executed by Aurangzeb in 1689. Sambhaji was succeeded by his brother Rajaram and after his death in 1700, his widow Tarabai carried on the movements.
- The mughal conquests reached a climax during Aurangzeb's reign, as Bijapur and Golconda were annexed in 1686 and 1687, respectively.
- Aurangzeb died in 1707. He was buried at Khuldabad (Daulatabad).
- He was called *Zinda Pir*, the living saint.
- *Jaziya* was re-introduced. However, the Hindu Mansabdars maintained their high proportion during his rule.
- **Decline of the Mughal Empire:**

After Aurangzeb, the Mughal empire rapidly declined. Important causes of the decline were: 1. Aurangzeb's Rajputa, Deccan and religious policies 2. Weak successors who were incompetent both as administrators and generals 3. Wars of succession 4. Factionalism among nobility after Aurangzeb 5. Jagirdari crisis 6. Growth of Maratha and other regional powers in Bengal, Hyderabad, Avadh, Mysore etc. 7. Foreign invasions by *Nadir Shah* (1739) and *Abdali* 8. British conquest of India.

Important Years of Aurangzeb's religious policy

- 1659 Forbade inscription of kalama on the coins, celebration of Nauroj Festival; Appointment of *Muhatasib* (Regulator of moral character)
- 1663 Ban on Sati custom
- 1668 Ban on Hindu Festival
- 1669 Ban on Jharokha darshan, Forbade music in the court.
- 1670 Ban on Tuladan (weighing of the emperor)
- 1679 Re-introduction of *Jaziya*.

Later Mughals

- Bahadur Shah I (1707-1712)**: Original Name-*Moazzam*, Title-*shah Alam I*.
- Jahandar shah (1712-1713)**: Ascended the throne with the help of Zulfikar Khan; Abolished Jaziya.
- Farrukh Siyar (1713-1719)**: Ascended the throne with the help of Sayyid brothers-Abduall Khan and Hussain Khan.
- Muhammad Shah (1719-1748)**: In 1738-39, *Nadir Shah* raided India and took away Thakht-i-Taus (the peacock throne) and Kohinoor diamond.
- Ahmed Shah (1748-1754)**: Ahmad shah Abdali (General of Nadir Shah) marched towards Delhi and Mughals ceded Punjab and Multan.
- Alamgir II (1754-1759)**: Ahmad Shah occupied Delhi. Later, Delhi was plundered by Marathas.
- Shah Alam II (1759-1806)**: Nazib Khan became very powerful in Delhi so much so that he could not enter Delhi for 12 years.
- Akbar II (1806-1837)**: Pensioner of East India Company.

Bahadur Shah II (1837-1857): Last Mughal Emperor who was made premier during 1857 revolt. He was deported to *Rangoon* (Burma, now Mayanmar) in 1858 where he died in 1862.

Administration

- Mughal empire was divided into *Subas* which were further subdivided into *Sarkar*, *Pargana* and *Gram*.
- However, it also had other territorial units as *Khalisa* (royal land), *Jagirs* (autonomous rajyas) and *Inams* (gifted lands, mainly waste lands).
- There were 15 Subas (provinces) during Akbar's reign, which later increased to 20 under Aurangzeb's reign.

Administrative Unit Incharge

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Suba (i.e. Province) | Sipahsalar/Subedar/Nizam—The Head Executive Diwan-Incharge of revenue department |
| Sarakar (i.e. District) | Fauzdar-Administrative Head Amal / Amalguzar-Revenue collection |
| Pargana (i.e. Taluka) | Siqdar-Administrative Head Amin, Qanungo-Revenue officials |
| Gram (i.e. Village) | Muqaddam-Headman, Patwari-Accountant |

- Akbar introduced Mansabdari system. The term *Mansab* indicates the rank of its holder. Mansab dari was both civil and military. Almost the whole nobility, bureaucracy and military hold Mansabs.
- The Mughal Mansab was dual i.e. *Zat* (personal rank and pay status) and *Sawar* (number of horsemen to maintain).
- Mansabdar were of 3 categories: *Mansabdar*, *Amirs* and *Amir-i-umda*.
- According to pay mode they were of 2 types: *Naqdi* (paid through cash) and *Jagirdar* (paid through Jagirs).
- Jahangir added *Duaspah Sih-aspah* system i.e. one's sawar rank can be raised without raising his zat rank.
- Shahjahan added *Jama-Dami* or *Mahana Zagir* (Monthly Scale) system.
- It ultimately caused Jagirdari and agrarian crisis, which was a major cause of decline of Mughals.

- There were several methods of revenue collection in practice viz. **Kanku** (estimate), **Rai** (yield per unit area) and **Zabti** (based on the yields of crops).
- Dahsala Bandobast** or **Zabti**: A standard method of collection based on rates of crops determined after 10 years assessment. **Todar Mal** pioneered it.
- Jagirdari system was the assignment of land in proportion to a Jagirdar's salary. Hence, every Mansabdar was entitled to a jagir if he was not paid in cash.
- Madad-i-maash** or **Suyur ghal** or **Inam** were land grants to people of favour/religious assignment.

Mughal Culture

- Babur built two mosques, one at Kabulibagh in Panipat and the other at Sambhal in Rohilkhand.
- Humayun's tomb** was built by his widow **Haji Begum**.
- An unusual building at Fatehpur Sikri is **Panch Mahal**. Panch Mahal has the plan of Buddhist vihara.
- The **Mariam's palace**, **Diwan-i-Aam**, **Diwan-i-khas** at Sikri are Indian in their plan.
- Buland Darwaja** (built after Gujarat victory), formed the main entrance to Fatehpur Sikri.
- Salim Chisti's tomb** (redone in Marble by Jahangir) is the first Mughal building in pure marble). **Palace of Birbal**, **Palace of Tansen** are also inside the Fatehpur Sikri.
- Akbar also began to build his own tomb at **Sikandara** which was later completed by Jahangir.
- The architecture of Fatehpur Sikri is known as Epic in red sand stone.
- Nurjahan built **Itimad-ud-daula/Mirza Ghiyas Beg's marble tomb** at Agra, which is notable for the first use of **pietra dura** (floral designs made up of semiprecious stones) technique.
- Jahangir introduced vigorous use of marble instead of red sand stone and use of pietra dura for decorative purpose.
- Jahangir built **Moti Masjid** in Lahore and his mausoleum at **Shahdara** (Lahore).
- Mosque building activity reached its climax in **Taj Mahal**. Shahjahan also built the **Jama Masjid**.
- Some of the important buildings built by Shahjahan at Agra are **Moti Masjid** (only Mosque of marble), **Khaas Mahal**, **Mussman Burz** (Jasmine Palace where he spent his last year in captivity) etc.
- He laid the foundations of **Shahjahanabad** in 1637 where he built the **Red Fort** and **Takht-i-Taus (Peacock throne)**.
- Only building by Aurangzeb in the Red Fort is **Moti Masjid**.
- Only monument associated with Aurangzeb is **Bibi ka Makbara** which is the tomb of his wife **Rabbia-ud-daur** in Aurangabad.
- Aurangzeb also built the **Badshahi Masjid** in Lahore.
- Humayun had taken into his service two master painter **Mir Syed Ali** and **Abdus Samad**.

- Daswant** and **Basawan** were two famous painters of Akbar's court.
- Abdul Hassan**, **Ustad Mansur** and **Bishandas** were three famous painters of Jahangir's court.
- Jahangir claims that he could distinguish the work of each artist in a picture.

Titles given by Mughal Ruler

Title	Person	Field	Ruler
Jagat Guru	Harivijay Suri	Jain Religion	Akbar
Zari Kalam	Mohammad Husain	Literature	Akbar
Sirin Kalam	Abdus Samad	Literature	Akbar
Raj Kavi	Faizi	Literature	Akbar
Kavi Priya	Birbal	Literature	Akbar
Nadir-ul-Asra	Ustad Mansur	Painting	Jahangir
Nadir-uz-Zaman	Abdul Hassan	Painting	Jahangir
Guna Samudra	Lal Khan	Music	Shahjahan
Raj Kavi	Kalim	Literature	Shahjahan
Mahakaviray	Sundardas	Literature	Shahjahan

Literature of Mughal Period

Book	Author	Contents
Tuzuk-i-Baburi	Babur	Describes military tactics and administrative organisation during Babur's reign
Qanun-i-Humayun	Khwand Amair	Describes Humayun's administration, festivities and buildings of that period
Humayun Nama	Gulbadan Begum	Biography of Humayun
Akbar Nama	Abul Fazl	Gives a history of Akbar's reign
Tobaqat-i-Akbari	Khwajah Nizamuddin -do-	
	Ahmad Baksh	
Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri	Jahangir	Memoirs of his own reign
Iqbalnama-i-Jahangiri	Muhammad Khan	History of Jahangir's reign
Chahar Chaman	Chandra Bhan Brahman	History of Shahjahan's rule
Alamgir-nama	Munshi Mirza	Gives an account of Aurangzeb's first 10 years of rule
Massir-i-Alamgiri	Muhamma Kazin	
	Saqi Mustaid Khan	Official history of Aurangzeb's reign written after his death
Ain-i-Akbari	Abul Fazl	History of Akbar's reign
Muntakhab-ul-Tawarikh	Badauni	History of Akbar's rule
Tawarikh-i-Alfi	Mulla Daud	-do-
Nuriyya-i-Sultaniyya	Abdul Haq	Theory of Kinship during Mughal Period
Waqt-i-Hyderabad	Nimat Khan Ali	Aurangzeb's Golconda conquest
Futuhat-i-Alamgiri	Ishwar Das	Aurangzeb's history
Nuskha-i-Dilkusha	Bhimsen Saxena	Analysis of Aurangzeb's rule and character

Book	Author	Contents
Khulasat-ul-Tawarikh	Sujan Raj Khatri	History of Aurangzeb's rule
Padshah Namah	Abdul Hamid Lahori	History of Shah Jahan's reign
Padshah Namah	Mumahad Waris	-do-
Shahjahan Namah	Muhammad Salih	-do-
Shahjahan Namah	Inyat Khan	-do-
Hamlai-Haidri	Muhammad Rafi Khan	History of Aurangzeb's rule
Namah-e-Alamgiri	Aquil Khan Zafar	-do-
Sir-i-Akbar	Dara Shikoh	Urdu translation of Upanishad
Safinat-ul-Auliya	-do-	Biographies of Sufi Saints
Majma-ul-Bahrain	-do-	Philosophical ideas discussed
Raqqat-e-Alamgiri	Aurangzeb	A compendium of his letters
Hasmat-ul-Arifin	Dara Shikoh	Religious ideas discussed

12. Maratha State (1674-1720) and Maratha Confederacy (1720-1818)

Maratha State : 1674-1720

Shivaji : 1674-80

- Born at Shivneri Fort in 1627.
- Father-*Shahji Bhonsle*, Mother-*Jija Bai*, Religious Teacher-*Samarth Ramdas*.
- Shivaji inherited the Jagir of Poona from his father in 1637.
- After the death of his guardian, *Dadaji Kondadev*, in 1647, he assumed full charge of his Jagir.
- He conquered many Forts viz. Singh Garh/Kondana (1643), Rohind and Chakan (1644-45), Toran (1646), Purandhar (1648), Rajgarh/Raigarh (1656), Supa (1656) and Panhala (1659).
- *Afzal Khan* was deputed by Adil Shah (Ruler of Bijapur) to punish Shivaji; but the later Afzal Khan was killed by Shivaji in 1659.
- *Shaista Khan*, governor of Deccan, was deputed by Aurangzeb to put down the rising power of Shivaji in 1660. Shivaji lost Poona and suffered several defeats till he made a bold attack on Shaista Khan (1663) and plundered Surat (1664) and later Ahmadnager.
- *Raja Jai Singh* of Amber was then appointed by Aurangzeb to put down Shivaji (1665). Jai Singh succeeded in besieging Shivaji in the fort of Purandhar. Consequently the *treaty of Purandhar* (1665) was signed according to which Shivaji ceded some forts to the Mughals and paid a visit to the Mughal court at Agra.
- In 1674 Shivaji was coronated at capital Raigarh and assumed the title of *Haindava Dharmodharak* (Protector of Hinduism).
- After that *Chhatrapati* Shivaji continued the struggle with Mughals and Siddis (Janjira). He conquered Karnataka during 1677-80.

Shivaji's Administration

- Shivaji divided his territory under his rule (*Swaraj*) into three provinces, each

under a viceroy. Provinces were divided into *prants* which were subdivided into *parganas* or *tarafs*. The lowest unit was village headed by *Pateel* (Headman). Shivaji was helped by the *ashtapradhan* (eight minister) which was unlike a collective of ministers, for there was no collective responsibility; each minister was directly responsible to Shivaji.

Shivaji's Ashtapradhan

<i>Peshwa</i> (Mukhya Pradhan)	Finance and general administration, later he became Prime Minister and assumed great importance.
<i>Majumdar</i> (Amatyā)	Revenue and Finance Minister
<i>Wagenavis</i> (Mantri)	Home Minister
<i>Dabir</i> (Sumant)	Foreign Minister
<i>Surnavis</i> (Sachiv)	Head of Royal correspondence
<i>Pandit Rao</i> (Sadar)	Head of religious affairs
<i>Sar-i-Naubat</i> (Senapati)	Military commander. This is an honorary post with no real military powers.
<i>Nyayadhish</i>	Justice

- Most of the administrative reforms of Shivaji were based on Malik Ambar's (Ahmadnagar) reforms.
- Assessment of land revenue was based on measurement. The *Kathi* of Malik Ambar was adopted as the unit of measurement.
- Land revenue was fixed 1/3rd i.e. 33% of the gross produce (initially), 2/5th i.e. 40% of the gross produce (after reforms).
- *Chauth* was 1/4th i.e. 25% of the land revenue was paid to the Marathas so for not being subjected to Maratha raids.
- *Sardeshmukhi* was an additional levy of 10% on those lands of Maharashtra over which the Maratha claimed hereditary rights, but which formed part of the Mughal Empire.

Sambhaji : 1680-89

- Sambhaji, the elder son of Shivaji, defeated Rajaram, the younger son of Shivaji, in the war of succession.
- He provided protection and support to *Akbar II*, the rebellious son of Aurangzeb.
- He was captured at Sangameswar by a Mughal noble and executed.

Rajaram : 1689-1700

- He succeeded the throne with the help of the ministers at Raigarh.
- He fled from Raigarh to Jinji in 1689 due to a Mughal invasion in which Raigarh was captured along with Sambhaji's wife and son (Shahu) by the Mughals.
- Rajaram died at Satara, which had become the capital after the fall of Jinji to Mughal in 1698.
- Rajaram created the new post of *Pratinidhi* thus taking the total number of minister to nine (Pratinidhi + Ashtapradhan).

Tarabai : 1700-07

- Rajaram was succeeded by his minor son Shivaji II under the guardianship of his mother Tarabai.
- Tarabai continued the struggle with Mughals.

Shahu : 1707-1749

- Shahu was released by the Mughal emperor Bahadur Shah.
- Tarabai's army was defeated by Shahu in the **battle of Khed** (1700), and Shahu occupied Satara.
- But the Southern part of the Maratha kingdom with its capital Kolhapur continued to be under the control of the descendants of Rajaram (Shivaji II and later Shambhaji II).
- Shahu's reign saw the rise of Peshwas and transformation of the Maratha kingdom into an empire based on the principle of confederacy.

Balaji Viswanath (1713-20) : The First Peshwa

- He began his career as a small revenue official and was given the title of **Sena Karte** (marker of the army) by Shahu in 1708.
- He became **Peshwa** in 1713 and made the post the most important and powerful as well as hereditary.
- He played a crucial role in the final victory of Shahu by winning over almost all the Maratha Sardars to the side of Shahu.
- He concluded an agreement with the Syed Brothers-King Maker (1719) by which the Mughal emperor Farrukh Siyar recognised Shahu as the king of the Swarajya.

Maratha Confederacy : 1720-1818**Baji Rao I : 1720-40**

- Baji Rao, the eldest son of Balaji Viswanath, succeeded him as **Peshwa** at the young age of 20.
- He was considered the greatest exponent of guerrilla tactics after Shivaji and Maratha power reached its zenith under him.
- Under him several Maratha families became prominent and got themselves entrenched in different parts of India.
- After defeating and expelling the Siddis of Janjira from the mainland (1722), he conquered Bassein and Salsette from the Portuguese (1739).
- He also defeated the Nizam-ul-Mulk near Bhopal and concluded the **treaty of Doraha Sarai** by which he got Malwa and Bundelkhand from the latter (1738).
- He led innumerable successful expeditions into North India to weaken the Mughal empire and to make the Marathas the supreme power in India.
- He said about Mughals : '*Let us strike at the trunk of the withering tree and the branches will fall of themselves.*'

Balaji Baji Rao : 1740-61

- Popularly known as **Nana Saheb**, he succeeded his father at the age of 20.
- After the death of Shahu (1749), the management of all state affairs was left in his hands.

- In an agreement with the Mughal emperor Ahmad Shah, the Peshwa was to protect the Mughal empire from internal and external enemies (like Ahmad Shah Abdali) in return for Chauth (1752).
- **Third battle of Panipat (Jan 14, 1761)** resulted in the defeat of the Marathas by Ahmad Shah Abdali and the death of Viswas Rao and Sadashiv Rao Bhau. This event shocked the Peshwa Balaji Baji Rao and after six month he also died. This battle ended the Maratha power.
- **Successors of Balaji Baji Rao** : **Madhav Rao** (1761-72), **Narayan Rao** (1772-73), **Sawai Madhav Rao** (1773-95) and **Baji Rao II** (1795-1818).

Anglo-Maratha Wars

- **First Anglo-Maratha War (1775-82)** : Favouring the cause of Raghunath Rao (Raghoba) for Peshwaship, English (Hastings) came in conflict with the Marathas. On being defeated, the British had to sign the humiliating **Convention of Wadgaon** (1779).
- British later signed **Treaty of Salbai** (1782), renouncing the cause of Raghoba.
- **Second Anglo-Maratha war (1803-06)** : The Maratha Peshwa signed the **Subsidiary Alliance Treaty of Bassein** (1802).
- The Maratha confederacy, which did not like the idea challenged the British power but were defeated by the British.
- **Third Anglo-Maratha war (1817-18)** : Lord Hastings was determined to proclaim British paramountcy in India. He moved against **Pindari** transgressed the sovereignty of the Maratha chiefs and the war began.
- The Marathas were decisively defeated.

13. The Advent of the Europeans

Company	Estb.	Head Quarter/Capital
Portuguese East India company	1498	Cochin (1510-30), Goa (1530-1961)
English East India Company	1600	West coast : Surat (1608-87), Bombay (from 1687) East coast : Koromandal, Masulipattanum (1611-41), Madras (from 1641) Bengal : Under Madras (upto 1700) Calcutta (from 1700)
Dutch East India Company	1602	East coast : Koromandal, Pulicat (upto 1690), Negapattanum (from 1690); Bengal : Hugli (from 1655)
Danish East India Company	1616	Serampur (Bengal) : 1676-1845
French East India Company	1664	Surat (1668-73), Pondicherry (1673-1954)

Note : Danish company were forced to sell all their settlements in India to the British in 1845.

Portuguese

- The Cape route was discovered from Europe to India by **Vasco da Gama**. He reached the port of Calicut on May 17, 1498 and was received by the Hindu ruler of Calicut (Known by the title of **Zamorin**).
- This led to the establishment of trading stations at Calicut, Cochin and Cannanore.
- Cochin was the early capital of the Portuguese in India. Later Goa replaced it.
- **Francisco de Almeida** was the first governor of Portuguese. Almeida (1505-09) introduced '**the policy of Blue water**'.

- **Alfonso d'Albuquerque** was the second governor of Portuguese. Albuquerque (1509-15) introduced '*the policy of Imperialism*'. He captured Goa from the ruler of Bijapur in 1510.
- **Nino da Cunha** (1529-38) transferred his capital from Cochin to Goa (1530) and acquired Diu and Bassein (1534) from Bahadur Shah of Gujarat.
- **Martin Alfonso de Souza** (1542-45) : The famous Jesuit Saint **Fransisco Xavier** arrived in India with him.
- The Portuguese power witnessed a decline by the end of the 16th century.
- They lost Hugli in 1631 after being driven out by Qasim khan, a Mughal noble of Shahjahan.
- In 1661 the King of Portugal gave Bombay to Charles II of England as dowry when he married the former's sister.
- The Marathas captured Salsette and Bassein in 1739.
- In the end they were left only with Goa, Diu and Daman which they retained till 1961.

Dutch

- Formation of the company in March, 1602, by a charter of Dutch parliament the Dutch East India Company was formed with powers to make wars, conclude treaties, acquire territories and build fortresses.
- The Dutch set up factories at Masulipattam (1605), Pulicat (1610), Surat (1616), Bimlipatam (1641), Karaikal (1645), Chinsura (1653), Kasimbazar, Baranagore, Patna, Balasore, Negapatam (all in 1658) and Cochin (1663).
- The Dutch replaced the Portuguese as the most dominant power in European trade with the East, including India.
- Pulicat was main centre in India till 1690, after which Negapatam replaced it.
- The Dutch conceded to English after their defeat in the *battle of Bedera* in 1759.

English

- Before the English East India Company established trade in India, **John Mildenhall**, a merchant adventurer, was the first English man who arrived in India in 1599 by the over land route, ostensibly for the purpose of trade with Indian merchants.
- The Governor and Company of Merchants of London Trading into the East Indies', popularly known as the English East India company, was formed in 1600.
- **Captain William Hawkins** arrived at Jahangir's court (1609) to seek permission to open a factory at Surat. A Farman was issued by Jahangir permitting the English to build a factory at Surat (1613).
- **Sir Thomas Roe** came to India as ambassador of James I to Jahangir's court in 1615 to obtain the permission to trade and erect factories in different parts of the empire.
- The English East India Company acquired Bombay from Charles II on lease. **Gerald Aungier** was its first governor from 1669 to 1677.
- In 1690, **Job Charnock** established a factory at Sutanati and the zamindari of the three villages of **Sutanati, Kalikata** and **Gobindpur** was acquired by the British (1698). These villages later grew into the city of **Calcutta**. The factory

- at Sutanati was fortified in 1696 and this new fortified settlement was named **Fort William** in 1700.
- In 1694, the British parliament passed a resolution giving equal rights to all Englishmen to trade in the East. A new rival company, known as 'the English Company of Merchants Trading to the East Indies' was formed (1698).
- The final amalgamation of the company came in 1708 under the title of 'The united company of Merchants of England Trading to the East Indies'. This new company continued its existence till 1858.

French

- The French East India Company was formed by **Colbert** under state patronage in 1664.
- The first French factory was established at Surat by **Francois Caron** in 1668.
- A factory at Masulipatam was set up in 1669.
- The French power in India was revived under **Lenoir** and **Dumas** (governors) between 1720 and 1742. They occupied Mahe in the Malabar, Yanam in Coromandal and Karaikal in Tamil Nadu (1739).
- The arrival of **Dupleix** as French governor in India in 1742 saw the beginning of Anglo-French conflict (Carnatic Wars) resulting in their final defeat in India.

Anglo-French Conflict/Carnatic Wars

- An instance of Anglo French rivalry.
- **First Anglo-French war (1746-48)** : The French besieged Madras. At St. Thome battle the Nawab of Carnatic's army was defeated by French under Dupleix.
- The **Treaty of Aix-La-Chapelle (1748)** ended the war of Austrian succession and First Anglo-French war in India.
- **Second Anglo-French war (1749-54)** : Dupleix aligned with Muzaffar Jung (Hyderabad) and Chanda Sahib (Carnatic / Arcot). After initial reverses, Robert Clive emerged victorious.
- The **treaty of Pondicherry/Treaty by Godehu** (new French governor in place of Dupleix) : 1754-ended the Second Anglo-French War.
- **Third Anglo-French war (1758-63)** : French Count de Lally captured Fort St. David. French were defeated at Wandiwash (1760). It was a decisive defeat of French.
- The **treaty of Paris (1763)** ended the Third and Final Anglo-French war in India. Pondicherry was returned to French by this treaty.

Modern India

14. Expansion of British Power

(In the context of Bengal, Mysore, Punjab etc.)

Bengal

- **Murshid Quli Khan (1717-27)** : In 1717, Murshid Quli Khan was appointed as Bengal's Subedar i.e. governor by Mughal emperor Farrukh Siyar. Grant of the Governorship of Orissa also to him by Farrukh Siyar in 1719. He transferred the capital of Bengal from Dacca to **Murshidabad**.
- **Shujauddin (1727-39)** : He was the son-in-law of Murshid Quli Khan. He was granted the Governorship of Bihar by Mughal emperor Muhammad Shah 'Rangzeb' in 1733.

Lucent's General Knowledge

82

- **Sarfaraj Khan (1739-40)**: He was the son of Shujauddin and was murdered by Alivardi Khan, the Deputy Governor of Bihar, in 1740.
- **Alivardi Khan (1740-56)**: Legalised his usurpation by receiving a *farman* from Mughal emperor Muhammad Shah 'Rangeela' after paying him Rs. 2 Crores. He prevented the English and the French from fortifying their factories at Calcutta and Chandranagore respectively.

Sirajuddaula : 1756-57

- Alivardi Khan was succeeded by his grandson Sirajuddaula.
- Sirajuddaula seized the English factory at Kasimbazar. On 20th June, 1756, Fort William surrendered but Robert Clive recovered Calcutta.
- On 2nd Jan. 1757, *Treaty of Alinagar* was signed, where by Siraj conceded practically all the demands. British then captured Chandranagore, the French settlement, on March 1757.
- The *Battle of Plassey* was fought on 23 June, 1757. Owing to the conspiracy, the Nawab was defeated.
- The following betrayed the Nawab :
 - Mir Jafar*: Mir Bakshi
 - Manikchand*: Officer in charge of Calcutta
 - Amichand*: Rich Sikh merchant
 - Jagat Seth*: Biggest banker of Bengal
 - Khadim Khan*: Commanded a large number of Nawab's troops.

Mir Jafar : 1757-60

- The company was granted undisputed right to free trade in Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. It received the zamindari of 24 Parganas. Mir Jafar, however, fell into arrears and was forced to abdicate in favour of his son-in-law Mir Qasim.

Mir Qasim : 1760-64

- Mir Qasim ceded Burdwan, Midnapore and Chittagong. He shifted his capital from Murshidabad to *Munger*.
- Mir Qasim soon revolted as he was angry with the British for misusing the *dastak* (free duty passes). However, having been defeated by the British, he fled to Awadh, where he formed a confederacy with Awadh ruler Shujauddaula and Mughal emperor Shah Alam II.
- The *Battle of Buxar (1764)*: Mir Qasim, Shujauddaula and Shah Alam II were defeated by Munro.
- Mir Jafar was again placed on the throne.
- **Successors of Mir Qasim** : Mir Jafar (1764-65), Nazmuddaulah (1765-66), Saifuddaula (1766-70), Mubaraquddaula (1770-72).
- On Mir Jafar's death, his son Nazmuddaula was placed on the throne and signed a treaty on 20th Feb., 1765 by which the Nawab was to disband most of his army and to administer Bengal through a Deputy Subedar nominated by the Company.
- Clive concluded two separate *treaties of Allahabad* with Shah Alam II (12 Aug. 1765) and Shujauddaula (16 Aug., 1765).

Dual Government of Bengal : 1765-72

- Dual Government of Bengal started in 1765.
- The Company acquired both *Diwani* and *Nizamat* rights from Nazmuddaula, the Nawab of Bengal. But the company did not take over direct administration and revenue collection.
- Warren Hastings ended the dual system of government in 1772.

Mysore**Haidar Ali : 1761-82**

- Haidar Ali began his career as a soldier in the service of the Mysore state, later he became the faujdar of *Dindigul*. He established a modern arsenal in Dindigul with the help of French.
- In 1761, he overthrew the Nanjarajar (the powerful Prime Minister of Wodeyar king Krishraja I) and usurped power, though continuing to recognise Krishraja I as the lawful ruler.
- **First Anglo-Mysore war (1766-69)** : Haider Ali defeated the British. The *Treaty of Madras (1769)* signed.
- **Second Anglo-Mysore war (1780-84)** : Warren Hastings attacked French port Mahe, which was in Haidar Ali's territory.
- Haidar Ali led a joint front with Nizam and Maratha and captured Arcot (Capital of Carnatic state).
- In 1781, Haidar Ali was defeated at Porto Novo by Eyrecoot.
- He died during the Second Anglo-Mysore war.

Tipu Sultan 1782-99

- Haidar Ali was succeeded by his son Tipu Sultan in 1782.
- He continued the Second Anglo-Mysore war till 1784.
- The *Treaty of Mangalore (1784)* was signed by Tipu Sultan which ended the Second Anglo-Mysore war.
- **Third Anglo-Mysore war (1790-92)** : Maratha and Nizam aided the British, Cornwallis captured Bangalore. By the *Treaty of Seringapatnam (1792)*, Tipu ceded half of his territory.
- **Fourth Anglo-Mysore war (1799)** : Lord Wellesly attacked and Tipu Sultan died.
- Tipu was the only Indian ruler who have understood the importance of economic strength as the foundation of military strength.
- Tipu established the embassies to France, Turkey, Iran and Pegu to develop foreign trade.
- Tipu planted a 'tree of liberty' at his capital Seringapatnam and became a member of Jacobian Club.

Punjab

- Guru Gobind Singh, the 10th and the last Guru of the Sikhs, transformed the religious sect into a military brotherhood.
- In the confusion and disorder that followed the invasion of Nadir Shah and Ahmad Shah Abdali, the sikhs increased their military strength and became a strong power.

- **Maharaja Ranjit Singh (1792-1839)** : He was the greatest Indian ruler of his time and founder of the Sikh rule in the Punjab. Born in 1780 at Gujranwala, he occupied **Lahore** in 1799 and made it his capital. He conquered Amritsar in 1802, occupied Ludhiana and after incessant wars, annexed Kangra, Attock, Multan, Kashmir, Hazara, Bannu, Derajat and Peshawar. He died in 1839.
- **Successors of Ranjit Singh** : **Kharak Singh** (1839-40), **Naunihal Singh** (1840), **Sher Singh** (1841-43), **Dalip Singh** (1843-49).
- The Sikh power was broken by the British after the death of Ranjit Singh.
- **First Anglo-Sikh war (1845-46)** : Sikhs were defeated in all the four battles at Mudki, Ferozshah, Aliwal and Sobraon. The **Treaty of Lahore (1846)** ended the war. Sir Henry Lawrence became the first resident.
- **Second Anglo-Sikh war (1848-49)** : Dalhousie annexed Punjab. Sir John Lawrence became the first chief commissioner of Punjab.

Kingdom	Year Founder	Annexation
Nawab of Bengal	1713 Murshid Quli Jafar Khan	1765 (Treaty of Allahabad)
Maratha-confederacy	1720 Baji Rao I	1801 (Subsidiary Alliance)
Nawab of Carnatic/Arcot	1720 Saadatulla Khan	1801 (Subsidiary Alliance)
Nawab of Avadh	1722 Mir Muhammad Amin Saadat Khan 'Burhan-ul-Mulk'	1801 (Subsidiary Alliance), 1856 (Dalhousie)
Nizam of Hyderabad	1724 Mir Qamruddin Chin Kilich Khan 'Nizam-ul-Mulk'	1798 (Subsidiary Alliance)
Mysore	1761 Haidar Ali	1799 (Subsidiary Alliance)
Punjab	1792 Ranjit Singh	1849 (Dalhousie)

15. Economic Impact of British Rule

Three Stages of British Colonialism

First phase-The Mercantile phase (1757-1813)

- The East India Company used its political power to monopolize trade and dictate terms to traders of Bengal.
- Imposition of inflated prices of goods led to buccaneering capitalism whereby wealth flowed out of barrel of the British trader's gun.
- Revenues of Bengal were used to finance exports to England.

Second phase-The Industrial phase (1813-1858)

- India was exploited as a market for British goods.
- Act of 1813 allowed one way trade for the British, as a result the Indian markets flooded with cheap and machine-made imports. Indian traders lost foreign as well as home market.
- Indians were forced to export raw materials and import finished goods.
- Heavy import duty on Indian products to England to discourage them in the market.

Third phase-Financial phase (1860 onwards)

- The British consolidated their position in India and made India a market for manufacturers and a supplier of foodstuffs and raw materials.

- Introduction of Railways (1853), Post and Telegraph (1853), Banking System (Avadh Commercial Bank-1881).
- Heavy British investment in India and burden of public debt increases.
- Industries came into existence (Tata Iron and Steel in 1907).

Drain of Wealth

- **Dadabhai Naoroji** cited it in his book "Poverty And Un-British Rule in India" (1867). **R C Dutta** in his "Economic History of India" (1901) blamed British policies for Indian economic ills.
- Drain of Wealth theory refers to a portion of national product of India which was not available for consumption to its people.
- Constituents of drain were :
 1. Extortion by company servants the fortunes from rulers, zamindars, merchants and common man and sending them home.
 2. Purchasing goods out of revenues of Bengal and exporting them. This was called investment.
 3. Duty free trade provided to the British gave them a competitive edge over Indian traders. These subsidies were financed from Indian treasury.
 4. Remittances or salaries and other incomes by company officials send to England.
 5. Home charges or cost of salaries and pensions of company officials in India were paid from the treasury of India.
 6. Hefty interests were paid to British investors.

Effects

- 1. It stunted the growth of Indian enterprise and checked and retarded capital formation in India.
- 2. It financed capitalist development in Britain.
- 3. India was kept as a zone of free trade without allowing it to develop the ability to compete.
- 4. Plantations, mines, jute mills, banking, shipping, export-import concerns promoted a system of interlocking capitalist firms managed by foreigners. It drained resources from India.

Land Revenue Systems

Permanent Settlement/Istamarari (Sthayi) Bandobast

- Introduced in Bengal, Bihar, Orissa, and districts of Benaras and Northern districts of Madras by **Lord Cornwallis** in 1793.
- **John Shore** planned the Permanent Settlement.
- It declared zamindars as the owners of the land. Hence, they could keep 1/11th of the revenue collected to themselves while the British got a fixed share of 10/11th of the revenue collected. The zamindars were free to fix the rents.
- Assured of their ownership, many zamindars stayed in towns (absentee landlordism) and exploited their tenants.

Ryotwari System

- Introduced in Bombay and Madras. **Munro** (Viceroy) and **Charles Reed** recommended it.

- In this, a direct settlement was made between the government and the ~~new~~ (cultivator).
- The revenue was fixed for a period not exceeding 30 years, on the basis of the quality of the soil and the nature of the crop. It was based on the scientific rent theory of Ricardo.
- The position of the cultivator became more secure but the rigid system of revenue collection often forced him into the clutches of the moneylender.
- Besides this, the government itself became a big zamindar and retained the right to enhance revenue at will while the cultivator was left at the mercy of its officers.

Mahalwari System

- Modified version of zamindari settlement introduced in the Ganges valley, NWFP, parts of Central India and Punjab.
- Revenue settlement was to be made by village or estates with landlords. In Western Uttar Pradesh, a settlement was made with the village communities, which maintained a form of common ownership known as Bhaichare, or with Mahals, which were groups of villages.
- Revenue was periodically revised.

Colonial Impact of Land Revenue Systems

- The land settlements introduced market economy and did away with customary rights. Cash payment of revenue encouraged money-lending activity.
- It sharpened social differentiation. The rich had access to the courts to defend their property.
- Forcible growing of commercial crops led the peasants to buy food grains at high prices and sell cash crops at low prices.
- The stability of the Indian villages was shaken and the entire set up of the rural society began to break up.

Peasant Movements

Movement	Place	Year	Leaders
Indigo Revolt	Bengal	1859	Bishnu and Digambar Biswas
Pabna	Bengal	1870	Ishwar Roy, Sabu Pal, Khoodi Mollah
Deccan Riots	Maharashtra	1875	----
Ramosi Movement	Maharashtra	1879	Vasudev Balwant Phadke
Bijolia	Rajasthan	1913	Sitaram Das, Vijay Pathik Singh
Champaran	Bihar	1917	Gandhi
Kheda	Gujarat	1918	Gandhi and Vallabh Bhai Patel
Moplah	Kerala	1921	Sayyad Ali and Sayyid Fazl
Bordoli/Borsad	Gujarat	1928	Vallabh Bhai Patel
Tebhaga	Bengal	1946	Kamparan Singh, Nyamat Ali
Punnappa-Wayiar	Kerala	1946	----
Telengana	Andhra P.	1946	Kumaraiya and Sundaraiya
UP Kisan Sabha	UP	1918	Indra Narayan Dwivedi and Gauri Shankar Mishra

Movement	Place	Year	Leaders
Avadh Kisan Sabha	UP	1920	Baba Ramachandra
Eka Movement	Avadh	1921	Madari Pasi
Forest Satyagrah	South India	1931	NV Rama Naidu, N G Ranga
All India Kisan Sabha	Lucknow	1936	Sahajananda Saraswati

Tribe	Year	Leaders	Cause
Chuar	1766-72	Raja Jagannath	Excess Revenue demand, Bengal famine
Bhils	1817	Sewaram	Agrarian hardship
Hos	1820	British occupation of Singhbhum
Ramosi	1822	Chittur Singh, Pratap Singh, Dattaraya Patkar	British Rule
Kolis	1824		Dismantle of forests
Ahom	1828-33	Gomadhar Kunwar	British occupation
Khasi	1829-32	Tiruth Singh	British occupation
Kol	1831-32	Buddhu Bhagat	Land transfer to outsiders
Santhals	1855-56	Sidhu and Kanhu	British Rule
Naikda	1858	Rup Singh	For Dharna Raj against ban Joria Bhagat on grazing and timber
Bhuyan and Juang	1867-68	Ratna Nayak	Installation of British protege on throne
Kacha Nagas	1891	Dharni Nayak	
Munda (Ulgulan)	1882	Sambhuden	British intervention
Bhils	1899	Birsa Munda	Land system, Missionary activity and forced labour
Oraons (Tana Bhagat)	1913	Govind Guru	A temperance and purification movement
Chenchus	1914	Jatra Bhagat and other Bhagats	Religious Reason
Koyas/Rampas	1921-22	-----	British control of forests
Naga	1922-24	Alluri Sitaram Raju	British Rule
	1932	Jadunang (1905-31) and Rani Gaidinliu	A reformist movement later directed against excess of British rule

Civil Revolts

Sanyasi (Bengal, 1780): led by religious monks against British restrictions and ruin of peasantry.

Kattabomman Revolt (1792-98): by Vira Pandya Kattabomman against imposition of British Suzerainty.

Paik Revolt (Orissa, 1804-06): led by Bakshi Jagabandhu against British occupation and revenue policy.

Velu Thampi (Travancore, 1805): led by Velu Thampi against British extortions.

Kittur Revolt (Karnataka, 1824): by Chinnama and Ryappa against British interference in Kittur.

- Pagal Panthis (Maimansinh, 1825-33)**: by Karam Shah and Tipu. Religious nature.
- Raju (Vizag, 1827)**: by Birabhadra Raju.
- Faraizi (1838)**: by Haji Saraitullah and Dadu Mian for cause of tenants.
- Satavandi (Maharashtra, 1839)**: by Phond Savant and Anna Sahib against British rule.
- Kuka (1840)**: by Bhagat Jawahar Mal or Sian Saheb in Punjab.
- Gadakari (1844)**: against revenue policy in Kolhapur.
- Poligar (Karnool, 1846)**: by Narasimha Reddy.

16. Socio-Religious Movements in 19th-20th Centuries

Socio-Religious Movements and Organisations

Year	Place	Name of the Organisation	Founder
1815	Calcutta	Atmiya Sabha	Rammohan Roy
✓ 1828	Calcutta	Brahmo Samaj	Rammohan Roy
✓ 1829	Calcutta	Dharma Sabha	Radhakant Dev
✓ 1839	Calcutta	Tattvabodhini Sabha	Debendranath Tagore
1840	Punjab	Nirankaris	Dayal Das, Darbara Singh, Rattan Chand etc.
1844	Surat	Manav Dharma Sabha	Durgaram Mancharam
✓ 1849	Bombay	Paramhansa Mandli	Dadoba Pandurang
✓ 1857	Punjab	Namdhari	Ram Singh
1861	Agra	Radha Swami Satsang	Tulsi Ram
✓ 1866	Calcutta	Brahmo Samaj of India	Keshab Chandra Sen
1866	Deoband	Dar-ul-Ulum	Maulana Hussain Ahmed
✓ 1867	Bombay	Prarthna Samaj	Atmaram Pandurang
✓ 1875	Bombay	Arya Samaj	Swami Dayanand Saraswati
✓ 1875	New York (USA)	Theosophical Society	Madam H.P. Blavatsky and Col H.S. Olcott
1878	Calcutta	Sadharan Brahmo Samaj	Anand Mohan Bose
1884	Pune (Poona)	Deccan Education Society	G.G. Agarkar
1886	Aligarh	Muhammadan Educational Conference	Syed Ahmad Khan
✓ 1887	Bombay	Indian National Conference	M.G. Ranade
1887	Lahore	Deva Samaj	Shivnarayan Agnihotri
1894	Lucknow	Nadwah-ul-Ulama	Maulana Shibli Numani
✓ 1897	Belur	Ramakrishna Mission	Swami Vivekanand
✓ 1905	Bombay	Servants of Indian Society	Gopal Krishna Gokhale
1909	Pune (Poona)	Poona Seva Sadan	Mrs Ramabai Ranade and G.K. Devadhar
1911	Bombay	Social Service League	N.M. Joshi
✓ 1914	Allahabad	Seva Samiti	H.N. Kunzru

Important Socio-Religious Reformers

Swami Sahajanand (1781-1830): His original name being Gyanashyama, founded the *Swaminarayan sect* in Gujarat, which believed in a theistic God and prescribed a moral code for its followers.

Raja Rammohan Roy (1772-1833): Born in 1772 at Radhanagar in Burdwan district (West Bengal) founded *Atmiya Sabha* in Calcutta in 1815 to propagate monotheism and reforms in the Hindu society. The Atmiya Sabha was named *Brahmo Sabha* and finally *Brahmo Samaj* in 1828. Launched a movement for the abolition of Sati through his journal *Sabat Kaumudi* (1819).

Debendranath Tagore (1817-1905): Took over the leadership of the Brahmo Samaj after Raja Rammohan Roy. Founded *Tattvabodhini Sabha* in 1839 and published *Tattvabodhini Patrika*, a Bengali monthly to propagate the ideas of Raja Rammohan Roy. In 1859, the Tattvabodhini Sabha was amalgamated with the Brahmo Samaj. He compiled selected passages from the Upanishads, which came to be known as *Brahma Dharma*.

Keshav Chandra Sen (1838-1884): Keshav Chandra Sen was the leader of the Brahmo Samaj during the absence of Debendranath Tagore. He started *Bamabodhini Patrika*, a journal for women. He launched radical reforms, such as giving up of caste names, inter-caste and widow remarriages and launched movement against child marriages. These radical reforms led to the first schism in the Brahmo Samaj. The original Brahmo Samaj came to be known as *Adi Brahmo Samaj* and the other, the *Brahmo Samaj of India* which was established by Keshav Chandra Sen in 1866. Sen formed the *Indian Reform Association* in 1870, which persuaded the British Government to enact the *Native Marriage Act of 1972* (popularly known as *Civil Marriage Act*) legalising the Brahmo marriages and fixing the minimum marriageable age for boys and girls.

Atmaram Pandurang (1823-1898): Atmaram Pandurang founded *Prarthana Samaj* in 1867 in Bombay. M.G. Ranade joined it in 1870.

Swami Dayanand Saraswati (1824-1883): Swami Dayanand Saraswati, originally known as *Mula Shankar* founded the *Arya Samaj* in 1875 in Bombay, wrote *Satyartha Prakash* (in Hindi) and *Veda-Bhashya Bhumika* (partly in Hindi and partly in Sanskrit).

Blavatsky (1831-91) and Olcott (1832-1907): Madam H.P. Blavatsky, a Russian woman and Col. H.S. Olcott, an American, founded the *Theosophical Society* in New York in 1875, but shifted the headquarter of the Society to Adyar near Madras in 1882.

Swami Vivekanand (1863-1902): Swami Vivekanand (originally *Narendranath Dutta*), founded the *Ramakrishna Mission* in 1887 as a social service league which was registered as a Trust in 1897.

Lower Caste/Caste Movements and Organisations

Movement/Organisation	Year	Place	Founder
Satya Shodhak Samaj	1873	Maharashtra	Jyotiba Phule
Aravippuram Movement	1888	Aravippuram, Kerala	Shri Narayan Guru
Shri Narayan Dharma Paripalana Yogam (S.N.D.P.) Movement	1902-03	Kerala	Shri Narayan Guru, Dr. Palpu and Kumaran Asan

Movement/Organisation	Year	Place	Founder
The Depressed Class Mission Society	1906	Bombay	V.R. Shinde
Bahujan Samaj	1910	Satara, Maharashtra	Mukundrao Patil
Justice (Party) Movement	1915-16	Madras, Tamil Nadu	C.N. Mudaliar, T.M. Nair and P. Tyagaraja Chetti
Depressed Class Welfare Institute (Bahiskrit Hitkarini Sabha)	1924	Bombay	B.R. Ambedkar
Self-Respect Movement	1925	Madras, Tamil Nadu	E.V. Ramaswami Naiker 'Periyar'
Harijan Sevak Sangh	1932	Pune	Mahatma Gandhi

17. Freedom Struggle

I. The Revolt of 1857

- The Revolt of 1857 is an important landmark in the history of India which occurred during the governor-generalship of Lord Canning.
- **Causes of the Revolt :** The revolt of 1857 was a combination of political, economic, socio-religious and military causes.

Political : Nana Sahib was refused pension, as he was the adopted son of Peshwa Baji Rao II. Avadh was annexed in 1856, on charges of mal-administration. Satara, Jhansi, Nagpur and Sambhalpur were annexed owing to Doctrine of Lapse.

Economic : Heavy taxation, forcibly evictions, discriminatory tariff policy against Indian products and destruction of traditional handicrafts that hit peasants and artisans.

Socio religious : British social reforms (abolition of sati, 1829; legalisation of widow remarriage, 1856 etc.) hurted the sentiments of orthodox and conservative people.

Military : Discrimination with Indian soldiers.

- **Immediate cause :** The introduction of *Enfield rifles* whose cartridges were said to have a greased cover made of beef and pork sparked off the revolt.
- **The Beginning and Spread of the Revolt :** On March 29, 1857, an Indian sepoy of 34 Native Infantry, *Mangal Pandey*, killed two British officers - *Hugeson* and *Baugh* on parade at Barrackpore (near Calcutta). The Indian soldiers present refused to obey orders to arrest Mangal Pandey. However, he was later arrested, put to and hanged.
- The mutiny really started at *Merrut* on 10th May 1857. The occasion was the punishment of some sepoys for their refusal to use the greased cartridges. The soldiers alongwith other groups of civilians, went on a rampage shouting '*Maro Firangi ko!*'. They broke open jails, murdered Europeans, burnt their houses and marched to Delhi after sunset.
- The appearance of the marching soldiers next morning (i.e. 11th May) in Delhi was a signal to the local soldiers, who in turn revolted, seized the city and proclaimed the 82-year old *Bahadur Shah 'Zafar'*, as *Shahenshah-i-Hindustan* (i.e. Emperor of India).

Centre	Beginning Date	Ending Date	Indian Leader	British Suppressor
Delhi	11 May, 1857	20 Sep., 1857	Bahadur Shah II 'Zafar' and Bakht Khan (Commanding General)	John Nicholson
Kanpur	4 June, 1857	6 Dec., 1857	Nana Sahib and his loyal commander Tantia Tope	Colin Campbell
Lucknow	4 June, 1857	21 Mar., 1858	Begum Hazrat Mahal	Colin Campbell
Jhansi	4 June, 1857	18 June, 1858	Rani Laxmi Bai	Huge Rose
Allahabad	5 June, 1857	March, 1858	Liyaqat Ali	Colonel Neil
Jagdishpur (Bihar)	Aug., 1857	Dec., 1858	Kuer Singh and Amar Singh	William Taylor and Vincent Eyre

➤ Within a month of the capture of Delhi, the revolt spread to the different parts of India (esp. all over the North India, Central India and Western India). South remained quite and Punjab and Bengal were only marginally affected.

Note :

1. **Bahadur Shah II :** was Deported to Rangoon, where he died in 1862. His sons were dead; **Nana Sahib** (original name - Dhundhu Pant), **Begum Hazrat Mahal** and **Khan Bahadur Khan** : Escaped to Nepal; **Tantia Tope** (Original name - Ramchandra Pandurang) : was captured and executed on 15th April, 1859; **Rani Laxmi Bai** : Died in the battle-field; **Kuer Singh** : was wounded and died on 26 April, 1858.
2. Sir Huge Rose described Laxmi Bai as 'the best and bravest military leader of the rebel'.
3. **Other Important Leaders :** Khan Bahadur Khan (Bareilly), Maulavi Ahmadullah (Faizabad), Azimullah Khan (Fatehpur), Devi Singh (Mathura), Kadam Singh (Merrut) etc.
4. English authority re-established in India during July-Dec. 1858.

Causes of Failure : The Revolt of 1857 was an unsuccessful but heroic effort to eliminate foreign rule. The main causes were : 1. Disunity of Indians and poor organisation 2. Lack of complete nationalism - *Scindias*, *Holkars*, *Nizam* and others actively helped the British 3. Lack of coordination between sepoys, peasants, zamindars and other classes 4. Many had different motives for participating in the revolt.

Significance : The important element in the revolt lay in Hindu-Muslim unity. People exhibited patriotic sentiment without any touch of communal feelings. It no doubt began as a mutiny of soldiers, but soon turned into a revolt against British rule in general.

Nature of the Revolt of 1857

- There are two main views about the nature of the Revolt of 1857 :
 1. **Sepoy Mutiny :** Syed Ahmed Khan, Munshi Jeevan Lal and Durgadas Bandyopadhyaya (Contemporary Historians); Stenley (Secretary of state for India), John Lowerence, John Seeley, Malleson, R.C. Mazumdar.
 2. **National Struggle/War of Independence :** Benjamin Disraeli, Karl Marx, V.D. Savarkar, K.M. Pannikar, Ishwari Prasad, A.L. Shrivastva, Tarachand.
- **Other views :** Racial Struggle / Black-White Struggle - *Medley*; Religious Struggle / Hindu-Muslim-Christian Struggle - *Rees*; Civilisation-Barbarism Conflict / English-Indian Conflict - *T.R. Holmes*; Hindu-Muslim Conspiracy against Christians - *Outram and Taylor*.

Important Books on 1857

Book	Year	Author
The First Indian War of Independence-1857-59	1859	Karl Marx
Causes of Indian Revolt	1873	Sayed Ahmad Khan
The India War of Independence	1909	V.D. Savarkar
The Sepoy Mutiny and the rebellion of 1857	1957	R.C. Mazumdar
Civil Rebellion in Indian Mutinies	1957	S.B. Chowdhury
Rebellion, 1857 : A Symposium	1957	P.C. Joshi
1857	1957	S.N. Sen

Select Opinions on 1857

"It was wholly unpatriotic and selfish Sepoy Mutiny with no native leadership and no popular support." *John Seeley*

"The so-called First National War of Independence is neither 'First', nor 'National', nor 'a war of Independence.'" *R.C. Mazumdar*

"A national revolt rooted in deep mistrust." *Benjamin Disraeli* (Opposition Leader)

"The Revolt of 1857 was 'the First war of Independence.'" *V.D. Savarkar*

"What began as a fight for religion ended as a war for independence." *S.N. Sen*

Impact of the Revolt of 1857

- In August 1858, the British parliament passed an act, which put an end to the rule of the Company. The control of the British government in India was transferred to The British Crown.
- A minister of the British government, called the Secretary of state for India was made responsible for the governance of India.
- The British Governor-General of India was now also given the title of Viceroy, who was also the representative of the monarch.
- Marked the end of British Imperialism and Princely States were assured against annexation. Doctrine of Lapse was withdrawn.
- After the revolt, the British pursued the policy of '*divide and rule*'.
- Far-reaching changes were made in the administration and increase of white soldiers in the army.
- Total expense of the suppression was thrown on the Indian people.
- It has been said that Julius Caesar was more powerful than Julius Caesar alive. The same may be said about the Revolt of 1857. Whatever might have been its original character, it soon became a symbol of challenge to the mighty British empire in India and remained a shining star for the rise and growth of the Indian national movement.

17. II Moderate Phase (1885-1905)**Important Organisations Before Congress**

Organisation	Place	Year	Founder(s)
Landholders Society	Calcutta	1837	Dwarkanath Tagore

Organisation	Place	Year	Founder(s)
British India Society	London	1839	William Adam
British India Association (Result of the merger of 1 and 2)	Calcutta	1851	Devendra Nath Tagore
Madras Native Association	Madras	1852	C.Y. Mudaliar
Bombay Association	Bombay	1852	Jagannath Shanker Sheth
East India Association	London	1866	Dadabhai Naoroji
Poona Sarvajanik Sabha	Poona	1870	S.H. Chiplunkar, G.V. Joshi, M.G. Ranade
Indian Society	London	1872	Anand Mohan Bose
Indian League	Calcutta	1875	Shishir Kumar Ghosh
Indian Association	Calcutta	1876	Surendra Nath Bannerji and Anand Mohan Bose
India National Conference	Calcutta	1883	-do-
Madras Mahajan Sabha	Madras	1884	P.Rangia Naydu, V. Raghava-chari, Anand Charlu, G.S. Aiyer
Bombay Presidency Association	Bombay	1885	Ferozshah Mehta, K.T. Tailang, Badruddin Tyebji

Indian National Congress (I.N.C.) : Bombay, 1885, A.O. Hume

- The Indian National Union was formed in 1884 by A.O. Hume, an Englishman and a retired civil servant, in association with various national leaders who called for a conference in Pune in December 1885.
- The conference received the unanimous support of all Indian leaders, but the venue was shifted to Bombay for various reasons (esp. outbreak of cholera in Pune).
- Further, the leaders decided to rename the Indian National Union as Indian National Congress.
- The first session of the Indian National Congress was held at *Gokuldas Tejpal Sanskrit College* in Bombay under the presidentship of *W.C. Bannerji*, a veteran lawyer of Calcutta.
- It was attended by 72 delegates from all over India.
- From 1885 onwards the INC met every year and its cause spread rapidly among middle class Indians.
- With the foundation of INC in 1885, the struggle for India's independence was launched in a small, hesitant and mild but organized manner.
- The first two decades of INC are described in history as those of moderate demands and a sense of confidence in British justice and generosity. Their aim was not to be aggressive for attaining independence lest the British should suppress this. This resulted in *Indian Council Act* in 1892 which allowed some members to be indirectly elected by Indians but keeping the official majority intact.

Moderate Leaders : Dada Bhai Naoroji, A.O. Hume, Badruddin Tayebji, M.G. Ranade, W.C. Bannerji, Ferozshah Mehta, Surendra Nath Bannerji, C. Shankaran Naiyar, Madan Mohan Malviya, V.S. Shrinivas Shastri, Tej Bahadur

Sapru, Gopal Krishna Gokhale, Anand Mohan Bose, E. Dinesh Wacha, Rai Bihari Ghosh, Mohan Lal Ghosh, P. Anand Charlu, C.Y. Chintamani, R.C. Dutt, S. Subrahmanyam Aiyer, K.T. Tailang, Madhusudan Das, Rahimtulla M. Sayani.

Select Opinions about INC

'INC represents only a microscopic minorities.'

Lord Dufferin (1884-88) (Contemporary Viceroy)
'The congress is tottering to its fall, and one of my great ambitions, while in India, is to assist it to a peaceful demise.'

'INC is a begging institute.'

'INC should distinguish between begging and claiming the rights.'

'INC playing with bubbles.'

Lord Curzon (1899-1905) (Viceroy)

Aurobindo Ghosh (Extremist Leader)

Bal Gangadhar Tilak (Extremist Leader)

Bipin Chandra Pal (Extremist Leader)

17.III. Extremist Phase (1905-17)

Reasons for the Emergence of Extremists: 1. Realization that the true nature of British rule was exploitative 2. International influences and events which demolished the myth of White/European supremacy. These included Abyssinia/Ethiopia's victory over Italy (1896), Boer wars (1899-1902) in which the British faced reverse, Japan victory over Russia (1905) 3. Dissatisfaction with the achievements of Moderates 4. Reactionary policies of Curzon such as Calcutta Cooperation Act (1904), Indian Universities Act (1905) and Partition of Bengal (1905) 5. Existence of a militant school of thought and emergence of a trained leadership.

Prominent Extremist Leaders

1. **Bal Gangadhar Tilak**: 'Lokmanya' Tilak was the uncompromising leader of extremists. He was influenced by Agarkar, Ranade and Naoroji. He launched two newspapers the *Kesari* (in Marathi) and the *Maratha* (in English). He organised *Ganpati Festival* (1893) and *Shivaji Festival* (1895). He was deported to *Manday Jail* (Burma) for writing seditious articles. He started *Home Rule League* in 1916. He wrote *Gita Rahasya*. Tilak asserted: '*Swaraj is my Birth Right and I will have it!*'

2. **Lala Lajpat Rai**: Extremist from Punjab. Under the influence of Arya Samaj he founded National School at Lahore. He presided over the AITUC in 1920. Boycotted Simon Commission and demonstrated against it at Lahore during which he was brutally assaulted by the police and subsequently succumbed to his injuries.

3. **Bipin Chandra Pal**: Discarded orthodox Hinduism and entered Brahmo Samaj and visited England and America. He founded English weekly *New India*. He led the Swadeshi movement. He carried gospels of Boycott, Swadeshi, National Education, Swaraj and the Passive Resistance. He founded *Vande Matram*.

4. **Sri Aurobindo Ghosh**: He passed ICS exam with record marks in Greek and Latin. He had European upbringing. He worked for secret societies in Bengal and Maharashtra. He started Bengali daily *Jugantar*. He wrote seditious articles in *Vande Matram*. He was put to trial for Maniktala (Calcutta) Bomb Conspiracy Case. He finally retired to the life of Yoga at Pondicherry.

Other Extremist Leaders: Chakravarthi Viji Raghvachariar, Aswini Kumar Dutta, Raj Narayan Bose, T. Prakasham, Chidambaram Pillai etc.

Methods of Extremists: 1. Passive Resistance i.e. non-cooperating with the British Government by boycotting government service, courts, schools and colleges. 2. Promotion of Swadeshi and boycott of foreign goods.

The Partition of Bengal (1905) and Boycott and Swadeshi Movement (1905-08)

- The Partition of Bengal came into effect on Oct. 16, 1905, through a Royal Proclamation, reducing the old province of Bengal in size by creating a new province of East Bengal, which later on became East Pakistan and present day Bangladesh.
- The government explained that it was done to stimulate growth of under-developed Eastern region of the Bengal. But, actually, the main objective was to 'Divide and Rule' the most advanced region of the country at that time. The main reason for partition of Bengal was to destroy the political influence of the educated middle class among whom the Bengali intelligentsia were the most prominent. It also set up a communal gulf between Hindus and Muslims. The INC unanimously condemned the partition of Bengal.
- The Boycott and Swadeshi movement had its genesis in the antipartition movement which was started to oppose the British decision to divide Bengal.
- With the start of the Swadeshi movement at the turn of the century, the Indian National Movement took a major leap forward.
- The INC took up the Swadeshi call in Benaras Session, 1905 presided over by G.K. Gokhle and supported the Swadeshi and Boycott Movement of Bengal. Militant nationalism spearheaded by Trio of *Lal-Bal-Pal* (Lala Lajpat Rai, Bal Gangadhar Tilak and Bipin Chandra Pal) and Aurobindo Ghosh was however, in favour of extending the movement to the rest of India and carrying it beyond the programme of just Swadeshi and Boycott of goods to full-fledged political mass struggle.
- On August 7, 1905, a resolution to boycott British goods were adopted at a meeting of the INC held in Calcutta. It was started as a purely economic measure for the development of Indian industry.
- Bonfire of foreign goods was launched on a large scale in all the major cities. Tilak took the movement to different parts of India esp. in Pune and Mumbai. Ajit Singh and Lala Lajpat Ray spread the Swadeshi message in Punjab and other parts of Northern India. Syed Haidar Raza set up the agenda in Delhi. Rawalpindi, Kangra, Jammu, Multan and Hardwar witnessed active public participation in Swadeshi Movement. Chidambaram Pillai took the movement to Madras Presidency which was also galvanised by Bipin Chandra Pal's extensive lecture tour.

Muslim League (1906): In Dec., 1906, *All India Muslim League* was set up by Nawab Salimullah of Dacca (Dhaka) at Dacca (Dhaka). The League supported the partition of Bengal, opposed the Swadeshi movement, and demanded special safeguards for its community and a separate electorate of Muslims. This led to communal differences between Hindus and Muslims.

Calcutta session of INC (1906)-Swaraj: In Dec. 1906 at Calcutta, the INC under the leadership of Dada Bhai Naoroji adopted 'Swaraj' as the goal of Indian

people. Naoroji in his presidential address declared that the goal of the INC was 'self government of Swaraj like that of United Kingdom'. The differences between the moderates and the extremists, esp. regarding the pace of the movement and the techniques of the struggle to be adopted, came to head in 1907 at the Surat Session of the congress where the party split with serious consequences for the Swadeshi movement.

Surat Split (1907) : The INC split into two groups—the extremists and the moderates, at the Surat session in 1907 held on the banks of the river Tapi. The extremists were led by *Tilak*, *Lajpat Rai* and *Bipin Chandra Pal* and the moderates were led by *Gopal Krishna Gokhle*. At the Surat session, the moderate and extremist delegates of congress met in an atmosphere surcharged with excitement and anger.

The suddenness of the Surat fiasco took the extremist leaders by surprise and they offered their cooperation to the working committee of the congress by accepting presidentship of Ras Bihari Ghose. But the moderates would not relent as they found themselves on firm ground. The government observing the opportunity launched a massive attack on the extremists by suppressing the newspaper and arresting their main leader, *Tilak*, and sending him to *Mandalay Jail* (Burma) for 6 years. The extremists were not able to organise an effective alternative party or to sustain the movement. *Aurbindo Ghosh* gave up politics and left for Pondicherry. *Bipin Chandra Pal* also left politics temporarily. *Lajpat Rai* left for Britain. After 1908, the national movement as a whole declined.

Morley-Minto Reforms (1909) : Morley-Minto Reforms were introduced in 1909 during the period when *Lord Minto* was the Viceroy of India. The reforms envisaged a separate electorate for Muslims besides other constitutional measures. The government thereby sought to create a rift within the Congress by winning the support of the moderates on the one hand, and favour of Muslims against Hindus on the other. To achieve the latter objective, the reforms introduced the system of separate electorates under which Muslims could only vote for Muslim candidates. This was done to encourage the notion that the political, economic and cultural interests of Hindus and Muslims were separate and not common. Indian political leaders were however dissatisfied by these reforms.

Home Rule Movement (1915-16) : *B.G. Tilak* founded Indian Home Rule League at Pune on 28 April, 1916. *Annie Besant*, inspired by the Irish rebellion, started Home Rule Movement in India in September, 1916. The movement spread rapidly and branches of the Home Rule League were established all over India. *B.G. Tilak* wholeheartedly supported this movement. He joined forces with *Annie Besant* and persuaded the Muslim League to support this programme.

Lucknow Pact—Congress-League Pact (1916) : An important step forward in achieving Hindu-Muslim unity was the Lucknow pact (1916). Anti-British feelings were generated among the Muslims following a war between Britain and Turkey which opened the way for the Congress and Muslim League unity. Both the Congress and the Muslim League held session at Lucknow in 1916 and concluded the famous Lucknow pact. The congress accepted the separate electorate and both organisations jointly demanded 'dominion status' for the country.

Hindu-Muslim unity alarmed the British and forced the government to announce its future policy. In 1916, a British policy was announced whereby association of Indians was in government increased and there was to be a gradual development of local self-governing institutions.

Montagu Declaration/August Declaration of 1917 : The control over the Indian government would be transferred gradually to the Indian people. This was the result of Hindu-Muslim unity exhibited in Lucknow pact.

Indian Revolutionary Organisations (India)

Organisation	Place	Year	Founder
Wayam Mandala	Poona	1896-97	Chapekar Brothers
Mitra Mela	Nasik (Later Poona)	1901	Savarkar Brothers
Anushilan Samiti	Midnapur	1902	Pramath Nath Mitra
Abhinava Bharata	Poona	1904	Vikram Damodar (V.D.) Savarkar
Swadesh Bandhav Samiti	Warisal	1905	Ashwini Kumar Dutta
Anushilan Samiti	Dacca	1907	Pulin Bihari Das
Bharat Mata Society	Punjab	1907	Ajit Singh, Sufi Amba Prasad
Hindustan Republican Association / Army (H.R.A.)	Kanpur	1924	Sachindra Nath Sanyal
Bharat Naujawan Sabha	Lahore	1926	Bhagat Singh
Hindustan Socialist Republican Association / Army (H.S.R.A.)	Delhi	1928	Chandrashekhar Azad

Indian Revolutionary Organisations (Abroad)

Organisation	Place	Year	Founder
India Home Rule Society (India House)	London	1904	Shyamji Krishna Verma
Abhinava Bharat	London	1906	Vikram Damodar Savarkar
Indian Independence League	California (USA)	1907	Tarak Nath Das
Gadar Party	San Francisco	1913	Lala Hardayal
Indian Independence League	Berlin (Germany)	1914	Lala Hardayal and Virendra Nath Chattopadhyaya
Indian Independence League and Government	Kabul	1915	Raja Mahendra Pratap

Revolutionary Events/Cases

Name of the Event/Case	Place	Year	Accused
Murder of Rand and Amherst (Plague Commissioners)	Poona	1897	Chapekar Brothers, Damodar and Balkrishna
Attempt to murder Kingsford (a Vindictive Judge)	Muzaffarpur	1908	Khudiram Bose and Prafulla Chaki
Manikatalla (Calcutta) and Alipur Bomb Conspiracy Case	Manikatalla, (Calcutta) Alipur	1908	Aurbindo Ghosh
Murder of Jackson (District Magistrate)	Nasik	1909	Anant Karkare
Murder of Curzon Wyllie	London	1909	Madan Lal Dhingra
Attempt to murder Hardinge (Viceroy) Delhi (Delhi Bomb Case)	Delhi	1912	Ras Bihari Bose and Basant Kumar
Kakori Train Dacoity Case (Kakori—a station in Lucknow-Saharanpur division)	Kakori	1925	Ram prasad Bismil and Ashafaq illa

Name of the Event/Case	Place	Year Accused
Murder of Saunders (A.S.P. of Lahore)	Lahore	1928 Bhagat Singh
Assembly Bomb case	Delhi	1929 Bhagat Singh and Batukeshwar Dutta
Chittagong Armoury Dacoity	Chittagong	1930 Surya Sen
Murder of Miachel O' Dwyer	London	1940 Udham Singh

17. IV. The Gandhian Era (1917-47)

Mahatma Gandhi (1869-1948) : Chronological Overview

In South Africa : 1893-1914

- 1893 Departure of Gandhi to South Africa.
- 1894 Foundation of *Natal Indian Congress*.
- 1899 Foundation of *Indian Ambulance Core* during Boer Wars.
- 1904 Foundation of *Indian Opinion* (magazine) and *Phoenix Farm* at Phoenix near Durban.
- 1906 First Civil Disobedience Movement (*Satyagraha*) against Asiatic Ordinance in Transvaal.
- 1907 Satyagraha against Compulsory Registration and Passes for Asians (*The Black Act*) in Transvaal.
- 1908 Trial and imprisonment-Johannesburg Jail (*First Jail Term*).
- 1910 Foundation of *Tolstoy Farm* (Later *Gandhi Ashrama*) near Johannesburg.
- 1913 Satyagraha against derecognition of non Christian marriages in Cape Town.
- 1914 Quits South Africa forever and returns to India, Awarded *Kaisar-i-Hind* for raising an Indian Ambulance Core during Boer wars.

In India : 1915-48

- 1915 Arrived in Bombay (India) on 9 Jan, 1915; Foundation of *Satyagraha Ashrama* at Kocharab near Ahmedabad (20 May); In 1917, Ashrama shifted at the banks of Sabarmati; All India tour.
- 1916 Abstain from active politics (though he attended *Lucknow session* of INC held in 26-30 Dec., 1916, where *Raj Kumar Shukla*, a cultivator from Bihar, requested him to come to Champaran.)
- 1917 Gandhi entered active politics with *Champaran campaign* to redress grievances of the cultivators oppressed by Indigo planters of Bihar (April 1917). Champaran Satyagraha was his first Civil Disobedience Movement in India.
- 1918 In Feb. 1918, Gandhi launched the struggle in *Ahmedabad* which involved industrial workers. Hunger strike as a weapon was used for the first time by Gandhi during Ahmedabad struggle. In March 1918, Gandhi worked for peasants of *Kheda* in Gujarat who were facing difficulties in paying the rent owing to failure of crops. Kheda Satyagraha was his first Non-Cooperation Movement.
- 1919 Gandhi gave a call for Satyagraha against the *Rowlatt Act* on April 6, 1919 and took the command of the nationalist movement for the first time (First all-India Political Movement), Gandhi returns Kaisar-i-Hind gold medal as a protest against *Jallianwala Bagh massacre*-April 13, 1919; *The All India Khilafat Conference* elected Gandhi as its president (Nov. 1919, Delhi).

- 1920-22 Gandhi leads the *Non-Cooperation and Khilafat Movement* (Aug. 1, 1920-Feb., 1922). Gandhi calls off Movement (Feb. 12, 1922), after the violent incident at *Chauri Chaura* on Feb. 5, 1922. Non-Cooperation Movement was the First mass based politics under Gandhi.
- 1921 *Belgaum (Karnataka) session* of INC-for the first and the last time Gandhi was elected the president of the Congress.
- 1925-27 Gandhi retires from active politics for the first time and devotes himself to 'constructive programme' of the Congress; Gandhi resumes active politics in 1927.
- 1930-34 Gandhi launches the *Civil Disobedience Movement* with his *Dandi march/Salt Satyagraha* (First Phase : March 12, 1930 - March 5, 1931; *Gandhi-Irwin Pact*: March 5, 1931; Gandhi attends the *Second Round Table Conference* in London as sole representative of the Congress : Sep. 7 - Dec. 1, 1931; Second Phase : Jan. 3, 1932 - April 17, 1934)
- 1934-39 Gandhi retires from active politics, sets up *Sevagram (Vardha Ashram)*.
- 1939 Gandhi resumes active politics.
- 1940-41 Gandhi launches *Individual Satyagraha Movement*.
- 1942 Call to *Quit India Movement* for which Gandhi raised the slogan, "Do or Die" (We shall either free India or die in the attempt), Gandhi and all Congress leaders arrested (Aug. 9, 1942).
- 1942-44 Gandhi kept in detention at the *Aga Khan Palace* near Pune (Aug. 9, 1942 - May, 1944), Gandhi lost his wife *Kasturba* (Feb. 22, 1944) and private secretary *Mahadev Desai*; this was Gandhi's last prison term.
- 1945 Gandhi's influence on the congress wanes perceptively after 1945.
- 1946 Deeply distressed by the orgy of communal violence, as a result Muslim League's Direct Action call, Gandhi travelled to *Noakhali* (East Bengal-now Bangladesh) and later on to *Calcutta* to restore communal peace.
- 1947 Gandhi, deeply distressed by the *Mountbatten Plan/Partition Plan* (June 3, 1947), while staying in Calcutta to restore communal violence, observes complete silence on the dawn of India's Independence (Aug. 15, 1947). Gandhi returns to Delhi (Sep. 1947).
- 1948 Gandhi was shot dead by *Nathu Ram Godse*, a member of RSS, while on his way to the evening prayer meeting at *Birla House*, New Delhi (Jan. 30, 1948). He died, with 'Hey Ram' on his lips.

Note: Gandhi has suggested the winding up of Indian National Congress after India attained independence and converting it into Lok Sevak Samaj.

Facts about Gandhi

Date and Place of Birth : Oct. 2, 1869 and Porbandar, Gujarat.

Note : UNO declared Oct. 2 as 'International Non-violence Day' (Antarrashtriya Ahinsa Diwas)

Father : Karamachand Gandhi, Mother : Putali Bai, Political Guru : Gopal Krishna Gokhale, Private Secretary : Mahadev Desai.

Literary Influences on Gandhi : John Ruskin's *Unto This Last*, Emerson, Thoreau, Leo Tolstoy, *the Bible* and *the Gita*.

Literary Works : *Hind Swaraj* (1909), *My Experiments with Truth* (Autobiography, 1927)-reveals events of Gandhi's life upto 1922.

As an Editor : *Indian Opinion* : 1903-15 (in English and Gujarati, for a short period in Hindi and Tamil), *Harijan* : 1919-31 (in English, Gujarati and Hindi), *Young India* : 1933-42 (in English and Gujarati-named *Navjeevan*)

Other Names : *Mahatma* (Saint)—by Rabindranath Tagore, 1917; *Malang Baba*, *Nanga Faqir* (Naked Saint)—by Kabalis of North-West Frontier, 1930; *Half-naked Saint* (Ardha Nanga Faqir)/ Indian Faqir/Traitor Faqir—by *Winston Churchill*, 1931; *Rashtrapita* (the Father of the Nation)—by Subhash Chandra Bose, 1944.

Main Events during the Gandhian Era

Rowlatt Act (1919) : During the viceroyalty of Lord Chelmsford, a sedition committee was appointed by the government in 1918 with Justice *Rowlatt* which made certain recommendations to curb seditious activities in India. The Rowlatt Act 1919, gave unbridled powers to the government to arrest and imprison suspects without trial. The act caused a wave of anger among the people. Even before the act was passed, popular agitation began against it. Gandhiji decided to fight against this act and he gave a call for Satyagraha on April 6, 1919. He was arrested on April 8, 1919. This led to further intensification of the agitation in Delhi, Ahmedabad and Punjab.

Jallianwala Bagh Massacre (April 13, 1919) : The arrest of *Dr. Saifuddin Kitchlu* and *Dr. Satyapal* on April 10, 1919, under the Rowlatt Act in connection with Satyagraha caused serious unrest in Punjab. A public meeting was held on April 13, 1919 in a park called *Jallianwala Bagh* in *Amritsar* where thousands of people including women and children assembled. Before the meeting could start General *Reginald Edward Harry (R.E.H.) Dyer* ordered indiscriminate heavy firing on the crowd and the people had no way out to escape. As a result hundreds of men, women and children were killed and more than 1200 people wounded. At that time Miachel O'Dwyer was the lieutenant governor of the Punjab. The massacre was a turning point in Indo-British relations and inspired the people to provide a more unrelenting fight for freedom.

Note : Sardar Uddham Singh, an Indian patriot from Punjab, shot down Miachel O'Dwyer in London in 1940.

Khilafat movement (1920-22) : The Caliph (or, Khalifa) Sultan of Turkey, was looked upon by the Muslims as their religious head. During the first World War when the safety and welfare of Turkey were threatened by the British thereby weakening the Caliph's position, Indian Muslims adopted an aggressive anti-British attitude. *The Ali Brothers*—*Mohammad Ali* and *Shaukat Ali*—launched an anti-British movement in 1920—the Khilafat Movement for the restoration of the Khilafat. *Maulana Abul Kalam Azad* also led the movement. It was supported by *Gandhiji* and INC which paved the way for Hindu-Muslim unity.

Non-Cooperation Movement (1920-22) : At the *Calcutta session* in Sep. 1920 the Congress resolved in favour of the Non-cooperation Movement and defined *Swaraj as its ultimate aim* (according to Gandhi). The movement envisaged: (i) Surrender of titles and honorary offices and resignation from nominated offices; (ii) Refusal to attend government darbars and official functions and boycott of British courts by the lawyers; (iii) Refusal of general public to offer themselves for military and other government jobs, and boycott of foreign goods etc. *Gandhiji*, along with the *Ali Brothers* (of Khilafat Movement fame) undertook a nationwide tour during addressing of meetings. The educational boycott was specially successful in Bengal with Punjab too, responding under the leadership of *Lala Lajpat Rai*. Apart from educational boycott, there was boycott of law courts which saw major lawyers like *Motilal Nehru*, *C.R. Das*, *C. Rajagopalachari*, *Saifuddin Kitchlu*, *Vallabh Bhai Patel*, *Aruna Asaf Ali*, etc. giving up their lucrative practices in their fields. The non-cooperation movement also saw picketings of shops selling foreign cloth and boycott of the foreign cloth by the followers of Gandhiji. Another dramatic event during this period was the visit of the prince of Wales. The day he landed in India (in Bombay on Nov. 17, 1921) he was greeted with empty streets and downed shutters wherever he went.

The attack on a local police station by angry peasants at *Chauri-Chaura* in Gorakhpur district of UP, on Feb. 5, 1922, changed the whole situation. Gandhi, shocked by Chauri-Chaura incident, withdrew the Non-Cooperation Movement on Feb. 12, 1922.

Swaraj Party (1923) : Gandhi's decision to call off the agitation caused frustration among masses. His decision came in for severe criticism from his colleagues like *Motilal Nehru*, *C.R. Das* and *N.C. Kelkar*, who organised the Swaraj Party. The foundations of the Swaraj party were laid on Jan. 1, 1923, as the '*Congress Khilafat-Swaraj Party*'. It proposed then an alternative programme of diverting the movement from widespread civil disobedience programme to restrictive one which would encourage its members to enter into legislative councils (established under Montford Reforms of 1919) by contesting elections in order to wreck the legislature from within and to use moral pressure to compel the authority to concede to the popular demand for self government. In the election held in 1923 the Swaraj Party captured 45 of the 145 seats. In provincial elections they secured few seats but in the Central Province they secured a clear majority. In Bengal, the Swaraj Party was the largest party. They followed the policy of undiluted opposition. The Swarajists demanded the release all the political prisoners, provincial autonomy, repealing of the repressive laws imposed by the government. However, after the death of C.R. Das in 1925 they drifted towards a policy of cooperation with the government. This led to dissension and the party broke up in 1926.

Simon Commission (1927) : The activities of the Swaraj Party had induced the British government to review the working of the dyarchy system introduced by the Montague-Chelmsford Reforms of 1919 and to report as to what extent a representative government could be introduced in India. The British government appointed the Simon Commission in Nov., 1927 for the task. All members of this commission were Europeans (Whites). Indian political leaders felt insulted and decided to boycott the commission. Wherever the commission went there were cries of '*Simon Go Back*'. It was while leading a demonstration against the Simon Commission in Lahore that a fatal lathi-blow was dealt to *Lala Lajpat Rai*. It was his death *Bhagat Singh* and his comrades were seeking to avenge when they killed a white police officials, *Saunders* in Dec. 1928.

Nehru Committee Report (1928) : The Committee was set up under the chairmanship of *Motilal Nehru* to determine the principles of the constitution before actually drafting it. The chief architects of the report were *Motilal Nehru* and *Tej Bahadur Sapru*. The recommendation evoked a lively debate concerning the goal of India-Dominion Status or Complete Independence.

14 Points of Jinnah (March 9, 1929) : Jinnah, the leader of Muslim League, did not accept the Nehru Report. Jinnah thereafter drew up a list of demands, which was called '14 points of Jinnah'.

Lahore Session (Dec., 1929): At its annual session held in Lahore in Dec. 1929 under the presidentship of Jawaharlal Nehru, the Indian National Congress passed a resolution declaring 'Poorna Swaraj' (Complete Independence) to be the goal of the national movement.

On Dec. 31, 1929, the newly adopted tricolour flag was unfurled and Jan. 26 was fixed as the Independence Day which was to be celebrated every year, pleading to the people not to submit to British rule any longer.

Dandi March/Salt Satyagraha (1930): To achieve the goal of 'Complete Independence', Gandhi launched another civil disobedience movement. Alongwith 78 followers, Gandhi started his famous march from Sabarmati Ashram on March 12, 1930 for the small village Dandi (Navsari District) to break the Salt Law. Gandhi covered a distance of 240 miles in 24 days (March 12 – April 5). On reaching the seashore on April 6, he broke the Salt Law by picking up salt from the seashore. By picking a handful of salt, Gandhi inaugurated the Civil Disobedience Movement, a movement that was to remain unsurpassed in the history of Indian National Movement for the countrywide mass participation it unleashed. The movement became so powerful that it sparked off patriotism even among the Indian soldiers in the army. The Garhwal soldiers refused to fire on the people at Peshwar. Gandhi was arrested on May 5, 1930. This was followed by another round of boycott of foreign goods and it took the shape of a nationwide Civil Disobedience Movement in which ladies also participated. Soon thereafter followed repressive measures such as mass arrests, lathi-charge, police-firing etc. About 1,00,000 people went in jail.

The First Round Table Conference (1930): It was held in London on Nov. 12, 1930, to discuss the Simon Commission, but was totally boycotted by the Indian National Congress. The Commission had proposed self-government in the provinces and federation of British India and the princely states at the Centre. However, the representative of the Muslim League, Liberals and other parties had assembled for the discussion on the commission report. But in absence of the premier political party, the First Round Table Conference had to be adjourned to Jan. 2, 1931.

Gandhi-Irwin Pact/Delhi Pact (March 5, 1931): Early in 1931 two moderate statesmen, Sapru and Jayakar, initiated efforts to bring about rapprochement between Gandhi and the government. Six meeting with Viceroy Lord Irwin finally led to the signing of a pact between the two on March 5, 1931, whereby the congress called off the movement and agreed to join the Second Round Table Conference. Regarding Gandhi-Irwin Pact J.L. Nehru remarks, 'This is the way the world ends, Not with a bang, but a whimper'.

The Second Round Table Conference (1931): It was held in London during the viceroyalty of Lord Willingdon during Sep. – Dec. 1931 and Gandhiji attended it on behalf of Indian National Congress. Nothing much was expected from the Conference for the imperialist political forces, which ultimately controlled the British Government in London, were opposed to any political or economic concession being given to India which could lead to its independence. The Conference, however failed as Gandhiji could not agree with British Prime Minister Ramsay Mac Donald on his policy of communal representation and refusal of the British government on the basic Indian demand for freedom. The conference closed on Dec. 1, 1931, without any concrete result.

The Communal Award/Mac Donald Award (Aug. 16, 1932): While Gandhi was arrested on his return from London after the Second Round Table Conference, British Prime Minister Ramsay Mac Donald announced his Award on communal representation in Aug. 16, 1932. Besides containing provisions for representation of Muslims, Sikhs and Europeans, it envisaged communal representation of Depressed Classes also. Gandhi was deeply grieved by this and underwent a fast in protest against this Award since it aimed to divide India on a communal basis. While many political Indians saw the fast as a diversion from the ongoing political movement, all were deeply concerned and emotionally shaken. Almost everywhere in India mass meetings took place, political leaders of different persuasions, like Madan Mohan Malviya, B. R. Ambedkar and M. C. Raja became active. In the end they succeeded in hammering out an agreement, known as the Poona Pact.

Poona Pact/Gandhi-Ambedkar Pact (Sep. 24, 1932*): As discussed, the Communal Award created immense dissatisfaction among Hindus. Gandhi who was on fast in protest staked his life to get the Award repudiated. According to the pact, the idea of separate electorate for the Depressed Classes was abandoned but seats reserved for them in the provincial legislatures were increased from 71 in the Award to 148, and in the central legislature to 18% of the total. Ultimately the fast ended with the Poona Pact which annulled the Award. The leaders of the various groups and parties among Hindus, and B.R. Ambedkar on behalf of the Harijans, signed the pact. The Poona Pact between caste Hindus and the Depressed Classes agreed upon a joint electorate.

The Third Round Table Conference (Nov. 17–Dec. 24, 1932): It was held in 1932 but again proved fruitless since the national leaders were in prison.

The Government of India Act, 1935: The Simon Commission report submitted in 1930 formed the basis for the Government of India Act, 1935. The new Government of India Act received the royal assent on Aug. 4, 1935. The Act continued and extended all the existing features of earlier constitutional reforms. But in addition there were certain new principles introduced. It provided for a federal type of government. Thus, the act:

- (i) Introduced provincial autonomy
- (ii) Abolished dyarchy in provinces
- (iii) Made ministers responsible to the legislative and federation at the centre. The Act of 1935 was condemned by nearly all sections of Indian public opinion and was unanimously rejected by the Congress. The Congress demanded itself the convening of a Constituent Assembly elected on the basis of adult franchise to frame a constitution for an independent India. Regarding the Government of India Act, 1935 J. L. Nehru remarks, 'It was a new charter of Slavery.'

Although the Congress opposed the Act, yet it contested the elections when the constitution was introduced on April 1, 1937; and formed ministries, first in 6 provinces and then in another 2. The Muslim League was however, not happy with the Congress rule, esp. Mr. Jinnah, who described it in those words: 'Congress was drunk with power and was oppressive against Muslims'.

Congress Ministries Resign (Dec. 22, 1939): The Second World War broke out in Europe on Sep. 3, 1939 that brought Britain also within its fold. Without consulting the Indian leaders, the Viceroy declared India also as a belligerent country. This evoked sharp criticism from Indians and the Congress took the stand that India could not associate herself in a war said to be for democratic freedom when the very freedom was denied to her. The Congress demanded that India should be

declared an independent nation. Then only would the country help Britain in the war. The Viceroy in his reply dated Oct. 17, 1939 rejected the Congress demand as impracticable and took the stand that the Government could think over the entire constitutional scheme after the war. The Congress condemned the Viceroy's reply and the Congress ministries everywhere resigned on Dec. 22, 1939. *Jinnah* was happy over this and he called upon the Indian Muslims to celebrate the resigning day of Congress ministries as '*the day of deliverance*'.

Pakistan Resolution/Lahore Resolution (March 24, 1940) : It was in 1930 that *Iqbal* suggested the union of the Frontier Province, Baluchistan, Sindh and Kashmir as Muslim state within the federations. This proved to be a creative idea which germinated during the early thirties to burst into vigorous life with the advent of the new reforms. The idealist *Chaudhry Rehmat Ali* developed this conception at Cambridge, where he inspired a group of young Muslims and invented the term '*Pakstan*' (later 'Pakistan') in 1935. His ideas seemed visionary during that time, but within 7 years they turned into a political programme by *Jinnah* with the new name as its slogan or banner. The ideology of Iqbal, the vision of Rehamat Ali, and the fears of Muslims were thus united by the practical genius of Jinnah to blind Muslim together as never before during the British period and ultimately led to the vivisection of India and creation of Pakistan. Pakistan Resolution was an important landmark in this context. The *Lahore session* of the Muslim League, held on March 24, 1940, passed *Pakistan Resolution* and rejected the Federal scheme as envisaged in the government of India Act, 1935.

August Offer/Linlithgow Offer (Aug. 8, 1940) : On Aug. 8, 1940, the Viceroy *Linlithgow* came out with certain proposals, known as *August Offer* declaring that the goal of British Government was to establish *Dominion Status* in India. It accepted that framing of a new constitution would be the responsibility of the Indians. It also laid down that full weight would be given to the views of minorities in the constitution. *Maulana Abul Kalam Azad*, President of the Congress, rejected the August Offer which aimed at bringing the Congress in the ongoing world war. The Muslim League, however welcomed the offer as it ensured that no further constitution would be adopted without the prior approval of Muslims. The League declared that the most difficult problem of India's future constitution could be solved only by the partition of India. In brief, the August Offer failed in gaining Indian's co-operation for war and, in fact, further widened the gulf between the Congress and the Britishers as well as between the Congress and the Muslim League.

Individual Civil Disobedience/Individual Satyagraha (Oct., 1940 - Dec., 1941) : The Congress Working Committee decided to start individual civil disobedience on Oct. 17, 1940. *Vinoba Bhave* was the first Satyagrahi who was arrested on Oct. 21, followed soon by many more including *Nehru* and *Patel*. But the movement created little enthusiasm and Gandhi suspended it.

The Cripps Mission (March-April 1942) : In 1942, the British Government realized that it could not ignore the Indian problems any more. As a result of the World War, the situation worsened for the British with Japanese advance towards Indian borders. By March 7, 1942, Rangoon fell and Japan occupied the entire South-East Asia. The British government, with a view of getting cooperation from Indians sent *Sir Stafford Cripps*, a member of the British cabinet to India to settle terms with Indian leaders who were forthwith released. Cripps proposed *Dominion Status*

after the war but his proposal was rejected by all the political leaders. As no party agreed to accept these proposals, the Cripps Mission ended in failure. Regarding the Cripps Mission proposals Mahatma Gandhi remarks '*A post-dated cheque on a crumbling bank*'.

Quit India movement (1942) : On Aug. 8, 1942, the Congress in its meeting at *Gowaliya Tank, Bombay* passed a resolution known as 'Quit India' resolution, whereby *Gandhiji* asked the British to quit India and gave a call for '*Do or die*' (We shall either free India or die in the attempt) to his countrymen. On Aug. 9, 1942 all the prominent leaders like Gandhi, Nehru, Patel etc. were arrested but the rest most of (J.P. Lohiya, Aruna Ashaf Ali, Usha Mehta etc.) continued the revolutionary struggle. Violence spread throughout the country, several government offices were destroyed and damaged, the telegraph wires were cut and communication paralyzed. Parallel government were established in some places viz. 1. *Balia*, U.P. (by Chittu Pandeya) – first Parallel govt. 2. *Tamulak*, Midnapur Distt., Bengal (by Satis Samant) 3. *Satara*, Maharashtra (by Y.B. Chahvan and Nana Patil) – the longest (term) parallel govt. 4. *Talchar*, Orissa. The movement was, however, crushed by the government.

Gandhiji's Fast (Feb. 10 – March 7, 1943) : Gandhiji undertook a 21-day fast in jail. His condition deteriorated after 13 days and all hopes of his survival were given up. However, as a result of his moral strength and spiritual stamina, he survived and completed the 21-day fast. This was his answer to the government which had been constantly exhorting him to condemn the violence of the people in the Quit India Movement. Gandhi not only refused to condemn people resorting to violence but unequivocally held the government responsible for it.

C.R. Formula (1944) : In 1944, *Chakravarti Rajagopalachari* (C.R.) proposed to appoint a commission to demarcate the districts in North-West and East where Muslims were in majority. In such areas, a plebiscite was proposed to be held on the basis of adult suffrage to decide the issue of separation. They would be given freedom if they favoured a sovereign state. In case of acceptance of partition, agreement was to be made jointly for safeguarding defence, commerce, communications etc. Muslim League was to endorse Congress demand for independence and cooperate in the formation of provisional government. *Jinnah* objected, as he wanted Congress to accept two-nation theory and wanted only Muslims of the North-West and East of India to vote in the plebiscite. Hindu Leaders led by *V.D. Savarkar* condemned the plan.

Wavell Plan and Shimla Conference (June 14–July 14, 1945) : The war situation in Europe improved in the beginning of the year 1945. India's goodwill was, however, needed as the war against Japan was expected to last for about two years. The situation within the country was worsening day by day as a result of deteriorating economic situation and famines. The British Government was compelled to come forward with some sort of plan to satisfy the Indians. After consultations with the British Government on the Indian problem, *Lord Wavell*, the Viceroy of India, issued a statement known as *Wavell Plan*. The Plan, which chiefly concerned Viceroy's Executive Council, proposed certain changes in the structure of the council. One of the main proposals was that the Executive Council would be constituted giving a balanced representation to the main communities in it, including equal representation to Muslims and Hindus.

Soon after the Wavell Plan was issued the members of the Congress Working Committee were released from jails. A conference of 22 prominent Indian leaders called at Shimla to consider the Wavell Plan, reached no decision. What scuttled the conference was Mr. Jinnah's unflinching stand that the Muslim members approved only by the Muslim League should be included in the Executive Council. Communalism thus again became a stumbling block. For the Britishers, however, the dissension between the Congress and the Muslim League was a source of happiness.

INA Trial (Nov., 1945) : *P. K. Sehgal, Shah Nawaj Khan and Gurubaksh Singh Dhillon* were put on trial at the Red Fort in Nov., 1945. To elucidate, despite the best efforts of the Congress to win the legal battle the trial of INA prisoners led to their outright conviction on the charge of waging war against the King Emperor. The pressure of the Indian public opinion against this conviction however, soon mounted high. This shook the British Government and it was compelled to suspend the sentences imposed on the INA convicts. Further, disaffection spread fast among the soldiers. The chief defence advocate during the INA trial was *Bhulabhai Desai*. Other defence lawyers were *Tej Bahadur Sapru, Jawaharlal Nehru, Asaf Ali and Md. Ali Jinnah*.

Azad Hind Fauj (Indian National Army –INA)

The Japanese after defeating the British in South-East Asia, took a number of Indian soldiers as prisoners of war. In March 1942 a conference of Indians was held in Tokyo, and they formed the *Indian Independence League*. At the Bangkok conference (June 1942) *Ras Bihari Bose* was elected President of the League. INA was a brain-child of Mohan Singh. INA was formed by Ras Bihari Bose in 1942. In 1943, INA was reorganised by Subhash Chandra Bose. *Subhas Chandra Bose* had escaped to Berlin in 1941 and set up Indian League there. In July 1943, he joined the INA at Singapore. There Ras Bihari Bose handed over the leadership to him. *Provisional Government of Free India* and *INA* was formed by Subhas Chandra Bose in Singapore on Oct. 21, 1943.

INA had 3 fighting brigades named after *Subhas, Gandhi and Nehru. Rani Jhansi Brigade* was an exclusive women force.

But with the defeat of Japan in 1945, the INA also died out.

Bose is said to have been killed in air crash over Taipei, Taiwan on his way to Tokyo in Aug. 18, 1945.

Royal Indian Navy (RIN)/Ratings Mutiny (Feb. 18, 1946) : On Feb., 18, 1946, Bombay Ratings of HMS Talwar struck work due to flagrant racial discrimination, unpalatable food and abuse after the arrest of B.C. Dutt who had scrawled *Quit India* on the ship. On Feb. 19, HMS Hindustan, in Karachi also mutinied. *VallabhBhai Patel* and *Jinnah* jointly persuaded the Ratings to surrender on Feb. 23, 1946. The Britishers for the first time seriously realized that with this awakening among the Indians and revolt in armed forces, it could not perpetuate its hold on India any more.

Cabinet Mission (March - June, 1946) : The British Prime Minister, *Lord Attlee*, made a declaration on March 15, 1946, that British Cabinet Mission would visit India to make recommendations regarding constitutional reforms to be introduced in India. The Cabinet Mission which included of *Lord Pathick Lawrence, Stafford Cripps* and *A. V. Alexander* visited India and met the representative of different political parties, but a satisfactory solution to the constitutional difficulties could

not be found. The mission envisaged the establishment of a Constituent Assembly to frame the constitution as well as an interim government. The Muslim League accepted the plan on June 6, 1946, while maintaining its rights of striving for a separate Muslim state. The Congress also partially accepted the plan.

Direct Action Campaign (Aug. 16, 1946) : Provoked by the success of the Congress (in the voting for Constituent Assembly), the Muslim League launched a 'direct action' campaign on Aug. 16, 1946, which resulted in wide spread communal riots in the country.

Interim Government (Sep. 2, 1946) : On Sep. 2, 1946, an interim government was formed. Congress members led by *Pt. Jawaharlal Nehru* joined it but the Muslim League did not, on the contrary it withdrew its earlier acceptance of the Cabinet Mission Plan.

Formation of Constituent Assembly (Dec. 9, 1946) : The Constituent Assembly met on Dec. 9, 1946, and *Dr. Rajendra Prasad* was elected its President. The Muslim League did not join the Assembly.

Attlee's Announcement (Feb. 20, 1947) : On Feb. 20, 1947, British Prime Minister *Attlee* announced that the British would withdraw from India by June 30, 1948 and that Lord Mountbatten would replace Wavell.

Mountbatten Plan (June 3, 1947) : In March, 1947, *Lord Mountbatten* replaced Lord Wavell. He announced his plan on June 3, 1947. His earlier *Plan Balkan* was abandoned for this June 3, Plan. It offered a key to the political and constitutional deadlock created by the refusal of Muslim League to join the Constituent Assembly formed to frame the constitution of India. Mountbatten's formula was to divide India but retain maximum unity. The country would be partitioned but so would be Punjab and Bengal, so that the limited Pakistan that emerged would meet both the Congress and the League's position to some extent. The League's position on Pakistan was conceded in that it would be created, but the Congress position on unity would be taken into account to make Pakistan as small as possible. He laid down detailed principles for the partition of the country and speedy transfer of political powers in the form of dominion status to the newly formed dominions of India and Pakistan. Its acceptance by the Congress and the Muslim League resulted in the birth of Pakistan.

The Indian Independence Act, 1947 : The Bill containing the provisions of the Mountbatten Plan of June 3, 1947, was introduced in the British Parliament and passed as the Indian Independence Act, 1947. The Act laid down detailed measures for the partition of India and speedy transfer of political powers to the new governments of India and Pakistan.

Integration of States : By Aug. 15, 1947, all states except *Kashmir, Junagadh* and *Hyderabad* had signed the Instrument of Accession with India. *The Maharaja of Kashmir* acceded to India in Oct., 1947 when irregular Pakistani troops invaded his state. *The Nawab of Junagadh* was a Muslim whereas most of its people were Hindus. In Feb. 1948, through a referendum the people of this state decided to join India. The Nawab of Junagadh, therefore, left for Pakistan. *The Nizam of Hyderabad* was forced to accede to the Indian Union under the pressure of internal anarchy and military action against him in Sep., 1948.

French Colonies : By the end of 1954, French colonial rule in Pondicherry, Chandranagar, Mahe, Karaikal and Yanam came to an end. These territories were integrated with India.

Portuguese Colonies : The Portuguese colonies in India were Goa, Daman, Diu, Dadra and Nagar Haveli. In 1954, Dadra and Nagar Haveli were liberated by freedom fighters. Indian troops liberated Goa, Daman and Diu from the Portuguese in 1961.

Miscellaneous Important Dates

I. Ancient

BC

- 2500-1750 Indus Valley Civilization.
- 563-483 Buddha's life-span.
- 540-468 Mahavir's life-span.
- 327-326 Alexander's invasion of India. It opened a land route between India and Europe.
- 322 Accession of Chandragupta Maurya.
- 305 Defeat of Seleucus at the hands of Chandragupta Maurya.
- 273-232 Ashoka's reign.
- 261 Conquest of Kalinga.
- 145-101 Reign of Elara, the Chola king of Sri Lanka.
- 58 Beginning of Vikram era.

AD

- 78 Beginning of Saka era.
- 78-101 Kanishka's reign.
- 319-320 Commencement of Gupta era.
- 380 Accession of Chandragupta II 'Vikramaditya'.
- 405-411 Visit of Chinese traveller Fahien.
- 415 Accession of Kumaragupta I
- 455 Accession of Skandagupta.
- 606-647 Harshavardhan's reign.

II. Medieval

- 712 First invasion in Sindh by Arabs (Mod. Bin Qasim).
- 836 Accession of King Bhoja of Kannauj.
- 985 Accession of Rajaraja, the Chola ruler.
- 998 Accession of Sultan Mahmud Ghazni.
- 1001 First invasion of India by Mahmud Ghazni who defeated Jaipal, ruler of Punjab.
- 1025 Destruction of Somnath Temple by Mahmud Ghazni.
- 1191 First Battle of Tarain.
- 1192 Second Battle of Tarain.
- 1206 Accession of Qutubuddin Aibak to the throne of Delhi.
- 1210 Death of Qutubuddin Aibak.
- 1221 Chengiz Khan invaded India (Mongol invasion)
- 1236 Accession of Razia Sultana to the throne of Delhi.

1240	Death of Razia Sultana.
1296	Accession of Alauddin Khilji.
1316	Death of Alauddin Khilji.
1325	Accession of Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq.
1327	Transfer of Capital from Delhi to Devagiri (Daulatabad) in Deccan by the Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq.
1336	Foundation of Vijayanagar empire in the South.
1351	Accession of Firoz Shah Tughlaq.
1398	Timur's Invasion of India.
1469	Birth of Guru Nanak.
1494	Accession of Babur in Farghana.
1497-98	First voyage of Vasco da Gama to India (discovery of sea route to India via the Cape of Good Hope)
1526	First Battle of Panipat; Babur defeated Ibrahim Lodhi; foundation of Mughal dynasty by Babur.
1527	Battle of Khanwa—Babur defeated Rana Sanga.
1530	Death of Babur and accession of Humayun.
1539	Sher Shah Suri defeated Humayun in the battle of Chausa and became India's emperor.
1555	Humayun recaptured the throne of Delhi.
1556	Second Battle of Panipat (Akbar defeated Hemu).
1556	Battle of Talikota (Rakshasa-Tangadi).
1576	Battle of Haldighati—Rana Pratap was defeated by Akbar.
1582	Din-i-Ilahi founded by Akbar.
1600	English East India Company established.
1605	Death of Akbar and accession of Jahangir.
1606	Execution of Guru Arjun Dev, the 5th Guru of Sikhs.
1611	Jahangir marries Nurjahan.
1615	Sir Thomas Roe visits Jahangir.
1627	Birth of Shivaji and death of Jahangir.
1628	Shahjahan becomes emperor of India.
1631	Death of Mumtazmahal.
1634	The English permitted to trade in India (in Bengal)
1659	Accession of Aurangzeb, Shahjahan imprisoned.
1665	Shivaji imprisoned by Aurangzeb.
1666	Death of Shahjahan.
1675	Execution of Guru Teg Bahadur, the 9th Guru of Sikhs.
1680	Death of Shivaji.
1707	Death of Aurangzeb.
1708	Death of Guru Gobind Singh, the 10th Guru of Sikhs.
1739	Nadir Shah invades India.

III. MODERN

- 1757 Battle of Plassey; establishment of British political rule in India at the hands of Lord Clive.
- 1761 Third Battle of Panipat.
- 1764 Battle of Buxar.
- 1765 Clive appointed Company's Governor in India.
- 1767-69 First Anglo-Mysore War.
- 1780 Birth of Maharaja Ranjit Singh.
- 1780-84 Second Anglo-Mysore War.
- 1784 Pitt's India Act.
- 1790-92 Third Anglo-Mysore War.
- 1793 The Permanent Settlement of Bengal.
- 1799 Fourth Anglo-Mysore War—Death of Tipu Sultan.
- 1802 Treaty of Bassein.
- 1809 Treaty of Amritsar.
- 1829 Practice of Sati prohibited.
- 1830 Raja Rammohan Roy visits England.
- 1833 Death of Raja Rammohan Roy at Bristol, England.
- 1839 Death of Maharaja Ranjit Singh.
- 1839-42 First Anglo-Afghan War.
- 1845-46 First Anglo-Sikh War.
- 1852 Second Anglo-Burmese War.
- 1853 First Railway line opened between Bombay and Thane and a Telegraph line in Calcutta.
- 1857 The Sepoy Mutiny or First War of Independence.
- 1861 Birth of Rabindranath Tagore.
- 1869 Birth of Mahatma Gandhi.
- 1885 Foundation of Indian National Congress.
- 1889 Birth of Jawaharlal Nehru.
- 1897 Birth of Subhash Chandra Bose.
- 1903 Tibet Expedition (Young Husband delegation).
- 1905 Partition of Bengal by Lord Curzon.
- 1906 Foundation of Muslim League by Salimullah (Nawab of Dhaka) at Dhaka.
- 1911 Delhi Darbar; King and Queen visit India; Delhi becomes the capital of India.
- 1914 World War I begins.
- 1916 Lucknow Pact signed by Muslim League and Congress.
- 1918 World War I ends.
- 1919 Montague-Chelmsford Reforms introduced; Jallianwala Bagh massacre at Amritsar.
- 1920 Khilafat Movement launched.
- 1927 Boycott of Simon Commission, broadcasting started in India.

- 1925 Death of Lala Lajpat Rai.
- 1926 Resolution of 'Poorna Swaraj' (complete independence) passed at Lahore Session of INC.
- 1927 Civil disobedience movement launched, Dandi March by Mahatma Gandhi (April 6, 1930).
- 1929 Gandhi-Irwin Pact.
- 1931 Government of India Act.
- 1935 Provincial Autonomy, Congress forms ministries.
- 1937 World War II begins (September 3).
- 1939 Escape of Subhash Chandra Bose from India.
- 1941 Death of Rabindranath Tagore.
- 1942 Arrival of Cripps Mission in India, Quit India movement launched (August 8).
- 1943-44 S.C. Bose formed Provisional Government of Free India and reorganised Indian National Army in Singapore; Bengal famine.
- 1945 Trial of Indian National Army at Red Fort; Shimla Conference; World War II ends.
- 1946 British Cabinet Mission visits India; Interim government formed at the Centre.
- 1947 Division of India; India & Pakistan form separate independent dominions.

Important Places

Ahichhatra : Originally *Ahikshetra* in Bareilly district of Uttar Pradesh was once the capital of Panchalas.

Aihole : In Karnataka contains chief sites of Chalukyan architecture—nearly 70 structural stone temples important in the development of Hindu architecture and sculpture.

Ajanta Caves : 66 miles north of Aurangabad in Maharashtra State. These are rock-cut Buddhist caves, 29 in number. These caves represent a record of unique painting, sculpture and architecture of the period from about the 2nd century B.C. to about 7th century A.D.

Amaravati : It is the legendary capital of Svarga. Also a historical site near modern Vijaywada, believed to have flourished under the Satavahana dynasty.

Arikamedu : It was a sea-port near Pondicherry in Chola times.

Ayodhya : A few miles from modern Faizabad, near Lucknow, was capital of the Kosala and the Solar kings of ancient India. Rama was the most prominent among them.

Badami (or Vatapi) : In Karnataka is well-known for Chalukyan sculpture found in the cave temples here. These are groups of Hindu temples dating back to 7th or 8th century and are examples of pure Dravidian architecture. Besides cave temples and rock-cut pillared halls, there is also the famous Malegitti Shivalaya temple.

Belur : In Karnataka is famous for its elaborately sculptured Cheena Kesava temple of the Hoysala period.

Bhubaneswar : In Orissa is known for ancient temples viz., Rajarani; Lingraja; Brahmesvara.

Bodh Gaya : It is situated 6 miles south of Gaya in Bihar State on the western bank of the Falgu river and connected by two metalled roads. It is famous as the

place where Buddha got enlightenment. There are modern monasteries, rest houses and museum.

Chidambaram: A town 150 miles south of Chennai known as Tillai in ancient time, was once the capital of the Chola kingdom. Its temples are among the oldest in India and are gems of Dravidian architecture. It is famous as the abode of Nataraja the Dancing Shiva.

Daulatabad: Near Aurangabad in Maharashtra State is famous for rock-cut fortress of 12th century or near the tomb of the Mughal Emperor Aurangzeb.

Elephanta Caves: On the island of the same name about 6 miles from Mumbai harbour are rock-cut caves of the 7th and 8th century. The name Elephanta is due to the Portuguese, who were apparently struck by the stone elephants which were once found in the landing place.

Ellora Caves: About 15 miles north-west of Aurangabad in Maharashtra State are about 34 caves excavated in the face of a hill.

Fatehpur Sikri: 23 miles from Agra in Uttar Pradesh was the city founded by Akbar in 1571 but abandoned soon after. The place contains a number of places, shrines, mosques. The most notable among them is Buland Darwaza, 176 feet high and built to commemorate the conquest of Gujarat.

Halebid: In Karnataka, 10 miles from Belur, is well-known for its elaborately sculptured temples of the Hoysala period. The monuments rank among the masterpieces of Hindu art.

Hampi: In Karnataka, 9 miles from Hospet railway station, is the ruined capital of the Vijayanagar Empire.

Harappa: In Montgomery district of Punjab, now in West Pakistan, is known for excavations carried out here showing signs of Indus Valley Civilization.

Junagadh: In Gujarat State is one of the most ancient cities of India. It is situated below the Girnar Hill. The temples on the Hill are known for their architecture and paintings.

Kalibangan: In Hanumangarh district of Rajasthan where excavations brought to light the varied achievements of Indus Valley Civilisation—town planning and use of burnt bricks.

Kannauj: Capital of Harshavardhana.

Kanchipuram: Or the "Golden City", 45 miles south-west of Chennai is known for Kailashnath temple. It was the capital of successive dynasties of Hindu rulers.

Kanheri: 20 miles from Mumbai is known for its Buddhist caves dating back to the 1st century A.D.

Kanyakubja: Or modern Kannauj is an ancient city. It was the cultural centre of northern India from the seventh century to the time when the Muslims came.

Kapilyavastu: A small ancient kingdom in the north of India; associated with Mahatma Buddha.

Khajuraho: In Chhattarpur in Madhya Pradesh is famous for its group of highly ornate mediaeval Hindu temples.

Kusinagar: In the district of modern Deoria, is the place where Buddha died.

Lothal: Ancient town, situated on the sea-plain of former Saurashtra, 450 miles south-east of Mohenjodaro. The excavation made here represent the Indus Valley Civilization.

Madurai: Popularly known as the "City of Festivals", was till the 14th century the capital of the Pandyan kingdom which had sea-borne trade with Rome and Greece. It is famous for Minakshi temple.

Mammalapuram (now **Mahabalipuram**): Situated 53 miles from Chennai, it is known for rock-cut temples, monolithic figures and carvings of the 7th and 8th centuries A.D. The chief points of interest here are the Five Rathas or temples modelled as chariots—"Arjuna Ratha", "Draupadi Ratha", "Dharamraja Ratha" etc. Also famous for Shore temple.

Mandu: In Madhya Pradesh. It is one of the largest mediaeval city sites. It has extensive remains—fortifications and palaces—a synthesis of Hindu and Muslim styles in architecture and painting; Jama Masjid (of Mandu).

Mithila: It was the home of the three scholar sages—**Gargi**, **Maitreya** and **Kapila**. It was the capital town of **Raja Janak's** territory.

Mohenjodaro: In the Larkana district of Sindh (now in Pakistan) is the site of excavation revealing Indus Valley Civilization.

Nalanda: In Bihar was the seat of an ancient Buddhist University. It contains a group of Buddhist temples and monasteries.

Palitana: In Saurashtra is famous for its holly hill **Shatrunjaya**. It is the most sacred place for Shvetambara Jains.

Pandharpur: It is in Sholapur district (Maharashtra State). It stands on Bhima river and is one of the most sacred places of pilgrimage in the State.

Prabhaspatan (or **Somnath**): In Gujarat State is the site of the famous Somnath temple which was destroyed by **Mahmud Ghazni**.

Pragjyotishpur: Was the capital of an ancient tribal kingdom in Kamarupa or modern Assam.

Rajgir: 8 miles south-west of Nalanda by road is an important place of pilgrimage for Buddhists. It was the capital of **Bimbisara** in ancient times. The Buddha preached at Rajgir, and so did **Mahavira**, the great preceptor of the Jains.

Sanchi: In Madhya Pradesh is famous for the largest and the most well-preserved Buddhist Stupa (108-foot in diameter and 42-foot in height).

Sarnath: Near Varanasi is the place where the Buddha delivered his first sermon after he became the "Enlightened One". The place is known for Buddhist temples and remains.

Seringapatam: In Karnataka was the ancient capital of **Tipu Sultan**. (Now known as Seringapatnam.)

Somnathpuram: In Karnataka is known for temples of Hoysala period, Kesava temple.

Sravanbelgola: In Karnataka is famous for its Jain temples and the colossal statue of **Gomateshwara** (**Babubali**)—65-foot high erected in A.D. 983, the tallest monolithic in the world.

Srirangam: An island on the Cauvery river two miles north of Tiruchirapalli. It contains one of the largest temples in south India of the Vijayanagar period.

Stringeri: In Karnataka is a place of pilgrimage on the banks of Tung river where the great philosopher **Sankara** founded one of the principal **maths** (monasteries).

Tamralipti: A flourishing sea port in ancient India.

Tanjore: Was the capital of Cholas. It is situated in the delta of the Cauvery in Tamil Nadu. Also known for Brihadeeswara temple.

Taxila: Ancient capital of Gandhara and one of the most renowned cities of ancient north-west India.

Tirupati: In Andhra Pradesh State, situated about 100 miles to the north-west of Chennai is one of the holiest places in South India. This hill temple of Sri Venkateswara is an example of early Dravidian architecture and is one of the finest in the south.

Ujjain: Known to be the seat of king *Vikrama*, is situated on the bank of Sipra river in Madhya Pradesh. It is one of the seven sacred cities also known as *Avanti*. The Oriental Museum here has some valuable manuscripts and pieces of sculpture. Mahakaleshwar temple here is known as a pilgrimage centre.

Vaishali: In the district of Vaishali in Bihar was the capital of famous Vajji kingdom in ancient times.

Vatapi: See Badami.

Vikramasila: Was a great Tantrik University established by the Pala King *Dharampala* in A.D. 810. It was a hotbed of moral corruption, sorcery and idolatry. In AD 1198, the soldiers of Iktiar Khilji destroyed the structure to the ground and killed all the monks in the university.

Association of Places

Place	Associated with	Place	Associated with
Bardoli	Sardar Patel	Pondicherry	Aurobindo Ghosh
Belur	Rama Krishna Paramhans	Porbandar	Mahatma Gandhi
Chittor	Rana Pratap	Rajghat	Mahatma Gandhi
Fatehpur Sikri	Akbar the Great	Sabarmati	Mahatma Gandhi
Jallianwala Bagh	Massacre of Indians by the British on April 13, 1919	Seringapatnam	Tipu Sultan
Haldighati	Rana Pratap	Shanti Van	Jawahar Lal Nehru
Kapilavastu	Mahatma Buddha	Shantiniketan	Rabindranath Tagore
Lumbini	Mahatma Buddha	Talwandi	Guru Nanak
Macedonia	Alexander the Great	Ujjain	Mahavira
Mecca	Prophet Mohammed	Vrindaban (U.P.)	Lord Krishna

Important Foreign Travellers/Envoy

Megasthenes (302-298 BC): An ambassador of Seleucus Nikator, who visited the court of *Chandragupta Maurya*. He wrote an interesting book '*Indica*' in which he gave a vivid account of Chandragupta Maurya's reign.

Fa-Hien (405-411 AD): He came to India during the reign of *Chandragupta II Vikramaditya*. The object of his visit was to see the holy places of Buddhism and to collect Buddhist books and relics. He was the first Chinese pilgrim to visit India.

Huen-Tsang (630-645 AD): He visited India during the reign of *Harshavardhana*. His work Biographies of Eminent Monks, provides us useful information about the social, religious and cultural life of the people of this country.

Al-Masudi (957 AD): An Arab traveller, he has given an extensive account of India in his work 'Muruj-ul-Zahab'.

Al-beruni (1024-1030 AD): His real name was *Abu Rehan Mahamud* and he came to India along with *Mahmud of Ghazni* during one of his Indian raids. He travelled all over India and wrote a book '*Tahqiq-i-Hind*'. The book deals with the social, religious and political conditions in India.

Marco Polo (1292-1294 AD): A Venetian traveller, he visited South India in 1294 A.D. (during the reign of Pandyan ruler of Madurai, *Madverman Kulsheshkara* : 1272-1311). His work 'The Book of Sir Marco Polo' gives an invaluable account of the economic history of India.

Ibn Batuta (1333-1347 AD): A Morroccan traveller, he visited India during the reign of *Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq*. His book '*Rehla*' (the Travelogue) throws a lot of light on the reign of Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq and the geographical, economic and social conditions in India.

Shihabuddin al-Umari (1348 AD): He came from Damascus. He gives a vivid account of India in his book, '*Masalik albsar fi-mamalik al-amsar*'.

Nicolo Conti (1420-1421 AD): A Venetian traveller, he gives a comprehensive account of the Hindu kingdom of Vijayanagar.

Abdur Razzaq (1443-1444 AD): He was a Persian traveller, who came to India and stayed at the court of the Zamorin at Calicut. He has given a vivid account of the Vijayanagar empire, especially of the city. He describes the wealth and luxurious life of the king and the nobles.

Athanasius Nikitin (1470-1474 AD): He was a Russian merchant, who visited South India in 1470. He describes the condition of the Bahmani kingdom under *Muhammad III* (1463-82).

Duarte Barbosa (1500-1516 AD): He was a Portuguese traveller. He has given a valuable narrative of the government and the people of the Vijayanagar empire.

Domingo Paes (1520-1522 AD): He was Portuguese traveller, who visited the court of *Krishnadeva Raya* of the Vijayanagar Empire.

Fernao Nuniz (1535-1537 AD): A Portuguese merchant, who visited the Vijayanagar empire. He wrote the history of the empire from its earliest times of the closing years of *Achyutdeva Raya's* reign.

John Hughen Von Linschotten (1583 AD): He was a Dutch traveller, who has given a valuable account of the social and economic life of South India.

William Hawkins (1608-1611 AD): He was an English ambassador of the British King James I to the court of Jahangir (1609).

Sir Thomas Roe (1615-1619 AD): He was an ambassador of James I, King of England, at the court of Jahangir, the Mughal emperor.

Franciso Palsaert (1620-1627 AD): He was a Dutch traveller, who stayed at Agra and gave a vivid account of the flourishing trade at Surat, Ahmedabad, Broach, Cambay, Lahore, Multan etc.

Peter Mundy (1630-34 AD): He was an Italian traveller to the Mughal empire in the reign of *Shahjahan*. He gives valuable information about the living standard of the common people in the Mughal Empire.

John Albert de Mandesto (1638 AD): He was German traveller, who reached Surat in 1638.

Abbreviated/Alternative Name
Man of Iron / Iron Man of India
Netaji
Nightingale of India
Parrot of India (Tuti-e-Hindustan)
Patriot of Patriots
Punjab Kesari
Scourge of God
Strong Man of India

Original Name
Sardar Patel
Subhas Chandra Bose
Sarojini Naidu
Amir Khusrau
Subhash Chandra Bose
Lala Lajpat Rai
Chengiz Khan
Sardar Patel

Important Sayings

'Back to Vedas.'

'Dharma Chakra Pravartana.'

'Dilli Chalo!'

'Do or Die.'

'Give me blood and I will give you freedom.'

Subhash Chandra Bose's battle cry of Azad Hind Fauj

Mahatma Gandhi (while launching Quit India movement in 1942)

'My ultimate aim is to wipe every tear from every eye.'

Jawahar Lal Nehru

'Swaraj is my birthright and I will have it.'

Bal Gangadhar Tilak

'Every blow that is hurled on my back will be a nail in the coffin of the British Empire'.

Lala Lajpat Rai

'The Congress is tottering to its fall and one of my greatest ambitions while in India is to assist it to a peaceful demise'.

Lord Curzon

Important Battles

Name of the Battle	Year	Battle between	Won by	Significance
Battle of Hydaspes	326 BC	Alexander and Porus	Alexander	Fought on the bank of the Jhelum, which is called 'Hydaspes' in Greek; opened relations between India and the West.
Kalinga War	260 BC	Ashoka and King of Ashoka Kalinga		Vast destruction and bloodshed changed the attitude of Ashoka and he embraced Buddhism.
First Battle of Tarain or Thaneswar	1191 AD	Prithviraj Chauhan and Mohd Ghori	Prithviraj Chauhan	
Second Battle of Tarain	1192 AD	- do -	Mohd. Ghori	Establishment of an Islamic empire in India
First Battle of Panipat	1526 AD	Ibrahim Lodhi and Babur	Babur	Onset of the Mughal empire in India.
Battle of Khanwa	1527 AD	Babur and Rana Sanga	Babur	

Jean Baptiste Tavernier (1638-1663 AD): He was a French traveller, who visited India six times. His account covers the reign of **Shahjahan** and **Aurangzeb**.

Nicolao Manucci (1653-1708 AD): He was an Italian traveller, who got service at the court of **Dara Shikoh**.

Francois Bernier (1656-1717 AD): He was French physician and philosopher. Danishmand Khan, a noble of **Aurangzeb**, was his patron.

Jean de Thevenot (1666 AD): He was French traveller, who has given a good account of cities like Ahmedabad, Cambay, Aurangabad and Golconda.

John Fryer (1672-1681 AD): He was an English traveller, who has given a vivid account of Surat and Bombay.

Gemelli Careri (1695 AD): He was an Italian traveller who landed at Daman. His remarks on the Mughal emperor's military organisation and administration are important.

Abbreviated or Alternative Names

Abbreviated/Alternative Name	Original Name
Andhra Kesari	T. Prakasam
Anna	C.N. Annadurai
Badshah Khan	Abdul Ghaffar Khan
Bapu, Mahatma Gandhi	Mohan Das Karam Chand Gandhi
Beacon of Light of Asia	Subhash Chandra Bose
Chacha	Jawahar Lal Nehru
C.R.	C. Rajagopalachari
Deenbandhu	C.F. Andrews
Deshbandhu	C.R. Das
Enlightened One, The Father of Indian Unrest	Mahatma Buddha
Father of the Local Self-government	Bal Gangadhar Tilak
Father of the Nation (India)	Lord Ripon
Frontier Gandhi	Mahatma Gandhi
Grand Old Man of India	Abdul Ghaffar Khan
Gurudev	Dadabhai Naoroji
Indian Bismarck	Rabindranath Tagore
Indian Einstein	Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel
Indian Napoleon	Nagarjuna
J.P./Loknayak	Samudragupta
Lal, Bal, Pal	Jayaprakash Narayan
Liberator of the Indian Press	Lala Lajpat Rai, Bal Gangadhar Tilak and Bipin Chandra Pal
Lion of Punjab (Sher-i-Punjab)	Sir Charles Metcalfe
Lokmanya	Lala Lajpat Rai
Mahamana	Bal Gangadhar Tilak
Martin Luther of India	Pt. Mandan Mohan Malaviya
	Dayanand Saraswati

Lucent's General Knowledge

Name of the Battle	Year	Battle between	Won by	Significance
Battle of Chausa	1539 AD	Sher Shah Humayun	Sher Shah Akbar	Sher Shah became emperor of India.
Second Battle of Panipat	1556 AD	Akbar and Hemu	Akbar	Ended Afghan rule, strengthened mughal rule
Battle of Talikota	1565 AD	Combined force of Muslim 4 Muslim rulers of forces Deccan and Ramraja of Vijayanagar	Rana Pratap and Akbar	Destroyed Hindu kingdom of the Deccan; sealed the fortunes of Vijayanagar empire.
Battle of Haldighati	1576 AD	Rana Pratap and Akbar	Rana Pratap and Akbar	Rana Pratap fought gallantly and took refuge in a remote fortress.
Battle of Samugarhi	1659 AD	Aurangzeb Imperial forces led by Dara	Aurangzeb and Aurangzeb	Aurangzeb captured the Mughal throne.
Battle of Plassey	1757 AD	Sirajuddaula English forces under Clive	and English	Fought at Plassey. The English became masters of Bengal; foundation of British rule.
Third Battle of Panipat	1761 AD	Ahmed Shah Abdali Ahmed and Marathas	Shah Abdali	Gave a setback to Marathas in the north; sealed destiny of Mughal empire and made British entry easier.
Battle of Buxar	1764 AD	Joint forces of Muslim and English forces	English forces	Led to English occupation of India.
Third Mysore War	1790-1792 AD	English forces and Tipu Sultan	English forces	Tipu Sultan had to sign treaty of the Seringapatam.
Fourth Mysore War	1799 AD	English forces and Tipu Sultan	English forces	Fought at Malavali and brought the Mohammedan dynasty of Mysore to end.
Second Sikh War	1848-1849 AD	English forces and Sikhs	English forces	Sikh kingdom came under the British.

Reforms/Acts

Nomenclature of the Year	During the term of	Significance
Reforms/Acts		
Prohibition of Sati & Female infanticide	1829	Lord Bentick William Supported by Raja Rammohun Roy.
Doctrine of Lapse	1848	Lord Dalhousie Adoption of sons by rulers in the absence of their natural heirs was banned.
Widow Remarriage Act	1856	Lord Canning Legalized the marriage of Hindu widow, Supported by Ishwarchandra Vidyasagar
Indian Councils Act	1861	Lord Canning Envisaged association of Indians with the administration at higher level.
Ilbert Bill	1883	Lord Ripon To bring Indian and European magistracy on equal footing.

Nomenclature of the Year Reforms/Acts	During the term of	Significance
Indian Councils Act	1892	Lord Lansdown Membership of central legislative councils was enlarged.
Morely-Minto Reforms	1909	Lord Minto II Separate electorates to widen the gulf between Hindus & Muslims.
Dyarchy	1919	L. Chelmsford Meaning dual system of Govt.
Jallianwala Bagh Massacre	1919	L. Chelmsford Massacre at Jallianwala Bagh in Amritsar by General Dyer
Rowlett Act	1919	L. Chelmsford Extraordinary powers were given to suppress the freedom struggle with General Dyer as the Commandant.
Simon commission	1928	Lord Irwin To report working of the reforms; recommended dyarchy in provinces; India to be constituted as a federation and Indianisation of armed forces.
Gandhi-Irwin Pact	1931	Lord Irwin Congress called off the agitation and agreed to participate in the Second Round Table Conference.
Communal Award	1932	Lord Willingdon Envisaged communal representation for depressed classes besides Hindus, Muslims and Sikhs.
Separate electorates	1932	Lord Willingdon (See Communal Award)
Government of India Act	1935	Lord Willingdon Provided for a federal type of constitution.
Cripps Mission	1942	Lord Linlithgow Proposed Dominion status for India after the Second World War.
INA Trial	1945	Lord Wavell INA prisoners of war were trialed at Red Fort, Delhi and Bhulabhai Desai defended them.
Wavell Plan	1945	Lord Wavell Envisaged constitution of executive council in such a way as to give representation to all major communities in India.
Cabinet Mission Plan	1946	Lord Wavell Envisaged establishment of Constituent Assembly to frame the Constitution.
Mountbatten Plan	1947	L. Mountbatten Partition Plan
Indian Independence Act	1947	L. Mountbatten India partitioned and attained independence.

Educational Committees/Commissions

Viceroy	Committee/Commission	Year	Chairman	Objectives
Lord Ripon (1880-1884)	Hunter Commission	1882	William Hunter	To study the development in education.
Lord Curzon (1899-1905)	University Commission	1902	Thomas Raleigh	To study the Universities and introduce reforms.

Viceroy	Committee/Commission	Year	Chairman	Objectives
Lord Chelmsford (1916-1921)	Calcutta University Commission	1917	Michael Sadler	To study the condition of University.
Lord Reading (1921-1926)	Indian Disbandment Committee	1923	Lord Itchcap	To discuss the Central Committee of Education
Lord Wavell (1943-1947)	Sargeant Plan	1944	John Sargeant	To raise the standard of Education like Britain.
Famine Commissions				
Lord Lytton (1876-1880)	Famine Commission	1880	Richard Strachey	To give relief of famine stricken areas.
Lord Elgin (1894-1899)	Famine Commission	1897	James Lyall	To give suggestion on earlier reports
Lord Curzon (1899-1905)	Famine Commission	1900	Anthony McDonnell	To give the suggestion on famine report
Lord Wavell (1943-1947)	Famine Inspection Commission	1943-44	John Woodhood	To investigate in the events of Bengal Famine.
Economic Committees/Commissions				
Lord Lansdowne (1888-1894)	Harshell Committee	1893	Hershell	To give suggestion regarding currency.
Lord Lansdowne (1888-1894)	Opium Commission	1893	----	To investigate about the effect of opium on health.
Lord Elgin (1894-1899)	Henry Fowler Commission	1898	H. Fowler	To give suggestions on currency.
Lord Curzon (1899-1905)	Irrigation Commission	1901	Sir Wolvin Scott Monkinj	To plan for the expenditure on Irrigation.
Lord Hardinge (1910-1916)	Maclagon Committee	1914-15	Maclagon	To advise for cooperative finances.
Lord Irwin (1926-1931)	Linlithgow Commission	1928	----	To study the problem in agriculture. (Report by Linlithgow)
Lord Irwin (1926-1931)	Whitelay Commission	1929	J.H. Whitelay	To study the condition of labour in Industries and gardens.
Lord Wellington (1931-1936)	Indian Measurement Committee	1935	Lary Hamand	To arrange for inclusion of labour in Federal Assembly.
Lord Linlithgow (1936-1943)	National Planning Committee	1938	Jawaharlal Nehru	To prepare economic plan.
Administrative Committees/Commissions				
Lord Dufferin (1884-1886)	Etkinson Commission	1886	Charles Etkinson	To involve more Indians in Civil Service.

Viceroy	Committee/Commission	Year	Chairman	Objectives
Lord Curzon (1899-1905)	Fraser Commission	1902	Fraser	To investigate the working of police.
Lord Hardinge (1910-1916)	Royal Commission on Civil Service	1912	Lord Islington	To give 25% high posts to Indian.
Lord Reading (1921-1926)	Royal Commission	1924	Lord Lee	To remove defects of Civil Service.
Lord Reading (1921-1926)	Sandhurst Committee	1926	Andrews Skeen	To suggest Indianization of Indian army.
Lord Irwin (1926-1931)	Butler Committee	1927	Hercourt Butler	To Examine nature of crown relation with native States.
Important Congress Session				
Year	Place	Importance		
1885	Bombay	At Gokuldas Tejpal Sanskrit College, 72 delegates		
1886	Calcutta	436 delegates		
1887	Madras	Tayabji became first Muslim President.		
1888	Allahabad	George Yule became first English President.		
1889	Bombay	Congress represented all areas of British India.		
1890	Calcutta	Decision taken to organise a session of Congress in London.		
1895	Poona	Demand for a representative body only for educated class.		
1898	Madras	Social reform was set as the main goal.		
1907	Surat	Congress split.		
1908	Madras	Constitution for the Congress.		
1916	Lucknow	Congress merger. Pact with Muslim League, Gandhi attended.		
1917	Calcutta	Annie Besant became 1st women President.		
1920	Nagpur	Gandhian programme was adopted. Change in congress constitution.		
1921	Ahmedabad	Hasrat Mohani demanded for complete independence.		
1922	Gaya	Formation of Swaraj Party.		
1924	Belgaum	Gandhi became President.		
1925	Kanpur	Sarojini Naidu became 1st Indian women President.		
1927	Madras	Nehru and S. C. Bose moved resolution for independence and it was passed for the 1st time.		
1928	Calcutta	First All India Youth Congress.		
1929	Lahore	'Poorna Swaraj' (Complete Independence) resolution and pledge for Independence day on 26 January 1930.		
1931	Karachi	Resolution for Fundamental Rights and National Economic Policy.		
1934	Bombay	Formation of Congress Socialist Party.		
1936	Lucknow	Support for socialism through democracy.		
1937	Faizpur	Demand for Constituent Assembly.		
1938	Haripura	Purna Swaraj was to cover also princely states.		
1939	Tripti	S. C. Bose resigned due to difference with Gandhi, after resignation Rajendra Prasad became President of INC.		

Governor-General and Viceroys

Governors of Bengal (1757-74)

Robert Clive : Governor of Bengal during 1757-60 and again during 1765-72, and established Dual Government in Bengal from 1765-72.

Vanishtart (1760-65) : The Battle of Buxar (1764).

Cartier (1769-72) : Bengal Famine (1770).

Warren Hastings (1772-74) : Abolished Dual Government (1772).

Governor-Generals of Bengal (1774-1833)

Warren Hastings (1774-85) : Became Governor-General in 1774 through Regulating Act, 1773; Wrote introduction to the first English translation of the 'Gita' by Charles Wilkins; Founded the Asiatic Society of Bengal with William Jones in 1784.

Revenue Reforms : Auctioned the right to collect land revenue to the highest bidder; Divided Bengal into districts and appointed collectors and other revenue officials.

Judicial Reforms : Started Diwani and Faujdari adalats at the district level and Sadar diwani and Nizamat adalats (appellate courts) at Calcutta; Redefined Hindu and Muslim laws; A translation of the code in Sanskrit appeared in 1776 under the title of "Code of Gentoo laws".

Wars : Rohilla War (1774); 1st Anglo-Maratha War (1776-82); 2nd Anglo-Mysore War (1780-84).

Lord Cornwallis (1786-93) : First person to codify laws in 1793. The code separated the revenue administration from the administration of justice; Created post of district judge; Introduced Permanent Settlement in Bengal (1793); Cornwallis is called 'the father of civil service in India'.

Wars : 3rd Anglo-Mysore War (defeat of Tipu and the Treaty of Seringapatam, 1792)

Sir John Shore (1793-98) : Introduced the 1st Charter Act (1793).

Wars : Battle of Kharda between Nizam and the Marathas (1795)

Lord Wellesley (1798-1805) : Started Subsidiary Alliance system to achieve British paramountcy in India, Nizam Ali (Nizam of Hyderabad) was the first Indian native ruler to accept the system of subsidiary Alliance (1798); Madras Presidency was formed during his tenure.

Wars : 4th Anglo-Mysore War (1799)—defeat and the death of Tipu Sultan; 2nd Anglo-Maratha War (1803-05)—defeat of the Scindia, the Bhonsle and the Holkar; Treaty of Bassein (1802).

George Barlow (1805-1807) : Vellore Mutiny (1806)

Lord Minto I (1807-1813) : Concluded Treaty of Amritsar with Ranjit Singh (1809); Charter Act of 1813 was passed.

Lord Hastings (1813-1823) : Adopted the policy of intervention and war.

Wars : Anglo-Nepalese War (1813-23); 3rd Anglo-Maratha War (1817-18); Hastings forced humiliating treaties on Peshwa and the Scindia; Introduced the Ryotwari settlement in Madras by Thomas Munro, the Governor.

Lord Amherst (1823-28) : **Wars** : 1st Burmese War (1824-26); Acquisition of territories in Malay Peninsula; Capture of Bharatpur (1826).

Lord W. Bentick (1828-33) : Most liberal and enlightened Governor-General of India; Regarded as 'the Father of Modern Western Education in India'; Abolished Sati and other cruel rites (1829); Annexation of Mysore (1831). Concluded a treaty of perpetual friendship with Ranjit Singh (1831); Passed the Charter Act of 1833, which provided that no Indian subject of Company was to be debarred from holding an office on account of his religion, place of birth, descent and colour.

Governor Generals of India (1833-58)

Lord W. Bentick (1833-35) : Macaulay's minutes on education were accepted declaring that English should be the official language of India; Abolished provincial courts of appeal and circuit set up by Cornwallis, appointment of commissioners of revenue and circuit.

Wars : Annexed Coorg (1834), Central Cachar (1834) on the plea of misgovernment.

Sir Charles Metcalfe (1834-1836) : Passed the famous Press Law, which liberated the press in India.

Lord Auckland (1836-42) : 1st Anglo-Afghan War (1836-42)—great blow to the prestige of the British in India.

Lord Ellenborough (1842-44) : Brought an end to the Afghan War; Annexation of Sindh (1843); War with Gwalior (1843); Abolished slavery (1843).

Lord Hardings I (1844-48) : 1st Anglo-Sikh war (1845-46) and the Treaty of Lahore, 1846 (marked the end of Sikh sovereignty in India); Gave preference to English educated in employment.

Lord Dalhousie (1848-56) : Abolished Titles and Pensions, Introduction of Widow Remarriage Bill (Nov. 17, 1855).

Wars : Introduced Doctrine of Lapse (Captured Satara (1848), Jaitpur and Sambhalpur (1849), Baghat (1850), Udaipur (1852), Jhansi (1853) and Nagpur (1854); Fought 2nd Anglo-Sikh War (1848-49) and annexed the whole of the Punjab; 2nd Anglo-Burmese War (1852) and annexation of Lower Burma or Pegu; Annexation of Berar in 1853; Annexation of Avadh in 1856 on charges of mal-administration.

Administrative Reforms : Introduced the system of centralized control in the newly acquired territories known as Non-Regulation system; Raised Gurkha regiments.

Educational Reforms : Recommended the Thomsonian system of vernacular education for whole of the Northwestern Provinces (1853); Wood's Educational Despatch of 1854 and opening of Anglo-Vernacular Schools and Government Colleges; An Engineering College was established at Roorkee.

Public Works : Started the first railway line in 1853 (connecting Bombay with Thana); Started electric telegraph service. Laid the basis of the modern postal system (1854); A separate public works department was set up for the first time; Started work on the Grand Trunk Road and developed the harbours of Karachi, Bombay and Calcutta.

Lord Canning (1856-58): The last Governor General of India; Passed Widow Remarriage Act (July 25, 1856); Revolt of 1857; Passed the Act of 1858, which ended the rule of the East India Company. Withdrew Doctrine of Lapse.

Governor Generals and Viceroys (1858-1947)

Lord Canning (1858-62): The Indian Councils Act of 1861 was passed, which proved to be a landmark in the constitutional history of India; The Indian Penal Code of Criminal Procedure (1859) was passed; The Indian High Court Act (1861) was enacted; Income Tax was introduced for the first time in 1858; The Universities of Calcutta, Bombay and Madras founded in 1857; The Indigo riots in Bengal (1860).

Lord Elgin I (1862-63): Wahabi Movement (Pan-Islamic Movement)

Sir John Lawrence (1864-69): Telegraphic communication was opened with Europe; High Courts were established at Calcutta, Bombay and Madras in 1865; Expanded canal works and railways; Bhutan War (1865); Advocated State-managed railways; Created the Indian Forests Department and reorganized the native judicial service.

Lord Mayo (1869-72): Introduced financial decentralization in India, Established Mayo College at Ajmer for the princes; Organised the Statistical Survey of India, Established the Department of Agriculture and Commerce, He was the only Viceroy to be murdered in office by a convict in Andamans in 1872, Introduction of State Railways.

Lord Northbrook (1872-76): Kuka Movement of Punjab took rebellious turn during his period.

Lord Lytton (1876-80): Most infamous Governor-General, Pursued free trade and abolished duties on 29 British manufactured goods which accelerated drain of wealth of India, Arranged the Grand Darbar in Delhi (in 1877) when the country was suffering from a severe famine; Passed the Royal Title Act (1876) and Queen Victoria was declared as the Kaisar-i-Hind; Arms Act (1878) made mandatory for Indians to acquire license for arms; Passed the infamous Vernacular Press Act (1878); Proposed the plan of Statutory Civil Service in 1878-79 and lowered the maximum age limit from 21 to 19 years, the 2nd Afghan war proved a failure.

Lord Ripon (1880-84): Repeal of the Vernacular Press Act, 1882; The First Factory Act, 1881 to improve labour condition, Resolution of Local Self Government in 1882, Resolution on Land Revenue Policy; Appointed Hunter Commission (for education reforms) in 1882; The Ilbert Bill controversy erupted during his time (1883).

Lord Dufferin (1884-88): 3rd Burmese War (Annexation of upper and lower Burma in 1885, Establishment of Indian National Congress in 1885).

Lord Lansdowne (1888-94): The Factory Act of 1891; Categorization of Civil Services into imperial, provincial and subordinate; Indian Council Act of 1892 (introduced elections which was indirect); Appointment of the Durand Commission to define the line between British India and Afghanistan (1893).

Lord Elgin II (1894-99): The Munda uprising (Birsia Munda) of 1899, Convention delimiting the frontier between China and India was ratified, Great famine of 1896-

97, Lyall Commission appointed after famine (1897), Assassination of two British officials-Rand and Amherst-by Chapekar Brothers in 1897.

Lord Curzon (1899-1905): Appointed a Police Commission in 1902 under Andrew Frazer; Set up the Universities Commission and accordingly the Indian Universities Act of 1904 was passed; Set up the Department of Commerce and Industry; Calcutta Corporation Act (1899); Passed the Indian Coinage and Paper Currency Act (in 1899) and put India on a gold standard; Partition of Bengal took place in 1905 (It was cardinal blunder of Curzon); The idea to build Victoria Memorial (Calcutta) was conceived by Lord Curzon. The foundation stone of memorial was laid in 1906 and it was opened in 1921.

Lord Minto II (1905-10): Swadeshi Movement (1905-08); Foundation of the Muslim League, 1906; Surat session and split in the Congress (1907), Newspapers Act, 1908; Morley-Minto Reforms, 1909.

Lord Hardinge (1910-16): Annulment of the partition of Bengal (1911), Transfer of capital from Calcutta to Delhi (1911); Delhi Darbar and Coronation of King George V and Queen Mary (1911); Establishment of Hindu Mahasabha by Madan Mohan Malviya (1915).

Lord Chelmsford (1916-21): Home Rule Movement launched by Tilak and Annie Besant (1916); Lucknow Pact between Congress and Muslim League (1916); Arrival of Gandhi in India (1915); Champaran Satyagraha (1917); Montague's August Declaration (1917); Kheda Satyagraha and Satyagraha at Ahmedabad (1918); Government of India Act (1919), Repressive Rowlatt Act (1919); Jalianwala Bagh Massacre (April 13, 1919), appointment of Hunter Commission to probe Jalianwala Bagh Massacre (Oct. 19, 1919), Khilafat Movement (1920-22); Non-Cooperation Movement (1920-22).

Lord Reading (1921-26): Criminal Law Amendment Act and abolition of cotton excise; Repeal of Press Act of 1910 and Rowlatt Act of 1919; Violent Moplah rebellion in Kerala (1921); Foundation of CPI (1921); Chauri Chaura incident (1922); Foundation of Swaraj Party (1923); Kakori Train Dacoity (1925); Foundation of RSS (1925); Murder of Swami Shraddhanand (1926).

Lord Irwin (1926-31): Simon Commission announced in 1927; Butler Commission (1927); Nehru Report (1928); 14 points of Jinnah (1929); Lahore session of Congress and 'Poorna Swaraj' declaration (1929); Civil Disobedience Movement (1930); Dandi March (1930); 1st Round Table Conference (1930); Gandhi-Irwin Pact (1931).

Lord Willingdon (1931-36): 2nd Round Table Conference (1931); Civil Disobedience Movement (1932); Announcement of MacDonald's Communal Award (1932); 3rd Round Table Conference; Foundation of Congress Socialist Party — CSP (1934); Government of India Act (1935); Burma separated from India (1935), All India Kisan Sabha (1936).

Lord Linlithgow (1936-43): General Election (1936-37); Congress ministries in 1937 and Resignation of Congress ministries in 1939; 'Deliverance Day' by Muslim League in 1939; Foundation of forward Block by S.C. Bose (1939); Lahore Resolution (1940); August Offer (1940); Cripps Mission (1942); Quit India Movement (1942).

Lord Wavell (1943-1947) : C. R. Formula 1944; Wavell Plan and Shimla Conference in 1945; End of 2nd World War in 1945; INA Trials in 1945; Naval mutiny in 1946; Cabinet Mission, 1946 and acceptance of its proposals by Congress Direct Action Day by the Muslim League on 16th August, 1946.

Lord Mountbatten (Mar-Aug 1947) : Announced the 3 June, 1947 Plan of Indian Independence Bill in the house of Commons; Appointments of 2 boundary commissions under Sir Cyril Radcliffe.

Governor Generals of Free India (1947-50)

Lord Mountbatten (1947-48): The first Governor General of free India; Kashmir acceded to India (Oct., 1947); Murder of Gandhi (Jan. 30, 1948).

C. Rajagopalachari (June 1948 – Jan. 25, 1950) : The last Governor General of free India; The only Indian Governor-General.

downloaded from: shashidhakur23.blog.com

2

World History

Ancient World : Down to 500 AD Bronze Age Civilizations

Sl. No.	Name of the Civilization	Modern Area	River Valley
1.	Mesopotamian Civilization (4000 BC - 6th Cen. BC)	Iraq	Tigris and Euphrates
2.	Egyptian Civilization (3400 BC—1000 BC)	Egypt	Nile
3.	Harappan Civilization (2500 BC—1750 BC)	India and Pakistan	Indus
4.	Chinese Civilization (1765 BC—250 BC)	China	Hwang-Ho

Mesopotamian Civilization : The Oldest Civilization of the World

- **Mesopotamia** means 'land between the rivers'. Mesopotamia is the land between the **Tigris** and **Euphrates** rivers.
- Mesopotamia comprises four regions: Sumer (Southernmost region), Babylonia and Akkad (middle region) and Assyria (Northernmost region).
- **Hammurabi** (C. 2100 BC), the greatest Babylonian ruler, united the whole of what is now called Iraq into a single Kingdom. Hammurabi gave his people a code of laws. His code covered every aspect of life. His code was based on the law of 'eye for eye' and 'tooth for tooth' i.e., the law of 'tit for tat'.
- Hittites, who came from Asia Minor (now Turkey) and destroyed the Babylonian kingdom, were the first to make regular use of horses for war chariots and to make iron implements.
- The potter's wheel was perhaps first used in Mesopotamia.
- The Mesopotamians also seem to have been the first to make glass ware.
- The Sumerians were the first to evolve a proper system of writing. This system is called **cuneiform**. The cuneiform script was invented in C. 3400 BC. This script is found on clay tablets. The cuneiform script was deciphered by **Henry Rawlinson**.
- The Mesopotamian system of counting is known as **sexagesimal** because the Mesopotamian people counted by sixties as we count by tens (decimal system). Their sexagesimal system is no longer in use but we still use it as the basis of division of time into minutes and seconds and of a circle into 360 degrees.
- In geometry, the Mesopotamians had discovered what was later called the Pythagoras' theorem.
- In astronomy, the Mesopotamians made astonishing progress. They could calculate the length of the day and the night. They divided the whole day into 24 hours. They divided the sky into 12 parts, each assigned a name. This has come down to us as the 12 signs of **zodiac** or **rashis** as we call them in India. Another remarkable achievement of the Mesopotamians was the invention of a lunar calendar, based on the moon.

Egyptian civilization

- Egypt is called the 'Gift of the Nile'.

- Historians divide the history of Egypt into three periods : the *Old Kingdom*, the *Middle Kingdom* and the *New Kingdom*.
- The Old Kingdom is also called the 'Age of the Pyramids'.
- The Egyptian king was called the *pharaoh*.
- The Egyptians were the worshipper of the nature and the sun was their most important god.
- The Egyptians believed that after death both the body and the soul live while other people believed that only the soul lives and body perishes. So Egyptians took great care in preserving the body of the dead. The body was embalmed in spices and then wrapped in strips of fine linen. Such a preserved body is called a *mummy*. The mummy was put in a wooden box and buried.
- The *Pyramids* and the *Sphinx* are the two specimens of Egyptian architecture excellence.
- The *Pyramids* were the tombs of kings and they contained the mummies of these monarchs. The most imposing of all is the *Great Pyramid* at Gizeh in *Cairo*, built by the king *Cheops (Khufu)* of the old kingdom. The Great Pyramid is one of seven wonders of the ancient world.
- The *Sphinx* is a mythological animal with the body of a lion and the head of a man. Each Sphinx was carved out of a single solid stone.
- The Egyptian script, known as hieroglyphic, was invented in C. 3100 BC. The script is found on papyrus sheets made of reeds. The Egyptian script - hieroglyphic script - was deciphered by *Champollion*.
- The Egyptians developed a decimal system of numeration.
- The crowning achievement of the Egyptians was the solar calendar.

Harappan civilization

The Harappan Civilization extended over a bigger area than any of the contemporary civilizations.

Note : For Details, See 'Indus Civilization'.

Chinese civilization

- The earliest Chinese civilization is the *Shang* civilization.
- The Shang dynasty was overthrown by the *Chou* dynasty.
- The Chinese script is a pictographic script. It is remarkable that the Chinese script has changed very little since the earliest times.
- The Chinese calendar — Solar-lunar calendar, was a combination of solar and lunar calendar. The Chinese were the first to calculate the length of the year as 365 1/4 days.
- In 3rd century BC, the *Chin* dynasty became important. To keep out invaders from the north, he began construction of a wall known as the *Great Wall*.
- The *Han* dynasty followed the Chin dynasty in 202 BC and the Han emperors ruled China for almost 400 years.
- The political practices of the Han rulers were greatly influenced by the teachings of *Confucius*. During Han rule, to qualify for appointment, the youngmen had to pass through an elaborate system of examination before they were chosen. Such 'scholar-officials' came to be known as *mandarins*. The Chinese was the

- first civilization in history to have a system of selecting public officials on the basis of education and competitive examination.
- Under the Hans, silk was a principal item of export.
- Two main roads were built across the Great Wall to carry on trade with the West.
- The two major religions of ancient China are Taoism (based on the teachings of *Lao-tse*: b. 604 BC) and Confucianism (based on the teachings of *Confucius*: 551 BC—479 BC). Confucius was a contemporary of Mahavira and Buddha. Buddhism was brought into China by Indian during the Han rule.
- The Great Wall is a mighty monument to the building skill of ancient China.
- This wall, built of stone and earth to a height of 6 metres and extending over 2400 km.
- The Chinese script was standardized by the Chin ruler. The Chinese script spread to other countries also. It influenced the Japanese, Korean and Vietnamese scripts.
- In the 1st century AD, paper was invented in China. The invention of paper and its importance in spreading knowledge within the outside China makes it one of the great contribution of China to the world.
- Some of the first historical works in the world were written in China. Each dynasty compiled its own history. The pattern of these histories was set by *Ssuma Chien* (1st or 2nd cent. BC), and is commonly remembered as the 'Herodotus of China'.
- The water clock, abacus, umbrella were invented by Chinese.
- In the 2nd cent. AD, Chinese invented a seismograph.

Iranian civilization

- In the middle of the 6th century BC, a powerful empire — *Achaemenid empire* — arose in Iran (Persia). The founder of this empire was *Cyrus* with his capital at Pasaragadae.
- He was succeeded by *Darius I* (522 BC — 486 BC). The empire reached its greatest extent under him and covered entire Iran, Mesopotamia, Syria, Egypt, Asia minor and north-western India. He built a new capital at Persepolis.
- Darius I and his successors were involved in wars with the Greek states. They were defeated by Greeks. *Alexander* dealt the empire a final blow during the reign of *Darius III*.
- In the 3rd century AD, a new and powerful empire — *Sassanid empire* — arose in Iran. This empire which was founded by *Ardashir* in 226 AD held sway in Iran up to the middle of the 7th century AD.
- The Arabs, who emerged as a strong power after the rise of Islam, conquered Iran in 651 AD.
- The Achaemenids had introduced the use of money — coins of gold and silver — on a large scale throughout the empire.
- Iran in ancient times produced a number of famous sailors and explorers. One of them, *Scylax* undertook a voyage from the mouth of Indus to Egypt on orders of Darius.

> The main religion of the ancient Iranians was Zoroastrianism. This religion was founded by **Zarathustra** or **Zoroaster** (628 BC — 551 BC) as the Greeks called him in 7th century BC. The teachings of Zarathustra are recorded in the **Zenda Avesta**, the holy book of Parsis. Zarathustra said that the world consists of two forces, good and evil. The god, **Ahura Mazda** represents the forces of good and **Ahriman**, the forces of evil. The sun and the fire came to be worshipped as visible symbols of Ahura Mazda, who represents light. Both Judaism and Christianity are indebted to Zoroastrianism.

> During the Achaemenid empire the official language was **Aramaic**. The Sasanids revived old **Persian** and made it the official language of their empire. But then a new script called **Pahlavi** had also developed. The best known ancient literature of Iran is the Zend Avesta, which contains the work of Zarathustra.

Greek civilization

- > The early Greeks (or Hellens), like the Aryans in India, lived in tribes, each composed of a number of families under a leader. A group of tribes had a king.
- > The main occupations are agriculture and herding.
- > The early Greeks had many gods whom they imagined to be like human beings though more powerful and immortal. **Zeus** was the god of the sky and hence caused thunder. **Poseidon**, god of the sea, raised storms that sank ships.
- > **Apollo**, the sun god, could reveal the future. **Athena**, was the goddess of victory and patroness of the arts. **Dionysus** was the god of wine and there were many others. The Greeks thought their gods lived on **Mount Olympus**.
- > Around 800 BC, groups of Greek villages began joining into larger units to form city-states. At the highest point in a city-state, an **acropolis** or citadel was built for defence and city spread out around the acropolis. Such cities were Sparta, Athens, Macedonia, Corinth, Thebes and others. Sparta and Athens were two most important city-states.
- > The Spartans' main concern was with militarism and war so much so that the word 'spartan' is often used to mean militaristic.
- > Spartans were fine soldiers, but they contributed little else to Greek culture.
- > The city-state of Athens developed along lines quite different from Sparta. The territories it ruled had been occupied gradually and peacefully and militarism had not developed. Athens had excellent harbours and mineral deposits. Athenians built a prosperous trade and culture. **Pericles** (469 BC — 429 BC) was the most important ruler of Athens.
- > **The Battle of Marathon (490 BC)**: The Greeks defeated the Iranian (Persian) king Darius I at Marathon near Athens.
- > **The Peloponnesian war**, between Sparta and Athens from 431 BC to 404 BC, ended in tragedy for Athens.
- > **Philip** of Macedonia conquered most of states in the years following Athens' defeat.
- > Then his son, **Alexander**, set out at the age of 20 — to conquer the world.
- > During the 13 years (336 BC — 323 BC), he compelled all Greece to accept his leadership and conquered the Achaemenid empire. This brought him to borders of India where he defeated king **Porus** on the Jhelum in 326 BC. He

- > sailed down the Indus and then returned to Mesopotamia where he died of fever in 323 BC at the age of 32.
- > Alexander's conquests brought many important changes to the world. Trade between Europe and Asia was developed. Many new cities were founded.
- > In the 2nd century BC, the Roman empire started expanding eastward. As a result of Roman attacks, almost the entire territory of the Greeks and their empire became a part of the Roman empire.

Contributions of Greek Civilization

- > The glory of Greece that the world has never forgotten was largely the glory of Athens at the time of Pericles.
- > The **Olympic games** were first held in 776 BC by the Greeks in honour of God Zeus at Mount Olympus (Olympia) in Greece, hence the name, and they continued till 394 AD. From 394 AD these games started degenerating and by 580 AD they altogether vanished. They were banned by the Roman Emperor **Theodosius** as Pagan manifestations.
- > It was the French Baron, **Pierre de Coubertin**, who (nearly over 1500 years after the last ancient Olympics) revived these games in 1894 and the modern series of the Olympic games started in 1896 at Athens and since then they are being held every fourth year.
- > **Homer's 'Iliad'** and '**Odyssey**' are among the best epics of the world. The **Iliad** is the story of seize and destruction of the city of Troy, as the western coast of Asia Minor. The **Odyssey** describes the adventures and home coming, from Troy, of a Greek hero, Odysseus.
- > The founder of Greek tragedy was **Aeschylus**, author of 'Prometheus Bound'. **Sophocles** is considered the greatest of Greek tragedians. His famous plays are 'Oedipus Rex', 'Antigone' and 'Electra'. **Aristophanes**, is considered the master of Greek comedy.
- > Greece produced some of the world's earliest great historians e.g. **Herodotus** (known as 'the father of History'), **Thucydides**, **Plutarch** etc.
- > The most famous philosophers of Greece were **Socrates**, **Plato** (disciple of Socrates and author of 'Republic'), and **Aristotle** (disciple of Plato). Aristotle was both philosopher and scientist. He made important contribution to philosophy, medicine, biology and astronomy. He believed in the principle of the Golden Mean, that is, neither extreme luxury nor self-denial.
- > The Greeks made many contributions to mathematics, especially to geometry as is seen in the work of **Euclid** and **Pythagoras**.
- > In medicine, **Hippocrates** laid the foundation of modern medicine. He is known as the 'father of medicine'.
- > The most important astronomers were : **Aristarchus**, **Ptolemy**, **Hipparchus**, **Eratosthenes** etc. Ptolemy's belief that the earth was the centre of the universe was accepted as truth until the 16th century. Eratosthenes prepared a fairly accurate map of the globe and was the first to suggest that one could reach India from Europe by sailing west.
- > The temple of Athena, the Parthenon, is the best example of Greek architecture. Myron and Phidias are two best-known sculptors of ancient Greece. It was Phidias whom Pericles appointed to supervise the construction of the Acropolis in Athens.

Roman civilization

- The centre of the Roman civilization was Italy, the peninsula that projects into the Mediterranean sea in the west of Greece. The river Tiber on which the city of Rome is located runs through the central part of the peninsula.
- The city of Rome was founded about 1000 BC by *Romulus*, in the district of Latium. The language of the ancient Romans, *Latin*, gets its name from Latium.
- The early Romans had a king, an assembly and a senate.
- Towards the end of the 6th century BC the king was overthrown and a republic was established. Under the Republic the Romans conquered other parts of the peninsula, and by 265 BC controlled all of Italy. The political system of the Roman republic consisted of two consuls, the senate & the assembly.
- The Romans were involved in a series of wars with Carthage, a city on the north coast of Africa. The danger of Carthaginian occupation of Sicily led the Romans to attack Carthage. The wars that followed, known as the *Punic Wars*, lasted from 264 BC to 146 BC. The Carthaginians were defeated in this war.
- By the beginning of the 1st century BC the Roman had conquered Greece and Asia Minor and established a protectorate over Egypt.
- Rivalry for power grew between two generals, *Pompey* & *Julius Caesar*. War between them followed and Pompey was murdered by his enemies in Egypt. Caesar remained in Egypt for some time, attracted by the captivating beauty of the Egyptian queen *Cleopatra*. On his return to Rome, in 46 BC, he made himself dictator. However, on the charge that Caesar intended to become king, he was assassinated in 44 BC, in a senate meeting.
- After the assassination of Caesar, power passed into the hands of *Mark Antony* and *Lapidus*, Caesar's friends and *Octavian*. Caesar's grand-nephew. The leaders of the conspiracy, *Brutus* and *Cassius*, fled and organised a large army, but they were captured and slain.
- In 37 BC, *Octavian* became the most powerful man in the Roman empire. He ruled for 44 years under the titles of *Augustus Imperator*, meaning 'holy victorious-general'. He also called himself *Principes*, 'first citizen of the state'. The period of Roman history beginning with his rule up to 284 AD is called 'the Principate'. His rule and the period following it were peaceful and are known in history as *Pax Romana*, which means 'Roman Peace'.
- In 284 AD, *Diocletian* became ruler. From this time on, Roman civilization declined more rapidly. One of Diocletian's successors, *Constantine*, built a new capital called Constantinople, on the site of ancient Byzantium, in 330 AD. Not long after, the Roman empire was divided into two empires — Western & Eastern. The Western part soon broke into many pieces. But Eastern part, called as Byzantine empire, continued for a thousand years more.
- The final blow to the Roman empire at the hands of northern invaders they were German tribes. By 476 AD, the once powerful Roman empire was no more.
- The Roman worshipped as many gods & goddesses as the Greeks. *Jupiter* sent rain for the corps; *Mars* helped them in war; *Mercury* carried their messages; *Neptune*, the god of sea; *Vesta* guarded the home; *Juno* protected their women.

Contributions of Roman Civilization

- Roman law and principles of governance are Rome's greatest contribution to the world.
- So complete was Rome's system of road linking all parts of empire that people could say 'All roads lead to Rome'.
- The Romans developed their own alphabet and the *Latin* language became the language of all educated people in western Europe. Latin words are still widely used in science, and Latin is the basis of several European languages — esp. French, Spanish & Italian.
- *Lucretius*, *Cicero*, *Marcus Aurelius* & *Seneca* were the famous Roman philosophers.
- *Horace* ('Odes') & *Virgil* ('Aeneid') were the famous Roman poets.
- *Tacitus* ('Annals' & 'Histories') was the most famous Roman historian and *Pliny*, the elder, was the another famous Roman historian.
- The Romans were the inventors of concrete and could firmly cement bricks and stones together. They also introduced two architectural improvements — the arch and cupolas or domes.
- Fights between gladiators or between a gladiator and a wild animal, was a popular Roman amusement. Special arenas or amphitheatres were built for these contests. The ruins of the Colosseum, one of the greatest of arenas, can be seen in Rome.

Seven Wonders of Ancient World

1. Hanging garden of Babylon
2. Pyramids of Egypt
3. The Pharaoh at Alexandria
4. Statue of Zeus at Olympia
5. Colossus at Rhodes - 912 ft. statue of Helios, the sun god, stands at one side of the harbour
6. Temple of Diana at Ephesus (Rome)
7. Mausoleum of Mausolus (Ruler of Halicarnassus)

Medieval World : (500 AD–1500 AD)**Medieval Europe**

- The Eastern Roman empire or Byzantine empire was a vast empire and its capital *Constantinople* was the largest city of that time.
- The Byzantines built beautiful churches. The most famous of these is the *church of St. Sophia* in Constantinople. This church was built during the reign of Byzantine emperor *Justinian* in the 6th century AD.
- The Ottoman Turks conquered the Byzantine territories in 1453.

Feudalism

- The word 'feudal' comes from *feud* which originally meant a fief or land held on condition or service. In a feudal society, land was the source of power.
- Feudalism originated in the 8th & 9th centuries.
- First of all in western Europe the feudal system developed.
- The main division in feudal society was between '*feudal lords*', who either got a share of the peasants' produce or had peasants to work on their lands without any payment, and '*Peasants*', who worked on the land.

Feudal Hierarchy :

1. **Feudal Lords :** a. Kings b. Dukes & Earls c. Barons d. Knights.

2. **Peasants**: three categories of peasants — freeholders, villeins & serfs. In feudal hierarchy, the king stood at the top and peasant stood at the bottom. The economic life under the feudal system was predominantly rural. The unit of land, which was like a village-farm, was called '**manor**'.

Crusades : 1095 AD — 1291 AD

- Crusades means the military expeditions, under the banner of the cross, organised in western christendom primarily to recover the **Holy Places of Palestine** from Muslim occupation.
- Four Crusades were fought by the European Christian to liberate **Jerusalem** from Seljuq Turks (Muslims) who did not permit Christian pilgrims to enter the holy land.
- The **Ist Crusade (1095-99)** was launched after the provoking preachings of Pope Urban II. Jerusalem was captured and the Crusader states of the Kingdom of Jerusalem, the country of Edessa, Antioch and Tripoli were created.
- The fall of Edessa (1144) inspired the unsuccessful **IIInd Crusade (1147-48)**.
- The capture of Jerusalem by Saladin in 1187 led the inconclusive **IIIrd Crusade (1189-92)**, led by Philip II Augustus of France, Frederick I Barbarossa of Germany, and Richard I (the 'Lion Heart') of England.
- The **IVth Crusade (1202-91)** was diverted from its original objective, Egypt and sacked Constantinople (1204). This Crusade failed to recover lost ground and Acre, the last foothold of West is Palestine, was lost in 1291.

Arab civilization

- In the 7th century, a new religion, Islam, arose in Arabia, which led to the establishment of a big empire.
- **Muhammad**, the Prophet of Islam, was born in Mecca in 571 AD.
- When he was 40, he had 'visions of truth' and became a prophet.
- Muhammad's visions completely convinced him that **Allah** was the only god. He forbade the worship of idols and made many enemies. Ultimately, he had to leave Mecca and take refuge in Medina. This event took place in 622 AD and is known as the year of **Hijira**, or migration, and from it Muslims date their era (**Hijra Samvat**).
- The **Quran**, the holy book of Islam, is divided into a number of suras, or chapters, and contains the teachings of Muhammad. Besides the Quran, the life of a Muslim is guided by the **Sunna**, the practices of Muhammad, and the **Hadees**, the sayings of the Muhammad.
- Muhammad was not only a religious leader but also a political leader.
- After his death (632 AD), his successors, were known as **Caliphs**, or **Khalifas** who held both religious and political authority.
- Nearly all Arabia had accepted the new religion and become a unified state before the death of Prophet Muhammad in 632 AD.
- From Arabia, Islam spread very fast to many other parts of the world. Within a hundred years, the Khalifas and their generals, had conquered Iran, Syria, Egypt, Central Asia, North Africa and Spain. The Arab empire was the largest that world had so far seen.

- The first three Khalifas ruled from the city of **Medina**. Then the capital was shifted **Kufah**.
- By 660 AD, when the **Omayyad** dynasty took over the reins of government, the principal city was **Damascus**.
- About 750, the Omayyad were overthrown by **Abbasids**, who made **Baghdad** their capital. **Harun Rashid**, famous in many legends, was an Abbasid ruler.
- The Abbasids ruled for about 300 years, till the **Seljuq Turks** took Baghdad and ended the Arab rule. During the next four centuries, the Turks dominated the Islamic world.
- In the 15th century, most of these territories came under the domination of the **Ottoman Turks**. It was the Ottoman Turks who took **Constantinople** and ended the Eastern Roman empire in 1453.

Contributions of Arab Civilization

- The establishment of a vast empire facilitated the coming together of intellectual and scientific traditions of various civilizations, particularly Greek, Iranian & Indian. The Arabs made all knowledge their own and developed it further.
- **Al Razi (Rhazes)**, an Arab scientist discovered the true nature of small pox, and **Ibn Sina (Avicenna)** discovered that tuberculosis is infectious.
- In Mathematics, the Arab learned the Indian numerals (**Hindsa**) and spread their use far and wide, so that in the West they are to this day called Arabic numerals.
- Some of the famous literary work of the Arab civilization are the 'Rubaiyat' by **Omar Khayyam**, 'Shahname' by **Firdausi** and the 'Arabian Nights', a collection of 1001 stories.
- The Arabs developed their own decorative designs. Their buildings had bulblike domes, small minarets, horse-shoe arches and twisted columns.
- The Arabs also developed a decorative style of writing called **Calligraphy** and made book-illumination an art.
- Arab carpets, leather work, beautiful swords, silks, inlays, metal-work, and enamelled glassware were prized everywhere.

Medieval China

- From the early 7th century, China was ruled by the **Tang** dynasty.
- The rule of Tang dynasty (618 AD — 906 AD) was followed by the **Sung** dynasty for about 300 years.
- After this, for about 100 years China was ruled by the **Mongols**.
- The rule of the Mongols in China was followed by that of **Ming** dynasty which continued for about 300 years.
- In 1644, China was conquered by the **Manchus** who continued to rule until 1911 AD.

Contributions of Medieval China

- To prevent drain on the country's wealth the Sung rulers started the use of paper-money.
- The invention of gun-powder was made in China in the 10th century about 400 years before the knowledge reached the Western World.
- The Chinese made iron-chain suspension bridges as early as the 10th century.

136

- > The Chinese devised the first method of printing in 10th century. The importance of this invention for the spread of knowledge was as great as the invention of paper.

Medieval Japan

- > Japan consists of hundreds of small islands of which four are major islands - Hokkaido, Honshu, Kyushu & Shikoku.
- > Almost the entire country was unified into a single state by around the 7th century AD.
- > In the 8th century *Edo* (modern *Kyoto*) became the capital and continued to be the seat of the emperors of Japan for over 1000 years. The real power, however, was in the hands of an aristocratic family.
- > Towards the end of the 12th century, a new political institution *Shogun* came into being. The *Shogun* or the 'General' became the commander of Japan's army and ruled Japan, while the emperor remained at his capital at Edo (*Kyoto*).
- > Until 1867, the *Shoguns* were the real rulers of Japan. *Tokugawa Leyasu* was the founder of last *Shogun* dynasty.
- > In 1867, the last *Shogun* of Tokugawa dynasty was overthrown and the power was restored to the emperor. Now Japan launched herself on the road of industrial development, modernization and expansion.
- > *Samurai* or the warriors were similar to the Knights of Western Europe.
- > The most unique contribution of medieval Japan to literature was a form of poetry called *Haiku*. Haiku poems are short poems of only 17 syllables.

Seven Wonders of Medieval World

1. Collosseum of Rome
2. Great Wall of China
3. Porcelain Tower of Nanking
4. Stonehenge of England
5. Mosque at St. Sophia (Constantinople)
6. Catacombs of Alexandria
7. Leaning Tower of Pisa.

- > The important contribution of medieval Japan to art was *Ikebana* or the art of flower arrangement, which is being imitated throughout the world.
- > *Buddhism* reached Japan early in the 6th century from China through Korea and during the course of centuries it became widespread. In certain periods it even eclipsed *Shintoism*, the old religion of Japan.
- > Gradually, the Japanese developed their own distinct schools of Buddhism, the most famous of which is *Zen Buddhism*. The word *Zen* is derived from *Dhyana*.

Modern World : (1500 AD Onwards)**Renaissance**

- > The 16th century is commonly designated as the 'Age of Renaissance', also called the 'Revival of learning'.
- > It is said to have started from the capture of Constantinople (now Istanbul) by the Turks in 1453 and the dispersal of the scholars throughout Europe, who sought asylum in Italy.
- > Italy practically became the home of the Renaissance-and fundamental to the Renaissance was the revival of classical learning, art and architecture and the

concept of the dignity of the man, which characterized *Humanism*. It resulted in the emancipation of the mind of man from the shackles of effete dogmatism, and in the creation of fresh intellectual atmosphere and ideals of life.

> Great writers of the Italian Renaissance included *Dante*, *Petrarch*, *Boccaccio* & *Machiavelli*. Great painters of Italian Renaissance included *Leonardo da Vinci* ('Famous Paintings' - 'The Last Supper' & 'Monalisa'), *Michelangelo* ('The Last Judgement' & 'The Fall of Man') & *Raphael* ('Madona'). Great astronomers of Italian Renaissance included *Bruno* & *Galileo*.

> The movement spread to other countries of Europe also, especially to France & Germany; and at last it reached the shores of England, where it manifested itself in the poems of *Chaucer* & *Spenser*, the plays of *Shakespeare*, the essays of *Francis Bacon* & utopianism of *Thomas More*, and particularly in the courts of such rulers as Elizabeth I of England.

> The Renaissance movement was enormously, helped by the invention of the printing press (in 1454 by *Gutenberg* of Germany; 'Gutenberg Bible' 1456 - the first printed book); with the help of which old and classical books were multiplied leading to a great increase in knowledge and in the spirit of enquiry and experiment.

Great Litterateurs of Renaissance

Italian	<i>Dante</i> ('Divine Comedy'), <i>Petrarch</i> (founder of Humanism & known as the 'father of Humanism'), <i>Boccaccio</i> ('Decameron'), <i>Machiavelli</i> ('The prince').
English	<i>Chaucer</i> ('Canterbury Tales'), <i>Spenser</i> ('The Faerie Queen'), <i>Bacon</i> ('The Advancement of Learning'), <i>Shakespeare</i> ('Romeo & Juliet', 'The Merchant of Venice', 'As You Like It', 'Julius Caesar', 'Hamlet', 'Macbeth'), <i>Thomas More</i> ('Utopia').
French	<i>Rebelais</i> ('Pantagruel' & 'Gargantua'), <i>Montaigne</i> ('Essais').
Spanish	<i>Cervantes</i> ('Don Quixote').
Portuguese	<i>Camoes</i> ('The Lusiad').
Dutch	<i>Erasmus</i> ('In the praise of Folly').
German	<i>Thomas Kempis</i> ('The Imitation of Christ').

Reformation

- > The Reformation was another movement that the 16th century witnessed.
- > It was started by *Martin Luther* in *Wittenburg*, Germany in 1517 by publicly protesting against the sale of letters of *Indulgence*.
(*Indulgence* : the letters which remitted punishments of the sinners who bought them and which began to be considered as passports to heaven.)
- > It was a revolt against the control of conscience by the priests.
- > Thanks to the inborn spirit of revolt against the Catholic Church, Henry VIII of England could take the bold step of breaking away from the papacy i.e., authority of the Pope on the issue of his first divorce in 1534. Henry VIII declared himself the head of the church when the Pope would not give him permission to divorce his wife, Catherine.
- > With the breaking away from the Roman Catholic Church by such leaders as *Luther* of Germany and *Calvin* of Switzerland, Western Europe was split between Catholic & Protestant countries, a situation which developed enmities of the fiercest nature.

- > The movement, which began within the Catholic Church to combat the effects of the Protestant Reformation, was known as *Counter-Reformation Movement*.

Geographical Discoveries

Discovery	year	Discoverer (Nationality)	Sponsored by
Cape of Good Hope	1487	Bartholomew Diaz (Portuguese)	Portugal
America	1492	Christopher Columbus (Geno, Italian)	Spain
Newfoundland	1497	John Cabot (Italian)	England
Sea-route of India via Cape of Good Hope	1498	Vasco da Gama (Portuguese)	Portugal
Brazil	1500	Pedro Alvarez Cabral (Portuguese)	Portugal
Strait of Magellan	1520	Magellan (Portuguese)	Spain
Island of Tasmania & New Zealand	1642	Tasman (Dutch)	Holland
Sandwich Island/Hawaiian Island	1770	Captain James Cook (British)	England
North pole	1909	Robert Peary (American)	USA
South Pole	1911	Amundsen (Norwegian)	Norway

- > A great development which marked the beginning of the modern age in Europe was a series of geographical discoveries.

- > Helped by some remarkable inventions viz. the Compass and Astrolabe, daring sailors sailed from distant lands.

- > They were financed by rulers and merchants.
- > The main motivation behind these adventures was the lure of profits that trade with the East would bring.

- > During 1288-93, *Marco Polo* (1256-1326), Venetian traveller, travelled from Venice to China and Japan. He was the 'first European to visit China'. From his travelogue the Europeans learned about the all round prosperity of the East.

- > The first great steps in the exploration of the earth were taken by the sailors under the patronage of Portuguese and Spanish rulers.

- > *Prince Henry* (1394-1460), the Navigator of Portugal, encouraged sailors by making maps based on trips to the African coast.

- > In 1487, *Bartholomew Diaz*, reached the point which the Portuguese named *Cape of Good Hope* (the southern-most point of Africa).

- > *Vasco da Gama* followed this route and sailed on round the cape and reached Calicut in India in 1498.

- > Italian sailor *Columbus*' trip was financed by Spain from where he sailed in 1492. When he had reached land, he thought he had reached India; so he called the islands, the 'Indies'; but it was America.

- > The land discovered by Columbus was soon to be called the 'Americas' after the name of a later Italian explorer, *Amerigo Vespucci*.

- > *Magellan*, a Portuguese sailor, went beyond the lands that had stopped

Colonialism : *Colony* means the country or territory settled by migrants from another country. Thus, the policy of having colonies and keeping them dependent is called Colonialism.

Imperialism : The policy of extending a state's rule over other territories, and of incorporating such colonized into an empire is called Imperialism.

Columbus. He sailed west around the tip of South America, which is named after him—the straits of Magellan. He called the new ocean that he entered, 'The Pacific' because it seemed more quiet than the Atlantic. Magellan reached what is now called the Philippine Island where he died. Magellan was the first to sail round the world.

- > Other countries—England, France & Holland—also sent out their ships to join the race for explorations. *Francis Drake* of England sailed round the world in 1577.
- > These voyages laid the foundations for the almost complete geographical knowledge of the world.

Glorious Revolution : 1688, England

James II was a Roman Catholic. His tactless attempt to secure freedom of worship for Catholics united the Whigs and Tories of the Anglican Church against him.

- > People tolerated the rule of James II, because they thought that he would be succeeded by his daughter Mary who was a Protestant. But a son was born to James II. The knowledge that James' policies might be continued by a son to be brought up as a Catholic turned against him many Tories, hitherto loyal to him.

- > So a few leading men—Whigs as well as Tories—dispatched an invitation to *William* of Orange, ruler of Holland, to succeed to the English throne and save England from Catholic tyranny.

- > William accepted the invitation and came to England for his purpose.

- > James II, throwing the great seal into the Thames, fled to France.

- > This event is known as *Glorious or Bloodless Revolution* in England.

- > **Effects :** (1) The despotic rule of the *Stuarts* ended; the supremacy of Parliament was established. (2) The system of requiring estimate and accounts for supplies and, of specific appropriations—which is nucleus of modern budgetary system—now became fixed. (3) *The Bill of Right (1689)* : It settled down the problem of succession; it also laid the provision that no Roman Catholic can wear the Crown. As *William III* and his wife *Mary II* (daughter of James II and a Protestant by faith), the joint monarchs accepted the Bill of Rights.

Magna Carta (or The Great Charter), 1215 : It was the Charter of liberties which king *John II* of England was forced to sign in 1215 at Runnymede. It meant to put a check upon the arbitrary powers of king. The most important principle that it laid down was that English man should be governed by definite laws and not by the whims or the will of a despotic ruler. Magna Carta was said to be the 'Foundation-stone of rights and liberties of the English people'.

Habeas Corpus Act, 1679 : This act during the reign of *Charles II* of England provided that no one was to be imprisoned without a writ or warrant stating the charge against him. It also gave facilities to a prisoner for obtaining either speedy trial or release on bail. The Act safeguarded the personal liberties of the people against arbitrary imprisonment by King's orders.

Industrial Revolution

- > The process of change that transformed Britain first and then other countries from agricultural to industrial economics.
- > The Industrial Revolution began about 1750 when the agricultural revolution was well under way. Inventions were made in the textile industry by such men

as **James Hargreaves** (Spinning Jenny, 1764), **Richard Arkwright** (Water Frame, 1769), **Samuel Crompton** (Mule, 1779) and **Edmund Cartwright** (Power Loom, 1785), which made the production of cloth much faster and the yarn produced of better quality.

- These new machines required factories to house them, at first near rivers for water power and then, when the steam engine was invented (by **James Watt** in 1769), near coalfields.
- England, an agricultural country was now turned into a manufacturing country. The production increased manifold. Things were available at cheaper rates. Improved methods of communication followed.
- The economic progress and industrialisation of England influenced the social and cultural life of the people. It had far-reaching affects on the political history of England.
- By 1850 the Industrial Revolution had penetrated into Belgium, France, Germany, Switzerland and USA. By 1900 it had extended to Sweden, Italy, Russia, Japan & Argentina. Presently it is penetrating into China, India and Africa.

Capitalism : Economic system in which a country's trade and industry are organised and controlled by the owners of capital, the chief elements being competition, profit, supply and demand.

American Revolution or American War of Independence : 1775-83

- The American Revolution is the name given to the struggle by which 13 colonies of England in North America declared their independence from England and fought a war to make it a reality.
- By the middle of the 18th century, differences in thought and interests had developed between the colonies one the one hand and the mother country (England) on the other.
- Attempts to collect new taxes such as the **Stamps Act (1765)** and **Tax on tea (1767)** angered the colonists who maintained that the British government was imposing '**taxation without representation**' and that only the colonial representative assemblies could rightfully tax the Americans.
- **Boston Tea Party (1773)**: The tax on tea led to trouble. In 1773, several colonies refused to unload the tea coming in English ships. In Boston, when the governor ordered a ship to be unloaded, a group of citizens dressed as American Indians, boarded the ship and dumped the crates of tea into the water. This incident is known as the 'Boston Tea Party'.
- The American Revolution started in 1775 and lasted until 1781.
- On July 4, 1776, the **Declaration of Independence** was issued. Its author was **Thomas Jefferson**. The Declaration stated that all men are created equal; that they have a natural and inalienable right to life, liberty and pursuit of happiness; and that they are justified in revolting when these rights are violated by any government.
- The colonies won the war against England. The American Revolution made possible the establishment of a new nation, the United States of America (U.S.A.).

In 1783 England acknowledged American independence in the **treaty of Paris** and **George Washington** was elected the first President of USA.

French Revolution : 1789-93

The French Revolution was a great event in the history not only of France & Europe but of mankind as a whole. It gave to humanity new ideas of '**Liberty, Equality & Fraternity**'.

The French Revolution is the name given to the struggle which swept away the Old Regime in France and brought about fundamental changes in the socio-political set-up.

This political upheaval began in 1789. King **Louis XIV** and his successors had brought divine-right absolutism to the peak. The French king, in the 18th century, had unlimited powers. Opponents were put in prison without trial.

French society consisted of **three estates** or classes. The first (clergy) and second (nobility) estates were privileged in many ways. Members of third estate—commoners (middle class, workers & peasants) were the 'under dogs'. They made 90% of the population. Almost the entire tax burden fell on third estate. But the privileged classes were exempted from these taxes.

These undemocratic features of French society were sharply criticised by able writers and thinkers like **Montesquieu (1689-1755)**, **Voltaire (1694-1778)** and **Rousseau (1712-1778)**.

The **immediate cause** of the French Revolution was the bankrupt condition of the French treasury brought about in part by the extravagant expenditure and inefficiency of **Louis XV & Louis XVI**.

The French Revolution started with the **fall of Bastille Fort**. The mobs in Paris attacked the Bastille on July 14, 1789, killed its governor and freed the prisoners. This ancient fortress, where political prisoners were kept, was the symbol of tyranny in France. Its capture aroused the whole nation. Peasants in the provinces plundered and burnt several castles.

'Liberty, Equality and Fraternity' became the watchword.

Government in France broke down, as royal officials fled and the people stopped paying taxes. The National Assembly governed France from 1789-1791. It drafted a constitution which created a limited monarchy. Its preamble was the famous Declaration of the Rights of Man. All feudal rights were abolished. Local government was reorganised. The old provinces were replaced by 83 departments. Church lands were confiscated and sold to peasants. Special Church privileges were abolished. The first Republic was proclaimed on sep. 21, 1792. King **Louis XVI** and his queen **Marie Antoinette** were beheaded on the guillotine on Jan. 21, 1793 and oct. 16, 1793 respectively on charges of treason. Napoleonic, after some time, emerged as the strong man of France.

The French Revolution was an event of fundamental importance not only for France but for whole of Europe and ultimately for the whole world. In France, the Revolution established the political supremacy of the middle class in the towns and transferred the bulk of landed property to the peasantry in the countryside. For Europe and the world, it represented an ideal of popular sovereignty and equality before the law.

Unification of Italy : 1848-70

- One of the major features of the history of Europe in 19th century was the struggle for the national unification and independence. Italy & Germany were the two important nations which emerged as united, independent states in the 19th century.
- In the early 19th century, Italy was divided into a number of states in which the Kingdom of **Sardinia** was the most powerful.
- The struggle for Italian independence and unification was organised by the two famous revolutionaries — **Mazzini & Garibaldi**. The movement led by them is known as the 'Young Italy' movement.
- After the revolution of 1848, **Count Cavour**, the Prime Minister of Sardinia, took the initiative of uniting Italy under the leadership of Sardinia.
- By the year of 1861, the entire states (except Rome) had been united and then **Victor Emmanuel II**, the king of Sardinia took the title of 'King of Italy'.
- Rome was still outside the kingdom of Italy. It was ruled by the Pope. Italian soldiers liberated the city of Rome in 1870, and in 1871, Rome became the capital of united Italy.

Unification of Germany : 1848-71

- Like Italy, Germany was also divided into a number of states. At the end of the Napoleonic wars (1792-1815) there were 38 independent states in Germany in which **Prussia** was the most powerful.
- In 1815, the German states along with Austria were organised into a Germanic confederation.
- In 1848 revolts occurred in every German state and the rulers were forced to grant democratic constitutions. To unite Germany and to frame a constitution for the united Germany, a constituent assembly met in Frankfurt.
- The **Frankfurt Assembly** proposed the unification of Germany as a constitutional monarchy under the king of Prussia who would become the emperor of Germany. However, the king of Prussia declined the offer. Repression soon followed.
- With the failure of the revolution of 1848 to unify Germany, one phase in the struggle for unification came to an end.
- Now Germany was to be unified not into a democratic country by the efforts of revolutionaries but by the rulers into militaristic empire. The leader of this policy was **Bismarck** who belonged to a Prussian aristocratic family. He wanted to achieve the unification of Germany under the leadership of the Prussian monarchy.
- Bismarck described his policy of unification as one of '**blood and iron**'. The policy of blood and iron meant a policy of war.
- He defeated Austria and dissolved the Germanic confederation. Thus Austria was separated from other German states. In place of old confederation, he united 22 states of Germany into **North German Confederation** in 1866.
- The unification of Germany was completed as a result of Prussia — France War (1870) in which the French emperor Louis Bonaparte was defeated and captured. This war enabled Bismarck to absorb the remaining German states into a united Germany.

- The formal ceremony at which William I, the king of Prussia, took the title of German Emperor was not held on the German soil. It took place at Versailles in France, in the palace of the French kings.
- After unification, Germany emerged as a very strong power in Europe.

First World War : July 28, 1914 — Nov. 11, 1918

Causes : The causes of First World War are as under—

1. **Militarism** : This means the dangerous and burdensome mechanism of great standing armies and large navies along with an espionage system.
2. **Narrow Nationalism or Competitive Patriotism** : The love of one's country demanded the hatred of the other. Love of Germany demanded the hatred of France and vice-versa.
3. **Economic Imperialism** : It led to international rivalries. Every country tried to capture markets in every nook and corner of the world. This led to bitterness and heart-burning.

4. **Anglo-German Rivalry & The charter of William II** : Anglo-German rivalry proved to be the main cause of World War I. Germany had become a great industrial country and wanted to have more markets for trade. Germany was jealous of the colonial and naval greatness of England. William II, emperor of Germany was very ambitious and wanted to gain influence in Turkey by linking Berlin with Baghdad by a railway line. This gave rise to a great rivalry between England and Germany.

William II was arrogant, haughty and ambitious. He wanted Germany to be the strongest power in the world. He believed in the policy of 'world power or downfall'.

5. **Lack of International Organisation** : There was lack of International Organisation to control international relations.

Immediate Cause : The immediate cause of the war was the murder of Archduke **Ferdinand** who was the heir to the Austrian throne. He and his wife **Sophie** were killed at Serajevo, the capital of Bosnia, an annexed territory of Austria, by a Serbian. The Austrians held Government of Serbia responsible for the murder and ultimately attacked Serbia. There was strong rivalry already between Austria-Hungary and Serbia in the Balkans.

Course of War : To begin with, Austria was in favour of local war but as time passed, the situation became more grave. Other countries jumped into the fray. Germany, Austria-Hungary Turkey & Bulgaria were on one side; they were called **Central Powers**. On the other side were England, France, Serbia, Belgium, Japan, Russia/USSR (left Dec. 1917), Italy (entered in April 26, 1915), Romania (entered Aug. 1916), USA (entered April 6, 1917) etc.

WWI : Central Powers Vs Allied Powers**Central Powers :**

Germany, Austria-Hungary, Turkey (entered Nov. 1914), Bulgaria (entered Oct. 1915) etc.

The Allies or Entente Powers :

Great Britain/England/United Kingdom (UK), France, Serbia, Belgium, Japan, Russia/USSR (left Dec. 1917), Italy (entered in April 26, 1915), Romania (entered Aug. 1916), USA (entered April 6, 1917) etc.

Peace Settlement (1919-20) : The Central Powers were completely defeated by the Allied Powers and an Armistice was signed on Nov. 11, 1918, followed by a Peace

Conference at Paris. The defeated countries were not represented at the Peace Conference. Though the number of countries represented at the Peace Conference was 27, the terms of the peace treaties were really decided by three countries — USA, Britain and France. The three persons who played the determining role in framing the terms of the treaties were Woodrow Wilson (President of USA), Lloyd George (Prime Minister of Britain) and George Clemenceau (Prime Minister of France). After prolonged discussion, the *Treaty of Versailles* (Versailles — a city of France) was signed between the Allies and Germany on June 28, 1919.

This Treaty rearranged the boundaries of Europe, and many new states — Poland, Czechoslovakia, Yugoslavia, Estonia, Lithuania, etc. were formed. William II, the German Emperor, abdicated and took asylum in the Netherlands (Holland). The treaty also contained provisions for disarming Germany, the strength of her army was to be limited to 1,00,000 troops. Germany was to pay £ 6,50,00,000 as war reparations for damage done to the Allies during the war. The Treaty of Versailles was followed by the *Treaty of St. Germaine* (1919), the *Treaty of Neuilly* (1919), the *Treaty of Trianon* (1920) and the *Treaty of Sevres* (1920).

The peace settlement of 1919-20 has been severely criticised. The terms of the Treaty of Versailles were harsh and humiliating for Germany. The peace settlement was based on the principle : 'To the victors belong the spoils and Allies are the victors'. Meanwhile the many suggestions were made from time to time for the creation of an international organisation which could check wars in the future. At the instance of *Woodrow Wilson*, the President of America, the *League of Nations* officially came into existence of Jan. 10, 1920. Its headquarter was fixed at Geneva in Switzerland.

Russian Revolution : 1917

- The Russian Revolution of 1917 was one of the most significant events of 20th century. It established the ideology of Marxism. It was a great revolution after French revolution which was not limited to Russia but affected several countries of the world.
- The great revolution in Russia took place in two stages. The first stage of Russian Revolution began in March 1917 with the overthrow of the *Czar Nicholas II*. The second stage in Nov. of the same year led to the establishment of the world's first communist state by Bolsheviks under Lenin.
- The basic causes of the revolution were deep-seated. The government was autocratic. The Czar was the source of all authority and his powers were vigorously exercised by corrupt and inefficient bureaucracy. The general standard of living of the people was tragically low. There was little social freedom. All Russians were forced to support the orthodox church.

Woodrow Wilson's 14 Points

In an address to the Congress in Jan., 1918, American President Woodrow Wilson outlined the basis of a peace settlement. His famous Fourteen Points for lasting peace in the world are : 1. There was to be no more secret diplomacy; 2. freedom of the seas; 3. removal of economic barriers of international trade; 4. reduction of armaments; 5. impartial adjustment of all colonial claims on the basis of the interests of the subject population; 6. national self-determination; 7. establishment of a league of Nations for the purpose of affording mutual guarantees of political independence and territorial integrity of great and small states alike. The remaining points dealt with the formation of new boundaries and new states on the basis of nationality and demanded that Germany must evacuate all lands she had forcibly occupied.

The immediate cause of the event was however the suffering and confusion caused by Russian disastrous defeats during World War I. Her armies lacked arms and ammunition. Prices soared high and the economy was in shambles.

Russian Revolution began with *March Revolution* (*February Revolution*, according to old Russian Calendar). Disorders broke out in Petrograd (now Leningrad), the Russian capital, in March 1917. *Czar Nicholas II* was forced to abdicate. (He and his family were later killed by the revolutionaries).

A provisional government composed of liberal and democratic elements (Mensheviks group) under the successive premiership of *Prince Lvov* and then *Aleksandr Kerensky* lost ground to the radical wing (Bolsheviks group) of the Social Democratic Labour Party.

➤ The Bolsheviks, led by *Lenin*, seized Power in Petrograd on Nov. 7, 1917—*November Revolution* (*October Revolution*, according to the old Russian calendar). The Kerensky Government was overthrown and authority was vested in a council of Commissars (Ministers) with Lenin as Premier.

➤ The new Government immediately decreed the abolition of private land ownership and set up a dictatorship of the Proletariat—actually of the communist Party, as the Bolsheviks came to call.

➤ The Bolsheviks extended their authority over a large part of European Russia, but elsewhere they faced the resistance of the anti-Bolshevik Parties. The resulting civil war lasted till 1920 and was complicated by foreign intervention. The communists were ultimately in undisputed control of the country.

➤ In the period between 1917 and 1920, the Communists took drastic action against internal enemies, or counter-revolutionaries, as they were called. Former landlords, capitalists, Czarist officers, etc. were arrested, exiled or executed, the Czar and his family were killed.

➤ In 1923, the *Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (U.S.S.R.)* came into being. Its constitution declared the establishment of a 'republic of workers and peasants'. Ownership of the means of production, including land, factories, mines, banks and railroads, was vested in the state. The state which is known officially as the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (U. S. S. R.), also commonly referred to as the Soviet Russia, or just Russia.

➤ Lenin died in 1924 and was succeeded by *Stalin* (1924-53).

Note : In 1991, Communist Party rule in Soviet Union collapsed following the failure of an anti-Gorbachov coup by Communist hardliners. The constituent republics asserted their independence and the Soviet Union was officially dissolved on Dec. 25, 1991. In the same month the *Commonwealth of Independent States (C. I. S.)*, a looser organisation with responsibility for economic & military co-operation, was formed by Russia, Ukraine & Belarus.

Socialism

Political and Economic Theory that land, transport, the chief industries, natural resources e.g. coal, water, power etc., should be owned and managed by the state, and wealth equally distributed.

In 1848, *Karl Marx* and *Engels* laid down the principles of scientific socialism in *'Communist Manifesto'*, and Marxism became the theoretical basis for most socialist thought.

Socialism was split in Russia between the reformist *Mensheviks* and revolutionary *Bolsheviks* that led to the term *Socialism* and *Communism* as they are now generally understood.

146 Nine other former Soviet republics joined later. Now CIS is a community of 12 independent states. Three former Soviet republics (Baltic States) — Estonia, Latvia & Lithuania — are fully independent states. It is notable that Soviet Union was a federal state consisting of 15 separate republics.

Chinese Revolution :

1911 (Republican Revolution); 1949 (Communist Revolution)

- In Oct., 1911, a revolution under the leadership of **Sun Yat-sen** ousted the Manchu or Ch'ing Dynasty and a republic was set up.
- However, first President San Yat-sen resigned in 1912, in favour of strongman **Yuan Shik-Kai** (1912-16).
- The period 1916-18, known as the **Warlord Era**, was one of great chaos, as a number of generals seized control of different provinces.
- A party known as the **Kuomintang (KMT)** or Nationalists (formed by Sun Yat-sen in 1912) was trying to govern China and control the generals who were busy fighting each other. The KMT leaders were Sun Yat-sen and after his death in 1925, General **Chiang Kai-shek**.
- The Chinese Communist Party (CCP) was founded in 1921, and at first it cooperated with the KMT in its struggle against the warlords.
- As the KMT gradually established control over more and more of China, it felt strong enough to do without the help of the communists, and it tried to destroy them.
- The communists, under their leader **Mao Tse-tung (Mao Zedong)**, reacted vigorously, and after escaping from surrounding KMT forces, embarked on the 6000 mile **Long March (Oct. 1934-Oct. 35)** to form a new power base in northern China.
- Civil war dragged on, complicated by Japanese interference with culminated in a full-scale invasion in 1937.
- When the Second World War ended with defeat for Japan and their withdrawal from China, the KMT and the CCP continued to fight it out.
- Chiang Kai-shek had help from the USA, but in 1949 it was Mao Tse-tung and the communists who finally triumphed.
- Chiang Kai-shek and his supporters fled to island of Taiwan (Formosa).
- Mao Tse-tung quickly established control over the whole of China, and he remained leader until his death in 1976.

Turkish Revolution : 1923

- Turkey was called '**Sickman of Europe**'.
- The disintegration of Ottoman empire began in the 19th century and was completed after Turkey's defeat in the First World War.
- The Allies wanted to establish their domination over Turkey itself and to give away parts of Turkey to Greece and Italy.
- The treatment meted out to Turkey by the Allies had led to a mass upsurge in India directed against Britain. This upsurge is known as the **Khilafat Movement**.
- The nationalist movement in Turkey was organised to prevent the domination of the country by the Allied Powers and the annexation of parts of Turkey agreed to the terms dictated by the Allied Powers.

- However, even before the treaty was signed by the Sultan, a national government had been established under the leadership of **Mustafa Kemal Pasha** with its headquarter in Ankara.
- Following the treaty with the Sultan, Turkey had been invaded by Greece.
- The Turks under Kemal's leadership were able to repel the invasion and the Allies were forced to repudiate the earlier treaty. The Allied troops were withdrawn from Turkish territory and the areas which were to be annexed by European countries remained in Turkey. Thus, Turkey was able to win her complete independence.
- The success of the Turks in winning the complete independence of their country was followed by a programme to modernize Turkey and to end the influence of backward-looking feudal elements.
- Turkey was proclaimed a republic in Oct. 29, 1923 and Kemal became the first President of Turkey. He ruled the new republic for 15 years (1923-38). The Turkish Sultan had carried the title of Caliph (Khalifa); the new government abolished the institution of Caliph (Khalifa) in 1924. Education was taken out of the hands of the religious leaders. Religion was separated from the State.
- Mustafa Kemal Pasha is known as the 'founder of modern Turkey' and 'Ataturk' (the father of the Turks).

Economic Depression of the World : 1929-34

- In Economic terms, a decline in trade and general prosperity is called **Depression**.
- The Great Depression of 1929-34 was worldwide, starting with an agricultural recession followed by financial panic and collapse, known as the **Wall Street Crash (Oct., 1929)**, in the USA.
- The effects on the USA were catastrophic : by 1933 almost 14 million people were out of work and American President **Hoover's** efforts failed to make any impression on crisis.
- Nobody was surprised when the Republicans lost the presidential election of Nov., 1932. The new Democrat President, **Franklin D. Roosevelt**, introduced policies known as the **New Deal** to try and put the country on the road to recovery.
- The Great Depression in turn affected financial institutions and money markets in other parts of the world and caused a run on the pound in the UK. The result was a decline in internal consumption and exports in industrialized countries, factory closures and massive unemployment.

Fascism in Italy

- The unification of Italy was only completed in 1870, however, the new state suffered from economic and political weaknesses.
- The First World War (1914-18) was a great strain on her economy, and there was bitter disappointment at her treatment by the Versailles settlement.
- Between 1919 and 1922 there were five different governments, all of which were incapable of taking the decisive action that the situation demanded.
- In 1919 **Benito Mussolini** founded the Italian Fascist Party, which won 35 seats in the 1921 elections.

- At the same time there seemed to be a real danger of a left-wing revolution; in an atmosphere of strikes and riots, the fascists staged a 'March on Rome' which culminated in *King Victor Emmanuel* inviting Mussolini to form a government (Oct., 1922); he remained in power until July 1943.
 - Gradually Mussolini took on the powers of a dictator and attempted to control the entire way of life of the Italian people.
 - At first it seemed as though his authoritarian regime might bring lasting benefits to Italy, and he won popularity with his adventurous and successful foreign policy. Later he made the fatal mistake of entering the Second World War on the side of Germany (June, 1940) even though he knew Italy could not afford involvement in another war.
 - After the Italians suffered defeats by the British, who captured her African possessions and occupied Sicily, they turned against Mussolini. He was deposed and arrested (July, 1943), but was rescued by the Germans (Sep., 1943) and set up as ruler in northern Italy, backed by German troops.
 - In April, 1945, as British and American troops advanced northwards through Italy towards Milan, Mussolini tried to escape to Switzerland but was captured and shot dead by his Italian enemies (known as partisans).
- Nazism in Germany**
- As Germany moved towards defeat in 1918, public opinion turned against the government, and in Oct., the Kaiser, in a desperate bid to hang on to power, appointed *Prince Max* as Chancellor. He was known to be in favour of more democratic form of government in which parliament had more power.
 - But it was too late; in Nov. revolution broke out, the Kaiser escaped to Holland and abdicated, and Prince Max resigned. *Friedrich Ebert*, leader of the left-wing Social Democrat Party, became head of the government.
 - In Jan., 1919, a general election was held, the first complete democratic one ever to take place in Germany. The Social Democrats emerged as the largest single party and Ebert became first President of the Republic. They had some Marxist ideas but believed that the way to achieve socialism was through parliamentary democracy.
 - The new government was by no means popular with all Germans; even before the elections the communists had attempted to seize power in the *Spartacist Rising (Jan., 1919)*.
 - In 1920 right-wing enemies of the republic occupied Berlin (the *Kapp Putsch*). The government managed to survive these threats and several later ones, including *Hitler's Munich Beer Hall Putsch (1923)*.
 - By the end of 1919 a new constitution had been agreed by the National Assembly (Parliament), which was meeting at Weimar because Berlin was still torn by political unrest. This Weimar constitution, gave its name to the *Weimar Republic* and lasted until 1933, when it was destroyed by Hitler. The Great Depression, beginning with the Wall Street Crash in Oct., 1929, had disastrous effects on

Fascism

The ideology and political system of Benito Mussolini, which encouraged militarism, extreme nationalism, organizing Italy along right-wing hierarchical authoritarian lines fundamentally opposed to democracy and liberalism. The term is also applied to any ideology or movement inspired by such principles, e.g., German National Socialism.

Germany, producing massive 6.5 million unemployed. The Government was unable to cope with the situation and by the end of 1932 the Weimar Republic seemed on the verge of collapse.

- Meanwhile *Adolf Hitler* and his *National Socialists (Nazis)* had been carrying out a great propaganda campaign blaming the government for all the ills of Germany, and setting out Nazi solutions to the problems.
- In Jan., 1933, President *Hindenburg* appointed Hitler as Chancellor, and soon afterwards Hitler saw to it that democracy ceased to exist; the Weimar Republic was at an end, and from then until April 1945, Hitler was the dictator of Germany. Only defeat in the Second World War and the death of Hitler (April 30, 1945) freed the German people from the Nazi tyranny.

Militarism in Japan

- During the 20 years after Mussolini's March on Rome (1922), many other countries, faced with severe economic problems, followed the examples of Italy and Germany and turned to fascism or right-wing nationalism.
- In Japan the democratically elected government, increasingly embarrassed by economic, financial and political problems, fell under the influence of the army in the early 1930s.
- The military soon involved Japan in war with China, and later took the country into the Second World War with its attack on *Pearl Harbor (1941)*.
- After a brilliant start, the Japanese eventually suffered defeat and devastation when the two atomic bombs were dropped.
- After the Second World War, Japan returned to democracy and made a remarkable recovery, soon becoming one of the world's most powerful states economically.

SECOND WORLD WAR : Sep. 1, 1939 — Sep. 2, 1945

Causes : The causes of Second World War as under —

1. **The Treaty of Versailles (1919) :** The treaty of Versailles had in itself the germs of the Second World War. The Germany was very badly treated. She was forced to sign the treaty at the point of a bayonet, in a spirit of revenge. To tear away the treaty of Versailles, Hitler joined hands with Mussolini of Italy.
2. **Nationalist Movements of Germany & Italy :** The rise of the national movement in Germany & Italy added fuel to the fire. Although Hitler tried to assure the world that he meant peace, he could not conceal his ambition for long. He embarked on a career of aggression which ultimately led to war. The same was the case with Mussolini who had established his dictatorship in Italy in 1922.
3. **Conflict of Ideology between Dictatorship & Democracy :** Countries like Germany, Italy & Japan represented the ideology of dictatorship while Great Britain, France & USA represented the ideology of democracy. Mussolini described the conflict between the two ideologies thus: 'The struggle between the two worlds can permit no compromise. Either we or they'.
4. **Inefficiency of League of Nations :** Unfortunately, when hostility was growing between the two camps there was no effective international organisation which could bring the leaders of the two camps on a common platform and bring about a reconciliation between them. The League of Nations was practically dead.

Lucent's General Knowledge

150

5. **Colonial & Commercial Rivalry**: The colonial and commercial rivalry between England and France on one side, and Germany and Italy on the other brought them in conflict with each other.

6. **Aggressiveness of Berlin-Rome-Tokyo Axis**: Hitler had become very aggressive. He annexed the Saar Valley, occupied Rhineland and Austria, captured Chechoslovakia etc. Mussolini attacked Abyssinia (Ethiopia) Japan attacked China. This aggressive mood of the Fascist Powers got its fullest expression when they formed an Axis providing for mutual aid in the international sphere.

➤ **Immediate Cause**: The immediate cause of the war was the refuse of Poland to surrender. Germany gave an ultimatum to Poland regarding : (i) surrender the port of Dazing, (ii) the right of establishing a rail link between Germany and East Prussia through the Polish corridor. These two demands were rejected by Poland. So Germany invaded Poland on Sep. 1, 1939. Britain and France as they were under treaty obligations to aid Poland, declared war against Germany on Sep. 3, 1939.

Course of War : On one side were Germany, Italy and Japan, called the *Axis Powers* (or *Central Powers*), and on the other were Great Britain, France, USSR, USA, China etc. called the *Allied Powers* (or *Allies*).

Germany had to face defeat once again. Hitler, Goebbels & Himmler committed suicide (April 30, 1945) and their successors surrendered unconditionally on May 7, 1945. After the fall of Germany, USA and UK concentrated their focus against Japan. On Aug. 6, 1945, an atom bomb, '*Little Boy*', was dropped on the city of Hiroshima. Japan was asked to surrender and when she refused another atom bomb, '*Fat Man*', was dropped on Aug. 9, 1945, on the city of Nagasaki. It is estimated that more than one lakh persons were killed and leaving thousands more slowly dying of radiation poisoning. On Aug. 14, 1945, Japan conveyed its acceptance of the Allied demand to surrender but the actual surrender took place on Sep. 2, 1945. With the Japanese surrender, the Second World War came to an end.

Effects of WW II : 1. After about 15 months of preparatory work, the peace treaties were given a final shape by the 21 participating countries and they were signed on Feb. 10, 1947, in Paris by the representatives of the five enemy states and the Allied Powers. As regards Germany she was occupied by the Big Four. After its fall in May, 1945, it was divided into four zones, each of which was administered separated by one of the occupying powers. Berlin came under joint occupation. Ultimately out of one Germany came two countries — West Germany and East Germany. Italy was also deprived of her colonies. As regards Japan, a peace treaty was signed with her at San Francisco in 1951. 2. The United Nations Organisation (UNO) was established in Oct. 24, 1945. 3. The USA and USSR emerged as the two most powerful nations in the world. 4. The emergence of Russia (USSR) gave rise to the desire for freedom in colonies under European control in Asia. 5. The British empire thus rapidly lost its leadership as more and more colonies won independence. 6. France also lost much of their past glory.

WW II : Axis Vs Allies**The Axis Powers or Central Powers**:

Germany, Italy (*entered June 1940*), Japan (*entered Dec. 1941*) etc.

The Allies or Entente Powers:

Great Britain, France, USSR (*entered June 1941*), USA (*entered Dec. 8, 1941*), China (*entered Dec. 1941*) etc.

7. Nearly all the East European countries embraced communism and communist rule was established in the Chinese mainland also.

Important Axis Leaders of WW II : Adolf Hitler (Nazi dictator of Germany), Benito Mussolini (Prime Minister of Italy) and Hirohito (Emperor of Japan) & his Prime Ministers Hideki Tojo & Fumimaro Konoe.

Important Allied Leaders of WW II : Franklin D. Roosevelt — upto April 12, 1945 & Harry Truman — after April 12, 1945 (Presidents of USA), Winston Churchill (Prime Minister of Britain), Joseph Stalin (Premier of USSR), Paul Reynaud & Charles De Gaulle (Prime Ministers of France) and Chiang Kai-shek (Head of the Nationalist Government of China).

Miscellaneous**Important Dates**

B.C.

First Olympiad in Greece.

776

Rome founded.

733

Battle of Marathon; the Greeks defeated the Iranians / Persians.

480

Invasion of India by *Alexander*, Battle of Hydaspes.

322-26

Invasion of China by 'Univeral Emperor' in China, Great Wall of China completed.

221

Invasion of Britain by *Julius Caesar*, the Great Roman General.

55

Assassination of *Julius Caesar* by *Brutus*.

4

Birth of *Jesus Christ*.

A.D.

Crucifixion of *Jesus Christ*.

29

Roman conquest of Britain.

43

Birth of Prophet *Muhammad* at Mecca.

570

Migration of *Muhammad* from Mecca to Medina ('*Hijira*'), Beginning of Hijira Era (Muhammadan calender) on July 15.

622

Charlemagne crowned Roman Emperor at St. Peter's.

800

Accession of *Alfred the Great* to the throne of Britain.

871

Death of king *Alfred the Great*.

901

Battle of Hastings; Norman invasion of England. *William the Conqueror*, Duke of Normandy, defeated the English king *Harold II* at Hastings.

1066

Magna Carta or the Great Charter signed by king *John II* at Runnymede in England on June 15.

1280

Gunpowder invented by *Roger Bacon*.

1338

The Hundred Years War broke out; it lasted upto 1453.

1431

Joan of Arc, a brave French peasant girl, obtained victory over the English at Orleans. She was burnt alive at the stakes.

1443

The Black death i. e., plague broke out in England.

1453

The capture of Constantinople (the home of classical learning) by the Ottoman Turks compelled the Greek scholars to flee to Italy and other West European countries, where they spread the knowledge of Greek philosophy and literature. This was the beginning of Renaissance in Europe.

- 1486 Bartholomew Diaz rounded the Cape of Good Hope.
- 1492 Columbus sailed on his first expedition to the West Indies which later led to the discovery of America (the New World).
- 1498 Vasco da Gama, a Portuguese, discovered the sea-route to India via the Cape of Good Hope.
- 1517 Beginning of Reformation.
- 1529-36 Reformation in England under Henry VIII.
- 1564 Birth of Shakespeare.
- 1571 Battle of Lepanto; Turks defeated by the Christian League.
- 1577 Drake, the famous English Admiral, started his voyage round the world for the first time and plundered Spanish ships and ports in South America.
- 1588 Admiral Drake defeated the Spanish 'Armada'; England became the 'Mistress of the Seas'.
- 1600 Establishment of the British East India Company in India (31st Dec.)
- 1605 Gunpowder plot in England to blow up the English Parliament.
- 1616 Shakespeare passes away.
- 1649 Trial and execution of Charles I, beginning of Commonwealth.
- 1649-60 The Commonwealth and the Protectorate in England.
- 1660 Restoration of Monarchy in England.
- 1665 The Great Plague in London.
- 1679 Habeas Corpus Act.
- 1688 The Glorious or Bloodless Revolution in England. Despotic rule of the Stuarts ended, and the Parliamentary rule began. Establishment of parliamentary supremacy and abolition of the Divine Rights of Kings.
- 1704 Battle of Blenheim; Marlborough and Eugene inflicted a crushing defeat on the French army.
- 1707 Union of England and Scotland.
- 1763 Treaty of Paris; It ended the Seven Years' War (1756-63); weakened France, made England a great colonial power.
- 1776 Declaration of American Independence and formation of a Federal Republic of 13 states called the United States of America (July 4).
- 1783 Treaty of Versailles; England recognised the independence of the United States of America.
- 1789 George Washington elected First President of USA. Beginning of French Revolution : Fall of the Bastille Fort (July 14).
- 1798 Battle of the Nile; The English under Nelson gained victory over the French.
- 1805 Battle of Trafalgar; Death of Nelson.
- 1805 Battle of Austerlitz — Napoleon Bonaparte routed a combined army of the Russians and the Austrians.
- 1815 Battle of Waterloo — Napoleon was defeated and exiled to St. Helena.
- Congress of Vienna, it aimed at rearranging the map of Europe; The Vienna settlement proved unsatisfactory, because it disregarded national claims.
- 1821 Death of Napoleon at St. Helena (May 5).

- 1827 Battle of Navatino; the allied fleets of England, Russia and France destroyed the Turkish fleet; This victory practically secured the independence of Greece.
- 1832 Reforms Bill passed; French captured Antwerp.
- 1833 Emancipation Act of 1833; It abolished slavery in the British dominions.
- 1837 Accession of Queen Victoria to the throne of England.
- 1839 Introduction of Penny Postage system in England by Sir Rowland Hill; Aden annexed by England.
- 1854 The Crimean War began; Russia attacked Turkey; England and France came to the rescue of Turkey.
- 1861 American Civil War started. Abraham Lincoln elected 16th President of USA.
- 1863 Slavery abolished in America.
- 1869 Suez Canal opened for traffic.
- 1869 General Gordon captured and slain at Khartoum.
- 1885 Beginning of the Boer War.
- 1899 Outbreak of the Russo-Japanese War.
- 1904 Battle of the sea of Japan; Japan inflicted a crushing naval defeat on Russia; a wave of nationalism spread in Asia.
- 1911 Chinese Republican Revolution; Amundsen reached South Pole (Dec. 14).
- 1914 Outbreak of World War I (July 28).
- 1916 Battle of Jutland (Naval Battle). The British Grand Fleet under Admiral Jellico defeated the German Fleet under Admiral Scheer.
- 1917 March / Feb. Revolution in Russia : the Czar abdicated and later assassinated; reformist Mensheviks came into power (Prince Lvov, Kerensky).
- Nov./Oct. Revolution in Russia: Revolutionary Bolsheviks came into power (Lenin).
- 1918 End of World War I (Nov. 11).
- 1919 The Paris Conference; the Treaty of Versailles.
- 1920 Foundation of the League of Nations (Jan. 10).
- 1921 The Irish Free State established with the status of a Dominion like Canada (Dec. 6).
- 1923 Turkish Republic proclaimed with Kemal Ataturk as its First President.
- 1924 Lenin died, and power passed into the hands of Stalin in Russia.
- 1925 Treaty of Locarno (between Great Britain, France, Germany, Italy and Belgium).
- 1928 Kellogg Pact (signed in Paris by the principal powers of the world for the prevention of war; it had no effect).
- 1933 Hitler became the Chancellor of Germany.
- 1935 War between Italy and Abyssinia (Ethiopia); Italy annexed Abyssinia (Ethiopia); Plebiscite in Saar.
- 1939 Germany invaded Poland : Outbreak of World War II (Sep. 1).
- 1940 Fall of France after German invasion (June 5); Italy entered World War II (June 11).
- 1941 Hitler invades Russia (June 22); Framing of the Atlantic Charter (Aug. 14); Japan attacked Pearl Harbour (Hawaii Islands) (Dec. 7); USA entered World War II (Dec. 8); China entered World War II (Dec. 10) Air raids by Japan on Rangoon (Dec. 22).
- 1942 Capture of Singapore by Japanese forces (Feb. 15); Battle of Coral Sea, Japanese fleet suffered heavy losses at the hands of the American fleet (May 3); Battle of Stalingrad (Sep. 19).

1943	Defeat of Germany at Stalingrad (Feb. 8); Battle of the Bismarck Sea; America defeated Japan in a naval battle (March 4); Invasion of Italy by the Allies; Armistice between Italy & the Allies (Sep. 3).
1944	Allied forces landed in Normandy under the supreme command of <i>Eisenhower</i> (D-Day) (June 6); Liberation of Paris (Aug. 25).
1945	Execution of <i>Mussolini</i> (Apr. 22); Unconditional surrender of Germany to the Allies (May 7); USA dropped atom bomb on Hiroshima & Nagasaki of Japan (Aug. 6 & Aug. 9); Actual surrender of Japan (Sep. 2); World War II ended (Sep. 2); Foundation of UNO (Oct. 24).

Association of Places

Place	Associated with	Place	Associated with
Corsica	Napoleon Bonaparte	Medina	Prophet Muhammad
Hiroshima	Dropping of first atom bomb	Pearl Harbour	Japan's attack during World War II
Jerusalem	Jesus Christ	St. Helena	Napoleon Bonaparte
Macedonia	Alexander, the Great	Trafalgar	Nelson
Mecca	Prophet Muhammad	Waterloo	Napoleon Bonaparte

Abbreviated or Alternative Names

Abbreviated/ Alternative Name	Original Name	Abbreviated/ Alternative Name	Original Name
Apostle of Free Trade	Richard Cobden	Li-Kwan	Pearl Buck
Bangabandhu	Sherikh Mujibur Rahman	Little Corporal	Napoleon
Father of English Poetry	Geoffery Chaucer	Maid of Orleans	John of Arc
Man of Blood and Iron	Bismarck	Man of Destiny	Napoleon
G. B. S.	George Bernard Shaw	Mark Twain	Samuel Clemens
Grand Old Man of Britain	Gladstone	Scourge of God	Chengiz Khan
Great Commoner	Pitt, the Younger	Uncle Ho	Ho Chi Minh
Iron Duke, The	Duke of Wellington	Desert Fox	Gen. Rommel
King Maker	Earl of Warwick	Bard of Avon	Shakespeare
Lady of the Lamp	Florence Nightingale	Maiden Queen	Elizabeth I
Voltaire	Francois Marie Arouet de Ijk	Ike	D. Eisenhower
Wizard of the North	Sir Walter Scott	Fuehrer	Adolf Hitler

Important Battles

Name of the Battle	Year	Countries involved
Battle of Marathon	490 BC	Athenians and Persians; King <i>Darius</i> of Persia defeated.
Battle of Thermoplyae	480 BC	Spartans led by <i>Leonidas</i> and Persians led by <i>Xerxes</i> ; Greeks defeated.
Battle of Salamis	480 BC	Athenian fleet and Persian fleet in Bay of Salamis; Persian fleet defeated.
Battle of Platae	479 BC	Greek and Persians forces; Persian forces defeated.
Battle of Mycale	479 BC	Greek and Persian fleets; Persian fleet defeated.

Name of the Battle	Year	Countries involved
Spartan War I (Peloponnesian War)	459 BC	Sparta and Athens, lasted for 30 years.
Spartan War II	431 BC	Sparta and Athens; Spartans victorious.
Battle of Arabia	421 BC	
Battle of Magnesia	331 BC	Greek and Persian forces; Greeks victorious.
Battle of Pharsalus	190 BC	Syrian and Roman forces; Syrian forces defeated (north-west Lydia).
Battle of Hastings	48 AD	<i>Caesar</i> defeated <i>Pompey</i> .
Hundred-Year War	1066	<i>William</i> , the Duke of Normandy defeated <i>Harold</i> , the King of England. England came under the control of Normans.
War of the Roses	1338-1453	Fought between France and England. The cause of the war was the succession question to the throne of France which was claimed by <i>Edward III</i> of England. The war was resumed by <i>Henry V</i> and was brought to an end by the heroism of <i>Joan of Arc</i> — 'A country girl who overthrew the power of England'. Joan of Arc was burnt alive at the stakes in 1431.
Anglo-Spanish War (Spanish Armada War)	1455-1485	Civil War in England; The cause of the war was a struggle for the throne of England between the two royal houses of Lancaster and York.
Battle of Gibraltar Way	1588	Spanish and English fleets fought in the English Channel; The English fleet under <i>Lord Howard</i> defeated the Spanish Armada.
Thirty-Year War	1607	The Dutch defeated the Spanish and Portuguese.
Civil War in England	1618-1648	Started as religious-cum-political war between the Lutherans and Catholics in Germany and developed into an international war.
Battle of Blenheim	1642-1649	Between Cavaliers (King Charles I supporters) and forces of Parliament led by <i>Oliver Cromwell</i> , King Charles I executed.
War of Austrian Succession	1704	England and Austria headed by <i>Marlborough</i> defeated France and Russia.
Seven-Year War (Anglo-French War III)	1740-1748	Queen of Austria, <i>Maria Theresa</i> (daughter of Charles VII) was challenged by <i>King Frederick II</i> of Prussia. England supported the queen and Frederick II was helped by France. Ended with a Treaty which recognised the Queen's right to the throne after the death of King Frederick.
Battle of the Nile	1756-1763	Britain and France against Austria and Prussia; the British alliance won.
Battle of Trafalgar	1798	British and French fleets, Britain victorious.
Battle of Austerlitz	1805	British fleet defeated fleets of France and Spain. British fleets were commanded by Admiral <i>Nelson</i> , who was killed during the battle.
	1805	Britain, Austria, Russia and Prussia on one side and France on the other. <i>Napoleon</i> (France) defeated Austria and Russia.

Geography

3

Name of the Battle	Year	Countries involved
Battle of Borodino	1812	Between France and Russia. Napolean invaded Russia at Borodino, and nearly defeated the Russians. However on reaching Moscow, his army suffered heavy losses and was forced to retreat. Napoleons ill-fated attack on Russia marked the beginning of the downfall of the French Empire.
Battle of Leipzig	1813	Germany and combined forces of Austria, Prussia and Russia, defeated Napolean
Battle of Waterloo	1815	British forces led by Duke of Wellington (Sir Arthur Wellesley) defeated French forces led by Napolean. Napolean was captured and exiled to St. Helena where he died in 1821.
First Opium War	1840	China and Britain; China yielded opium. It was a trade war.
Crimean War	1854-1856	The combined forces of the British, French and Turks defeated Russia.
American Civil War	1861-1865	Northern states of America under Abraham Lincoln defeated the Southern states and established a Federal state and abolished the slavery.
Sino-Japanese War	1894-1895	Japan defeated China and occupied Formosa and Korea.
Battle of Omdurman	1898	The British and Egyptian forces defeated the forces of Khalifa (Mehdists).
Boer War	1899-1901	The revolt of Transvaal Boers was suppressed by the British forces. Boers belonged to Dutch Protestant stock who opposed Britishers because of abolition of slavery by Britain.
Russo-Japanese War (Battle of Port Arthur 1905 & Battle of Yalu)	1904-1905	Russia and Japan in the sea of Japan. Russia defeated; It led the wave of the idea of Asian Resurgence.
Balkan War I	1912	Turkey and Balkan countries (Montenegro, Serbia, Bulgaria and Greece), Turkey defeated.
Balkan War II	1913	Invasion of Serbia and Greece by Bulgaria. Bulgaria was defeated by combined forces of Serbia, Greece, Rumania, Montenegro who stripped Turkey of most of its European territories.
World War I	1914-1918	Central Powers (Germany and its allies) against the Allied Powers (Britain and its allies); Central Power were defeated. Famous Battles : 1. First battle of Marne (1914) — France defeated Germany. 2. Battle of Jutland (1916) — Naval battle between England and Germany. England defeated Germany. 3. Battle of Verdun (1916) — Fought between France & Germany. 4. Second battle of Marne (1918) — France defeated Germany. (See details on page 156)
World War II	1939-1945	Axis Powers (Germany and its allies) against the Allied Powers (Britain and its allies); Axis Powers were defeated. Famous Battle : Battle of El Alamein (1942) — The Allies victory during the World War II and retreat of General Rommel's forces. (See details on page 163)

★★★

Universe

The universe is commonly defined as the totality of everything that exists, including all physical matter and energy, the planets, stars, galaxies and the contents of intergalactic space.

The study of universe is known as Cosmology.

Cosmology = cosmos (universe) + logos (science)

The universe has no limit.

Galaxy

A galaxy is a vast system of billions of stars, which also contains a large number of gas clouds (mainly of hydrogen gas) and dust, isolated in space from similar systems.

There are about 100 billion galaxies (10^{11} galaxies) in the universe, and each galaxy has, on an average, 100 billion stars (10^{11} stars). So, the total number of stars in the universe is 10^{22} stars.

The Milky Way Galaxy is the home of the Earth and our Solar System. It is spiral in shape.

Milky Way Galaxy was formed 5 billion years after the Big Bang.

Latest known galaxy is the Dwarf Galaxy.

According to the modern thought, universe can be classified into two parts namely—(a) Atmosphere and (b) Space.

Origin of the universe is explained by the Big Bang Theory, formulated and proposed by the Belgian astronomer and cosmologist Georges Lemaitre.

Andromeda is our nearest galaxy.

The Big Bang Theory

All the matter in the universe was originally a concentrated lump called primeval atom.

Big Bang was an explosion that occurred 15 billion years ago, leading to the formation of galaxies of stars and other heavenly bodies.

Since then, all the galaxies have been flying away from one another causing expansion of the universe.

Star

Clumps of dust and gas in a nebula come together due to gravity and form stars.

Stars are made of hot burning gases.

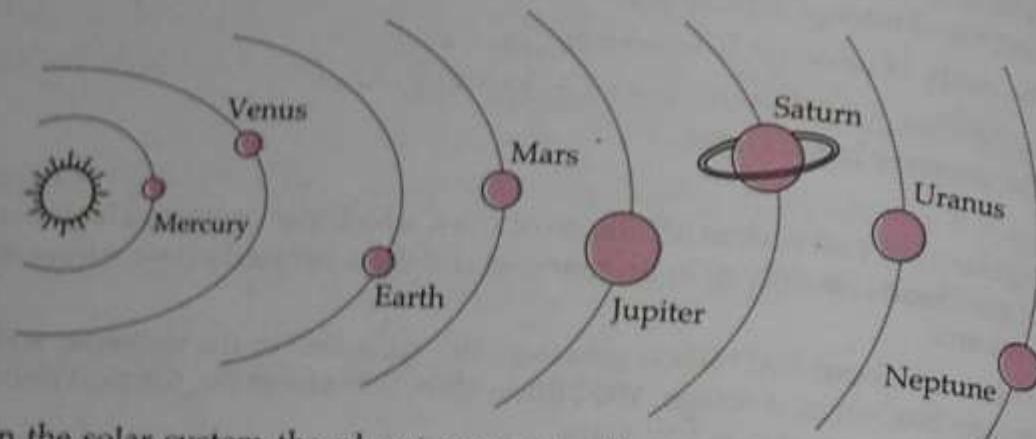
They emit light of their own and are very large and very hot.

Light takes about 4.3 years to reach us from the next nearest star proxima centauri.

The Solar System

The solar system consists of the sun, the eight planets and their satellites (or moons), and thousands of other smaller heavenly bodies such as asteroids, comets and meteors.

- The sun is at the centre of the solar system and all these bodies are revolving around it.
- The gravitational pull of the sun keeps all the planets and other objects revolving round it. Thus, the motion of all the members of the solar system is governed mainly by the gravitational force of the sun.
- Planets revolve around the sun in elliptical orbit.



- In the solar system the planet nearest to the sun is Mercury and the planet farthest from the sun is Neptune (not Pluto).
- The size of solar system has been estimated to be about 10^5 A.U.
- The solar system is dominated by the sun which accounts for almost 99.9% of the matter in the whole solar system.
- The sun is also the source of all the energy in the solar system.
- Pluto is a dwarf planet.
- Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars are called terrestrial planets and Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune are called gaseous planets.

Members of the Solar System

The Sun

- The Sun is at the centre of the Solar System.
- Its size is thirteen lakh times as that of the Earth.
- It is the nearest star to the Earth.
- It is an ultimate source of energy for life on Earth.
- Its diameter is 14 lakh kms.
- It is composed of 71% Hydrogen, 26.5% Helium and 2.5% other elements. Hydrogen and Helium are the main gases present in the Sun.
- Within the Sun, hydrogen is converted to Helium due to nuclear fusion releasing a tremendous amount of heat and light.
- It has a surface temperature of 5778 K or 5504.85°C.
- The temperature at the centre is around 1.571×10^7 K or 15,000,000°C.
- Shining surface of the sun is called photosphere, it appears like a disc, radiates energy and acts as a source of energy.
- The outer layer of sun's atmosphere made up of thin hot gases, is called Corona. Corona is visible only during a total eclipse of the sun (or with a special solar telescope called Coronagraph).

- The planet travels with the sun through millions of stars in our galaxy at a speed of about 70,000 km per hour.
- The Sun is about 150 million kms away from the Earth.
- Light (at the speed of 3,00,000 km per second) takes about 8.5 minutes to reach the Earth from the Sun.

The Planets

- These are opaque bodies which continuously revolve around and are lighted by the Sun.
- There are eight planets in the Solar system.
- A ninth planet has been recently discovered by NASA named as Carla.
- The sequence of planets according to their distance from the Sun is Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune.
- The sequence of planets according to their size (in descending order i.e. from big to small) is Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune, Earth, Venus, Mars, Mercury. Jupiter is the biggest and mercury is the smallest planets of our solar system.

Classification of Planets

- The eight planets have been divided into two groups. All the planets of a particular group have some common features. 'Terrestrial planets' or 'Rocky planets' and 'Jovian planets' or 'Gaseous planets' (Gas giants) are the two groups of planets.
- The four planets nearest to the Sun-Mercury, Venus, Earth and Mars are called terrestrial planets, because their structure is similar to the earth.
- Other four planets—Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune are called Jovian planets.
- Planets are classified into the following two groups inner and outer planets.
- These are separated by asteroid belt. :

Inner Planets	Outer Planets
They include Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars.	They include Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune etc.
They are nearer to the sun.	They are far away from the sun.
They are made up of dense metallic minerals.	They are made up of hot gases, mainly hydrogen and helium.
They move faster and have a shorter period of revolution.	They move rather slowly and have a longer period of revolution.
They have thin, rocky crust.	They are all gaseous bodies.
They have a mantle rich in iron and magnesium.	Made of gases.
They have a core of molten metals.	They have ring systems around them.
They have thin atmosphere.	
They have very few natural satellites (or moons)	They have a large number of natural satellites (or moons).

Some Notable Facts About Various Planets and Satellites

Mercury

- Mercury is the closest planet to the Sun.

- > It is extremely hot planet.
- > The planet has no water on it.
- > Mercury planet has no gases like CO_2 , N_2 , H_2 and O_2 which can act as building blocks of life.
- > Mercury planet has no protective blanket like Ozone around it to prevent us from harmful radiations.

Venus

- > Venus is the second planet in distance from the Sun. This planet is nearest to the Earth and is also the brightest planet.
- > Venus is known as the 'Evening Star' as well as 'Morning Star'.
- > Venus is surrounded by a thick cloud cover, hence known as the 'Veiled Planet' ('veil' means unclear/cover).
- > Venus is like the Earth in size and mass, and hence also known as the 'Earth's twin'. It also rotates clockwise like Uranus.
- > Venus is the hottest planet (even hotter than Mercury) of our Solar System due to its veil of cloud.
- > Venus has no water on it. There is no sufficient oxygen on the Venus.

The Earth

- > Earth is the largest of the inner planets.
- > The Earth is $23\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ tilted on its axis and thus makes $66\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ angle.
- > It takes 23 hours 56 minutes and 4.091 seconds to rotate on its axis.
- > It takes 365 days, 5 hours and 48 minutes to revolve around the Sun.
- > Earth is known as the 'watery planet' or the 'blue planet' due to the presence of huge amount of water on it.
- > Earth is the only known planet which provides sustenance or life on it. It has a large quantity of oxygen which supports life.

The Moon

- > The Moon is the only satellite of the earth.
- > It has a diameter of 3,475 km and its circumference is 10,864 km while its orbit is elliptical.
- > The maximum distance (apogee) of the moon from the earth is 4,06,000 km and the minimum distance (perigee) is 3,64,000 km.
- > It takes 27 days, 7 hours and 43 minutes to rotate on its axis (this period of about $27\frac{1}{2}$ days is called the *sideral month*) and approximately the same period of time it takes to revolve around the earth. The moon's period of revolution with reference to the sun is about 29.53 days (29 days, 12 hours, 44 minutes and 2.8 seconds). This period is called a *synodic month*.
- > Only 59 per cent of the total surface of the moon is visible from the earth.
- > The bright part of the moon is full of mountains whereas the dark patches are low lying plains.
- > 'Sea of tranquility' made of the plain of dust particles, is on the rear side of the moon, which always remains dark.

- The highest mountain on the moon is *liebulty mountain* which is 10,660 meter high.
- > The moon has no atmosphere, no twilight and no sound.
 - > The temperature during daytime is about 100°C and during night it drops down to about -180°C .
 - > The light from the moon takes 1.3 seconds to reach the Earth.
 - > The size of the *Moon* is one-fourth (1/4th) the size of the Earth.
 - > Gravitational pull of Moon is one-sixth (1/6th) that of the Earth.
 - > Mainly silicon, iron, magnesium etc elements are found on the Moon's surface.
 - > The study of the Moon is called 'Selenology'.
 - > Moon is also known as the fossil planet.
- Mars*
- > Iron-rich red soil and pink sky of Mars give it the name, 'Red Planet'.
 - > Phobos and Demos are two satellites of Mars.
- Jupiter*
- > Jupiter is the largest planet of the Solar System.
 - > Jupiter is also known as winter planet as its average temperature is very low (-148°C).
 - > Gannymeda, satellite of Jupiter is the largest satellite in the Solar System.

Saturn

- > Saturn is the second largest planet in the Solar System.
- > Saturn has bright concentric rings which are made up of ice and ice-covered dust particles which revolve around it.
- > Titan is the largest satellite of Saturn.

Uranus

- > Uranus is about four times the size of the Earth. This planet appears greenish in colour because of methane gas present in its atmosphere.
- > Uranus was discovered in 1781 by Sir William Hersiel.
- > Uranus is the 7th planet from the Sun.
- > Uranus is the first planet to have been discovered by the use of a telescope.
- > Uranus is the third biggest planet of the Solar System.
- > Uranus is extremely cold, having surface temperature -190°C and is surrounded by 13 rings namely zeta (ζ)/R1986U2, 6, 5, 4, alpha (α), beta (β), eta (ϵ), gamma (γ), delta (δ), lambda (λ), epsilon (ϵ), nu (ν) and mu (μ).
- > Uranus rotates from east to west on its axis, which is opposite to other planets except Venus.
- > The axis of Uranus has large inclination so that it appears to be lying down, hence it bears the name 'A Planet on its Side'.

Neptune

- > Neptune is the 8th planet of the Solar System.
- > The temperature on the surface of Neptune remains low.
- > Neptune is very similar to Uranus and can be considered as its twin.
- > Neptune is surrounded by methane rings of sub zero temperature.

Pluto is not a Planet now

- > On the basis of the new definition of planet given by the IAU (International Astronomical Union), the world's top institution on space science research, leading astronomers participating in IAU's meet at Prague (Czech Republic) on August 24, 2006, declared that Pluto would no longer remain a planet.
- > Under the IAU's new guidelines, the number of planets in the Solar System has thus been reduced from nine to eight. Its merits mentioning here that, prior to this decision, Pluto had been holding the planetary status since its discovery in 1930 by Clyde Tombaugh.
- > Now, with the omission of Pluto from the Solar System, its membership has been restricted to the eight 'classical' planets, namely Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune.

Pluto Gets a Numerical Denomination

Weeks after it was demoted to a sub-planetary status, Pluto was given a new name to reflect its new status as a dwarf planet in September, 2006. The former 9th planet was assigned the asteroid number 134340 by the Minor Planet Centre (MPC), the official organisation responsible for collecting data about asteroids and comets in our Solar System.

Pluto's companion satellites, Charon (Pluto's largest moon), Nix and Hydra are considered part of the same system and will not be assigned separate asteroid numbers. Instead, they will now be called 134340 I, II and III respectively.

- > Before losing its planetary status on 24th August, 2006 Pluto was the outermost planet of the Solar System.

Some Facts and Figures about the Planets

Name of planet	Distance from the Sun	Time taken for one revolution around Sun	Time taken to turn once on its axis	Diameter of planet	Mass of planet compared to earth taken as 1	No. of satellites (or moons)
Mercury	58×10^6 km	88 days	58.6 days	4,878 km	0.055	None
Venus	108×10^6 km	224.7 days	243 days	12,100 km	0.8	None
Earth	150×10^6 km	365.26 days	23.9 hours (23 hours 56 min 04 sec.)	12,760 km	1	1
Mars	228×10^6 km	687 days	24.6 hours	6,780 km	0.1	2
Jupiter	778×10^6 km	11.9 years	9.9 hours	142,800 km	318	67 (50+17)
Saturn	1427×10^6 km	29.5 years	10 hours	1,20,000 km	95	62 (53+9)
Uranus	2870×10^6 km	84 years	16.2 hours	50,800 km	15	15
Neptune	4504×10^6 km	164.8 years	18.5 hours	48,600 km	17	8

Asteroids (or Planetoids)

- > Asteroids are also known as minor planets.
- > They are objects that revolve around the Sun.
- > They are mostly found between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter. They are a belt of debris which failed to assemble into planets and keeps on revolving around the Sun. This has come to be called as 'asteroid belt'.

- > More than 5000 asteroids have been identified.
- > Asteroids may be spherical, elongated or irregular in shape.
- > All asteroids rotate on their axis, every 5 to 20 hours. Certain asteroids may have satellites.
- > Trojan asteroids are found in two clouds moving in the orbit of Jupiter, one moving ahead of it and the other moving behind it.
- > Scientists believe that these asteroids occupy a place where a planet could have existed but was prevented from its formation by the disruptive gravitational force of the nearby giant planet, Jupiter.

Meteors and Meteorites

- > Meteors and Meteorites are also called shooting stars.
- > Meteors are fragments of rocks coming towards the earth, formed due to the collision of asteroids with one another.
- > Meteors are usually small, and due to the heat produced by air resistance, burn up before they reach the Earth's surface.
- > When meteors are large and do not burn up completely, they land on the Earth's surface and are known as Meteorites.
- > All meteorites are believed to originate in the asteroid belt, where a sudden collision may send them towards the Earth and the Earth's gravity attracts them towards its surface.

Comets

- > Visitors of the Solar System, Comets (the name derived from the Latin words *stella cometa* meaning 'hairy star') are among the most spectacular and unpredictable bodies in the Solar System.
- > Comets move around the Sun in regular orbits, but their orbits are elongated ellipses that it takes them hundreds and, sometimes even thousands of years to complete one revolution around the Sun.
- > Comets are made up of frozen gases which hold together rocky and metallic materials.
- > A comet becomes visible only when it travels close to the Sun.
- > Its ice melts and the gas and dust is swept back into a tail.
- > The tail always points away from the Sun. So when it is travelling away from the Sun it is led by its tail.

Features of a Comet

- > A comet is characterised by a long luminous tail, which emits light.
- > But this is visible only when the comet's orbit passes close to the Sun.
- > When the comet travels close to the Sun, the ice melts to a head of gas called a Coma.
- > The Sun's radiation sweeps this into a gas tail.
- > Dust particles are also swept back to form a dust tail.

Stars

- > Stars are heavenly bodies made up of hot burning gases, thus shining by their own light.

- Stars seem to be fixed with respect to each other. In fact they are in rapid motion but they are at such great distance that relative changes in position become noticeable only over the centuries.
- According to NASA Proxima Centauri is the closest star to the Earth after the Sun. It is about 4.24 light years away.
- Pole star (or Polaris), Sirius, Vega, Capella, Alpha centauri, Beta centauri, Proxima centauri, Spica, Regulus, Pleiades, Aldebaran, Arcturus, Betelgeuse, and of course the Sun are some of the important examples of the stars.

Facts about Stars

- There are billions and billions of stars in the sky but only about 2000 stars can be seen with the naked eye on a clear moonless night.
- There are 10^{22} stars in the Universe.
- About 8000 stars are visible from the Earth with naked eye. Out of this, 4000 stars are visible in the Northern Hemisphere and 4000 in the Southern Hemisphere.
- In either hemisphere, only 2000 stars are visible at any given time.
- The other 2000 are located in the day-time sky and the brightness of the Sun renders them invisible.

Constellations

- To enable astronomers to identify roughly the position of the stars, the sky has been divided into units. These units are known as Constellations.
- These constellations were named in the honour of mythological characters.
- At present 88 constellations are recognized.

Some well known constellations

- Some well known constellations, with their Indian names are given below:

Constellations	Indian names	Constellations	Indian names
Ursa Major (Great Bear)	Saptarishi	Cancer*	Kark
Ursa Minor (Little Bear)	Dhruva Matsya	Leo*	Simha
Orion (Hunter)	Mriga	Virgo*	Kanya
Draco (Dragon)	Kaleya	Libra*	Tula
Scorpio*	Vrishchika	Sagittarius*	Dhanu
Aries*	Mesh	Capricorn*	Makar
Taurus*	Vrish	Aquarius*	Kumbh
Gemini*	Mithun	Pisces*	Meen

* 12 Zodiac signs

Galaxy

- A large group of stars, dust and light gases, bound together by their own gravity is called a galaxy.
- There are 10^{11} galaxies in the universe.
- We live on the outer edge of a spiral type of galaxy called the Milky Way, which is about 100,000 light years in diameter and is rotating slowly.

Earth's Galaxy : The Milky Way

- The Milky Way is a large spiral-shaped galaxy.

It spans about 1,00,000 light-years across and is about 10,000 light-years thick at the centre.

It is called the Milky Way because it appears as a soft glowing light of billions of stars. These stars are so far that they can be seen only in constellation, not separately.

Galileo discovered that this band of light was produced by countless individual stars which a naked eye can not see.

It takes about 250 million years to complete one revolution.

Andromeda : Earth's closest Galactic neighbour

Andromeda is a spiral galaxy and also our closest neighbour.

It appears as a fuzzy patch of light and contains millions of stars.

It is the farthest object that can be seen with the naked eye.

Along with the Milky Way, it belongs to a group of galaxies known as the Local Group, which in turn is a part of Virgo Cluster of groups.

Like stars, galaxies are grouped into clusters. Some clusters contain thousands of galaxies.

About 30 galaxies, along with the Milky Way and the Andromeda are grouped together in one cluster called the Local Group.

Clusters may group together into upper clusters.

Super clusters are also spread randomly throughout the universe.

Nebulae

Nebulae are huge interstellar clouds of gas and dust that appear as faint, misty patches of light scattered all over the sky.

They appear either as bright luminous clouds or as dark patches against a brighter background.

A nebula depends for its luminosity upon the presence of stars that have either arisen from it or are contained in it.

If the stars are extremely hot, the hydrogen in the nebula is ionized and emits a certain amount of light of its own.

If a star is less hot, the nebula shines only by reflection.

If there are no suitable stars, the nebula does not shine and remains dark and can be detected only because it blots out the light of the stars beyond.

The Earth : Shape and Size

Shape of the Earth

- Pythagoras (572-500 B.C.), a Greek philosopher and mathematician, was among the first to suggest that the Earth was shaped like a globe.

The Earth is not flat

- If the Earth were a flat disc, then the rising Sun would have been seen at all places at the same time. But this does not happen. Places in the east see the rising Sun earlier.
- When a ship approaches land, its funnel or mast is seen first and then the hull. If the Earth had been flat, the whole ship would have been seen at the same time.

The Earth is a sphere

- > The Earth is rarely oriented in the same position during successive eclipses but it always casts a circular shadow, thus proving that the Earth is a sphere. A sphere is the only solid body that will always cast a circular shadow.
- > At the North Pole, the **Pole Star** can always be observed at 90 degrees in the sky, since the star lies in the line with the axis of the Earth.
- > As one travels southwards, the angle of Pole Star decreases.
- > At the Equator the angle becomes zero degree.
- > This observation proves that the path of travel is an arc of a circle.
- > The Sun, Moon and all the **heavenly bodies appear to be spherical** when viewed from different positions. It seems logical to conclude that the Earth is no exception.
- > The **photographs of the Earth taken from the space** prove beyond any doubt that the Earth is a sphere.

The Earth as an Oblate Spheroid

- > Refined measurements of the Earth have proved that the true form of the Earth resembles a sphere that has been **compressed at the poles** and made to **bulge** at the Equator. This form is known as an **oblate spheroid**.

The various factors which make the earth suitable for life to evolve and survive are

- > The earth has all the essential elements like carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen and oxygen, which act as building block for the origin of life.
- > The earth is neither too hot nor too cold. It has the right temperature range for carrying out the life-sustaining chemical reactions.
- > The earth has a lot of water in the form of lakes, rivers and oceans for the growth and survival of life.
- > The earth has enough oxygen gas in its atmosphere for the survival of living beings through breathing.
- > The earth has a protective blanket of ozone layer high up in its atmosphere to save life from harmful ultraviolet radiations coming from the sun.
- > **Biodiversity** changes increase towards equator. Biodiversity is the degree of variation of life. It is a measure of variety of organisms present in different ecosystems. It is richest in the tropics.

Statistical Data of The Earth

The Earth, third planet from the Sun, is the fifth largest planet in the Solar System in terms of size and mass.

Age

4,550 million years

Mass 5.9726×10^{24} kg**Volume** 108.321×10^{10} km³**Mean Density**5514 kg/m³

Total Surface area	51,00,66,000 sq.km
Total Land area	14,84,29,000 sq.km (29.1%)
Total Ocean area	36,16,37,000 sq.km (70.9%)
Total Water area	38,26,72,000 sq. km
Diameter	
Equatorial diameter	12,756 km
Equatorial radius	6,378.1 km
Polar diameter	12,713.6 km
Polar radius	6,356.8 km (IUGG)
Equatorial circumference	40,077 km
Polar circumference	40,009 km
Important Facts of Earth	
Highest land point (Mt. Everest, Nepal)	8,850 m
Lowest land point (Dead Sea, between Jordan and Israel)	400 m / 1,300 ft (approx.)
Greatest ocean depth (Mariana Trench in Pacific Ocean, near Japan)	11,033 m. (36,201 ft)
Maximum distance from the Sun (At Aphelion)	152 million km (approx.)
Minimum distance from the Sun (At Perihelion)	147 million km (approx.)
The mean distance from the Sun	14,95,98,262 km (1.0 AU)
> 29.1% of the total surface area of Earth is covered by continents (land), while 70.9% is covered by oceans.	
> The total water area of the earth including the oceans, lakes, rivers, ice sheets and the water in the atmosphere is called hydrosphere and it covers about 71% of the earth's surface.	
Continents of The World	
Asia, Africa, North America, South America, Europe, Australia and Antarctica are the seven continents.	
Facts about Asia	
Latitude	: 10°S and 80° N
Longitude	: 25° E and 170° W
Area	: 44,579,000 sq. km (approx. 30% of the world)
Population	: 4,351 million (mid-2014) [60.11% of world population]
Oceans and Seas	: Arctic Ocean, Pacific Ocean, Indian Ocean, Red Sea, Gulf of Aden, Persian Gulf, Gulf of Oman, Arabian Sea, Bay of Bengal, China Sea, Yellow Sea of Okhotsk, Bering Sea.
Highest and Lowest Points	: Everest (8,850 metres)* and Dead Sea (-396.8 m)* respectively. (* World's highest and lowest point)
Straits	: Strait of Malacca, Bering Strait.
Lakes	: Caspian Sea, Aral Sea, Lake Baikal, Lake Balkhash.

Lucent's General Knowledge

Islands

: Kurile, Sakhalin, Honshu, Hokkaido, Taiwan, Borneo, Sumatra, Java, Celebes, New Guinea, Philippines, Sri Lanka, Bahrain, Cyprus.

Mountains

: Pamir Knot, Himalayas, Karakoram, Kunlun, Tien Shan, Altai, Hindu Kush, Elbruz, Pontic, Sulaiman, Zagros, Taurus, Urals, Yablonovoi, Stanovoi.

Plateaus

: Anatolia Plateau, Plateau of Iran, Plateau of Arabia, Plateau of Tibet, Tarim Basin, Plateau of Mongolia, Plateau of Yunnan, Decan Plateau.

Peninsulas

: Kamchatka Peninsula, Peninsula of Korea, Peninsula of Indo-China, Malay Peninsula, Indian Peninsula, Arabian Peninsula.

Deserts

: Arabian Desert, Thar Desert, Gobi Desert.

Rivers

: Euphrates, Tigris, Indus, Ganga, Brahmaputra, Hwang-Ho, Yang-Tse, Si-Kiang, Amur, Lena, Yenisei, Ob, Irrawaddy, Salween, Mekong.

Important cities

: Aden, Karachi, New Delhi, Mumbai, Kolkata, Colombo, Yangon (former Rangoon), Kuala Lumpur, Bangkok, Ho Chi Minh City (former Saigon), Singapore, Manila, Guangzhou (former Canton), Hong Kong, Shanghai, Tokyo.

Facts about Africa

Latitude : 35° S and 37° N

Longitude : 50° E and 17° W

Population : 1,136 million (mid-2014) [15.69% of world population]

Area : 30,065,000 sq km (approx. 20.3% of the world).

Oceans and Seas : Indian Ocean, Red Sea, Atlantic Ocean, Gulf of Guinea, Mediterranean Sea.

Highest and Lowest Points

: Kilimanjaro (5,895 m.) and Lake Assai (-156.1 m) respectively.

Straits : Strait of Bab-el-Mandeb, Straits of Gibraltar.

Lakes : Victoria, Tanganyika, Malawi, Chad, Rudolf, Albert.

Islands : Madagascar, Cape Verde Islands, The Comoros, Mauritius, Seychelles.

Mountains : Atlas, Drakensberg, Kilimanjaro.

Plateaus : Plateau of Africa – the entire continent is a plateau.

Deserts : Sahara, Kalahari, Namib.

Facts about North America

North America, northern continent of Western Hemisphere, comprising U.S.A., Canada, Central America, lower range in east and central plains. Climate varies considerably owing to wide range of latitude and altitude.

Latitude : 7° N and 84° N

Longitude : 20° W and 180° W

Area : 24,235,280 sq. km (approx. 16.5% of the world)

Population : 353 million (mid-2014) [4.88% of world population]

Major Deserts**Major Lakes****Major Rivers****Oceans and Seas****Coastline****Highest and Lowest Points****Straits****Mountains****Plateaus****Agriculture****Minerals****Industries****Important cities****Climate****Facts about Latin America, Caribbean**

Latitude : 12° N and 55° N

Longitude : 35° W and 81° W

Area : 17,820,770 sq. km (approx. 12% of the world).

Population : 618 million (mid-2014) [8.54% of world population]

Oceans and Seas : Atlantic Ocean, Pacific Ocean, Caribbean Sea.

Highest and Lowest Points : Aconcagua (6,960 m) and Valdes Penin (-39.9 m) respectively.

Straits : Straits of Magellan

Lakes : Lake Maracaibo, Lake Titicaca

Islands : Galapagos, Falkland, Tierra del Fuego

Mountains : Andes

: Chihuahuan, Colorado, Mojave, Sonoran.

: Lake Superior (largest sweet water lake in the world), Huron, Michigan, Great Slave, Great Bear, Erie, Ontario etc.

: Mississippi, Missouri, St. Lawrence, Mackenzie, Colorado, Hudson, Potomac, Ohio etc.

: Atlantic Ocean, Pacific Ocean, Arctic Ocean, Gulf of Mexico, Caribbean Sea, Gulf of California, Gulf of Alaska, Bering Sea, Hudson Bay.

: Canada has the largest coastline (2,02,080 km) in the world.

: McKinley (6,194 m) and Death Valley (-85.9 m) respectively.

: Bering Strait.

: Greenland, Baffin, Victoria, Newfoundland, Cuba, Jamaica, Haiti.

: Rockies, Appalachians, Brooks, Kuskokwim, Alaska Range, Cascade Range, Coastal Range, Sierra Nevada, Sierra Madre etc.

: Columbia Plateau, Colorado Plateau, Mexican Plateau, Canadian Shield.

: Temperate and tropical products, cereals, tobacco, sugarbeet, potatoes etc.

: Coal, petroleum, iron, manganese etc.

: Ship building, occupied formerly by Red Indians; now mainly by Whites with many Blacks in the south.

: New York, Washington D.C., Boston, Chicago, Dallas, Detroit, San Francisco, Los Angeles, Seattle, Montreal, Toronto, Vancouver, Mexico City, Havana, Kingston, Ottawa etc.

: Extending to within 10° of latitude of both the equator and the North Pole, North America has every climatic zone, from tropical rain forest and Savanna on the lowlands of Central America to areas of permanent ice cap, besides Sub-arctic and Tundra climates and arid as well as semi-arid zones.

Plateaus	: Plateau of Bolivia, Plateau of Ecuador.
Deserts	: Atacama, Pantagonia
Rivers	: Amazon, Orinoco, Paraguay, Parana, Uruguay
Important cities	: Buenos Aires, Rio de Janeiro, Montevideo, Quito, Santiago, La Paz, Lima, Bogota, Valparaiso, Sao Paulo, Belem, Caracas, Manaus.

Facts about Europe

Latitude	: 35° N and 73° N
Longitude	: 25° W and 65° E
Area	: 10,530,750 sq. km (approx.) (7.1%); greatest length north to south 3,860 km; breadth east to west 5,300 km.
Population	: 741 million (mid-2014) [10.24% of world population]
Oceans and Seas	: Atlantic Ocean, Arctic Ocean, Mediterranean Sea, Caspian Sea, Black Sea, White Sea, North Sea, Norwegian Sea, Baltic Sea, Gulf of Bothnia, Gulf of Finland, Bay of Biscay, Aegean Sea, Adriatic Sea.
Highest and Lowest Points	: Mt. Elbrus (5,642 m) and Caspian Sea (-28.0 m) respectively.
Straits	: Straits of Gibraltar
Lakes	: Lake Ladoga, Onega, Peipus, Vanern, Vaitern.
Islands	: British Isles, Iceland, Sardinia, Sicily, Crete.
Mountains	: Alps, Pyrenees, Appenines, Dinaric Alps, Carpathians, Transylvanian Mts., Balkans, Caucasus, Urals.
Plateaus	: Plateau of Bohemia, Plateau of Spain, Central Massif.
Rivers	: Volga, Danube, Rhine, Po, Dnieper, Don, Vistula, Elbe, Oder, Seine, Loire, Garrone, Douro, Tagus Ural.
Important cities	: London, Paris, Madrid, Antwerp, Amsterdam, Bonn, Moscow, Copenhagen, Oslo, Stockholm, Frankfurt, Berlin, Warsaw, Rome, Venice, Athens, Budapest, Belgrade, Munich, Prague, Vienna etc.

Facts about Australia

Australia is an island continent and a British Dominion. *Australia with New Zealand, Tasmania, New Guinea and the Pacific Islands (Micronesian, Melanesian and Polynesian Islands) is called Australasia by some geographers while some others call it 'Oceania', which includes proximate islands (Caribbean countries etc.). Oceania contains 39 million population which is 0.54% of total world population in 2014.*

Latitude	: 12° S and 38° S
Longitude	: 114° E and 154° E
Area	: 7,830,682 sq. km (approx. 5.3% of the world).
Population	: Oceania—39 million (mid-2014)
Oceans	: Pacific Ocean, Indian Ocean.

Seas	: Tasman Sea, Timor Sea, Arafura Sea, Gulf of Carpentaria, Coral Sea, Great Australian Bight.
Highest Point	: Puncak Jaya (4884 m) in island of New Guinea [Kosciuszko (2,228 m.) in Australian main land], Mt. Wilhelm (4509 m.) in Papua New Guinea.
Lowest Point	: Lake Eyre (-15.8 m)
Straits	: Bass Strait
Lakes	: Lake Eyre
Islands	: Tasmania
Mountains	: Great Dividing Range
Plateaus	: Western Plateau
Deserts	: Gibson Desert, Great Sandy Desert, Great Victoria Desert, Simpson Desert.
Important Cities	: Sydney, Melbourne, Adelaide, Brisbane, Darwin, Canberra, Hobart, Perth.

Oceans on The Earth

There are four oceans. In order of their size, they are : Pacific Ocean, Atlantic Ocean, Indian Ocean and Arctic Ocean.

Pacific Ocean

- > The explorer Ferdinand Magellan, who circumnavigated the Earth, named the ocean 'Pacific' meaning calm or peaceful.
- > The Pacific Ocean (Area : 166,240,000 sq. km) is the largest ocean of the world.
- > It is the deepest ocean with an average depth of 4,200 m.
- > The Mariana Trench is the world's deepest trench with a depth of 11,033 metres (36,201 feet).
- > Most of the islands of this ocean are of volcanic or coral origin.

Atlantic Ocean

- > The Atlantic Ocean (Area : 8,65,60,000 sq. km) is the second largest ocean in the world.
- > Its name is derived from Atlas, a Titan (giant) in Greek mythology.
- > The Atlantic Ocean has the longest coastline.
- > The Atlantic Ocean is the busiest ocean for trade and commerce since its shipping routes connect the two most industrialized regions, namely Western Europe and N.E. United States of America.

- > The Atlantic Ocean was formed millions of years ago when a rift opened up in the Gondwanaland and the continents of South America and Africa separated. The separation continues even today and the Atlantic Ocean is still widening.
- > The continental islands of Newfoundland and British Isles are the major ones.
- > Volcanic islands are fewer and they include those of Cuba, Jamaica and Puerto Rico. Iceland is the largest island of volcanic origin.

Indian Ocean

- > The Indian Ocean (Area : 73,430,000 sq. km) is the only ocean named after a country.

- The Indian Ocean is deeper than the Atlantic Ocean.
- It contains numerous continental islands, **Madagascar** and **Sri Lanka** are being the largest ones.
- Some of the islands of volcanic origin are those of **Mauritius**, **Andaman** and **Nicobar**, **Seychelles**, **Maldives** and **Lakshadweep** are of coral origin.

South Indian Ocean

- **Warm currents** : 1. South Equatorial 2. Mozambique 3. Madagascar 4. Agulhas.
- **Cool Currents** : 1. Antarctic drift 2. West Australian currents.

Arctic Ocean

- The Arctic Ocean (Area : 1,32,30,000 sq. km) is the **smallest** of all the oceans.
- It lies within the Arctic Circle, hence the name Arctic Ocean.
- The **North Pole** lies in the middle of the Arctic Ocean.
- Most of the parts of Arctic Ocean **remains frozen** with thick ice for most of the days every year.
- It is the **shallowest** of all oceans, with an average depth of 1,500 m.
- It has the least salinity of all the oceans. It has a salinity of 20 unit per thousand.

Ocean Currents

- The flow of a large amount of water in a definite direction with a great intensity is known as Ocean Current.
- Ocean Currents are of two types—Hot and Cold.

Hot Currents

- The currents flowing from tropical zones of lower latitudes to higher temperate and sub polar zones are known as hot water currents.

Cold Currents

- The currents flowing from higher latitudes to lower latitudes are known as cold water currents.
- The only exception to the conduction of ocean currents is found in the Indian Ocean. The flow of currents changes here with a change in the direction of the Monsoon Winds. The hot currents flow towards cooler oceans and the cold currents flow towards the warmer oceans.

Biosphere

- The part of the Earth where life exists is called the **Biosphere** ('bios' means 'life').
- The Earth is the only planet of the solar system that supports life. Life is possible because of its unique lithosphere, hydrosphere and atmosphere.

Lithosphere

- The uppermost layer of the Earth's crust which is capable of supporting life is called **Lithosphere**.
- The Lithosphere (or land) covers two-sevenths or 29.22% (14,90,41,182 sq. km) of the total surface area of the earth.

Hydrosphere

- Hydrosphere (or sea) covers five-sevenths or more accurately 70.78% (36,10,59,226 sq. km) of the total surface area of the earth.

- Water is freely available in the gaseous, liquid and solid state.
- It is necessary for carrying out chemical reactions within the bodies of the living organisms.
- Water also dissolves and transports nutrients from the soil to the plants.
- It is used by plants for making food.

Latitude and Longitude

Any location on Earth is described by two numbers—its *latitude* and its *longitude*.

Latitude

On a globe of the Earth, lines of latitude are circles of different size. The longest is the equator, whose latitude is zero, while at the poles—at latitudes 90° north and 90° south (or -90°) the circles shrink to a point.

Longitude

On the globe, lines of constant longitude ('meridians') extend from pole to pole.

Every meridian must cross the equator. Since the equator is a circle, we can divide it—like any circle—into 360 degrees, and the longitude of a point is then the marked value of that division where its meridian meets the equator.

For historical reasons, the longitude (meridian) passing the old Royal Astronomical Observatory in *Greenwich, England*, is the one chosen as *zero longitude*. Located at the eastern edge of London, the British capital, the observatory is now a public museum and a *brass band* stretching across its yard marks the '*prime meridian*'.

A line of longitude is also called a *meridian*, derived from the Latin, from *meri*, a variation of '*medius*' which denotes '*middle*', and *diem*, meaning '*day*'. The word once meant "noon", and times of the day before noon were known as '*ante meridian*', while times after it were '*post meridian*'. Today's abbreviations *a.m.* and *p.m.* come from these terms, and the Sun at noon was said to be "*passing meridian*". All points on the same line of longitude experienced noon (and any other hour) at the same time and were therefore said to be on the same "*meridian line*".

Local Time (LT) and Time Zones

Two important concepts, related to latitude and (especially) longitude are Local Time (LT) and Universal Time (UT).

Longitudes are measured from zero to 180° east and 180° west (or -180°), and both 180-degree longitudes share the same line, in the middle of the Pacific Ocean.

As the Earth rotates around its axis, at any moment one line of longitude "the noon meridian" faces the Sun, and at that moment, it will be noon everywhere on it. After 24 hours the Earth has undergone a full rotation with respect to the Sun, and the same meridian again faces noon. Thus each hour the Earth rotates by $360/24 = 15$ degrees.

The Date Line and Universal Time (UT)

Longitude determines only the hour of the day—not the date, which is



determined separately. The international date line has been established—most of it following the 180th meridian—where by common agreement, whenever we cross it the date advances one day (going west) or goes back one day (going east).

That line passes the *Bering Strait* between Alaska and Siberia, which thus have different dates, but for most of its course it runs in mid-ocean and does not inconvenience any local time keeping.

Astronomers, astronauts and people dealing with satellite data may need a time schedule which is the same everywhere, not tied to a locality or time zone. The *Greenwich Mean Time*, the astronomical time at Greenwich (averaged over the year) is generally used here. It is sometimes called Universal Time (UT).

Heat Zones of The Earth

Torrid Zone

- This is also referred to as Tropical zone. The Tropics is a region on the Earth surrounding Equator by the Tropic of Cancer in the northern hemisphere at $23^{\circ}26'16''$ N (approx.) and the Tropic of Capricorn in the southern hemisphere at $23^{\circ}26'16''$ S (approx.). The Tropics include all the areas on the Earth where the sun reaches a point directly overhead at least once in a year.
- This area receives **maximum heat** and is called the **Torrid (hot) Zone**.

Frigid Zone

- Near the polar regions, the rays of the Sun are very slanting and so it is **very cold**.
- The region/area between the Arctic Circle and the North Pole in the Northern Hemisphere is called the **Frigid zone**.
- There are similar regions in the Southern Hemisphere between the Antarctic Circle and the South Pole, also called the Frigid Zone (frigid means cold).

Rotation of the Earth

- The Earth spins (rotates), west to east on its axis once in 24 hours approximately.
- The Earth's axis is not vertical. It makes an angle of $23^{\circ}30'$ with the vertical or $66^{\circ}30'$ with the plane of the Earth's orbit.
- The Earth's axis always remains pointed in the same direction (towards the Pole Star) as the Earth moves around the Sun. The tilt of the Earth's axis is known as the **inclination of the Earth's axis**.
- Movements of tides are mostly determined by rotation of the Earth.

Effect of the Tilted Axis on Day and Night

- Rotation of the Earth on its tilted axis causes days and nights to be of different length in different parts of the Earth.
- Since the Earth's axis is tilted in the same direction, the orientation of the Earth's axis to the Sun's rays is constantly changing as the Earth moves around the Sun. This results in a continuous change in the length of days and nights throughout the year.

Perihelion

- The position of the earth or any other planet in its orbit when it is at its nearest point to the sun.
- The earth reaches its perihelion about 3rd January at a distance of about 147 million kilometer near one extremity of the major axis of the earth's elliptical orbit, the axis being called Apsides line.

Aphelion

- The position of the earth or any other planet in its orbit when it is at its distant point from the sun.
- The earth reaches its aphelion on 4th July when the earth is at a distance of 152 million kilometer near the other extremity of the major axis.

Solstice

- Solstice is one of the two dates in the year on which the sun reaches greatest altitude north or south of the equator and is directly overhead along one of the lines of the tropics.

Summer Solstice

- On June 21, the earth is so located in its orbit that the sun is overhead on the Tropic of Cancer ($23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ N).
- On this date the northern hemisphere is tipped towards the sun having the **longest day**; while the southern hemisphere is tipped away from the sun having the **shortest day**.

Winter Solstice

- On December 22, the earth is in an equivalent position on the opposite points in its orbit, so the southern hemisphere is tipped towards the sun and the northern hemisphere away from it.
- The sun is overhead on the Tropic of Capricorn ($23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ S), resulting in the **shortest day** in the northern hemisphere.

Equinoxes

- Two days in a year when day and night are equal throughout the world are equinoxes.
- Falling midway between the dates of solstices, on these dates, the earth's axis lies at 90° to the line joining the centres of the earth and the sun and neither the northern nor the southern hemisphere is inclined towards the sun.
- The '*vernal equinox*' occurs on **March 21** and it is also called the **spring equinox** in the northern hemisphere.
- The '*autumnal equinox*' occurs on **September 23**.

Midnight Sun

- This phenomenon is observed in the Arctic and Antarctic zones around mid-summer, when the sun does not sink below the horizon throughout 24 hours of the day and therefore, may be seen at midnight.
- This is the direct consequence of the inclination of the axis of the earth to the plane of the orbit.
- Norway is the **place of midnight sun** where the sun is continuously visible between May and July.
- In the southern hemisphere, the phenomenon is seen in the Antarctica continent.

Eclipses

- An Eclipse occurs when the sun, moon and earth are in a straight line.
- A '*solar eclipse*' occurs between sunrise and sunset on new moon when the moon passes directly in front of the sun so that its shadow lies on the earth. In other words, the moon lies between the sun and the earth.

Lucent's General Knowledge

- The 'lunar eclipse' takes place when the earth comes in between the sun and the moon so that the shadow of the earth is cast on the moon.
- A lunar eclipse takes place on a full moon.
- Generally a total of seven eclipses, including solar and lunar eclipses, take place every year.

Atmosphere

- The envelope of air that completely surrounds the earth is known as atmosphere.
- The atmosphere extends to about 1000 km from the surface of the earth. But 99% of the total mass of the atmosphere is found within 32 km.
- This is because the atmosphere is held by the gravitational pull of the earth.

Composition of the Atmosphere

1. Nitrogen	78%	2. Oxygen	21%	3. Argon	0.93%
4. Carbon dioxide	0.03%	5. Neon	0.0018%	6. Helium	0.0005%
7. Ozone	0.0006%	8. Hydrogen	0.00005%		

- Carbon dioxide is present in small quantity in the atmosphere.
- It is an important constituent of air because it has the ability to absorb heat and thus keep the atmosphere warm, thereby, balancing the heat of the earth.
- Water vapour is the most significant component of the atmosphere as far as its effect on weather is concerned although its quantity varies considerably from practically none (0) to up to about 4% by volume.
- Water vapour is the source of all clouds and precipitation (rain, hail storm etc). Water vapour, like carbon dioxide, has the ability to absorb heat energy. It also regulates the hydrological cycle.
- Dust intercepts and reflects incoming insolation.
- The polluted particles present in the air not only absorb larger amount of insolation but also greatly absorb the terrestrial radiation.
- Dust in the atmosphere contributes to the red and orange colour of sunrise and sunset.

Layers of the Atmosphere

There are five distinct layers of the atmosphere—(a) Troposphere, (b) Stratosphere, (c) Mesosphere, (d) Thermosphere and (e) Exosphere.

Troposphere

- This is the **first layer** of the atmosphere. It extends to a height of 18 km at the equator and 8 km at the poles.
- In this layer temperature decreases with height. This is due to the fact that the density of air decreases with height and so the heat absorbed is less. It contains more than 90% of gases in the atmosphere.
- Since most of the water vapour form clouds in this layer, all weather changes occur in the troposphere ('tropo' means 'change').
- The height at which the temperature stops decreasing is called tropopause. Here the temperature may be as low as -58°C .

Stratosphere

- This is the **second layer** of the atmosphere. It extends from the tropopause to about 50 km.

- Temperature increases due to the absorption of the **ultraviolet radiation** of the Sun by **ozone** present in this layer. The temperature slowly increases to 4°C .
- This layer is free from clouds and associated weather phenomena. Hence, it provides ideal flying conditions for large jet planes.
- At about 50 km the temperature begins to fall again. This marks the end of the stratosphere. The end of the stratosphere is called the **stratopause**.

Mesosphere

- Above the stratosphere lies the mesosphere.
- The mesosphere extends to a height of 80 km.
- Here the temperature decreases again, falling as low as -90°C .
- The end of this layer is known as the **mesopause**.

Thermosphere

- The thermosphere lies above the mesosphere.
- This layer extends to a height of about 640 km.
- In this layer temperature rises dramatically, reaching upto 1480°C .
- This increase in temperature is due to the fact that the gas molecules in this layer absorb the **X-rays** and **ultraviolet radiation** of the Sun.
- This results in the break up of the gas molecules into **positively and negatively charged particles or ions**. Thus, this layer is also known as the **ionosphere**.
- The electrically charged gas molecules of the thermosphere reflect radio waves from the Earth back into space. Thus, this layer also helps in long distance communications.
- The thermosphere also protects us from meteors and obsolete satellites, because its high temperature burns up nearly all the debris coming towards the Earth.

Exosphere

- This layer lies above the thermosphere.
- The exosphere extends beyond the thermosphere upto 960 km.
- It gradually merges with interplanetary space.
- The temperatures in this layer range from about 300°C to 1650°C .
- This layer contains only traces of gases like oxygen, nitrogen, argon and helium because the lack of gravity allows the gas molecules to escape easily into space.

How the Sun Creates Energy

- **Hydrogen** and **helium** are the predominant gases that constitute the **Sun**. The proportion of hydrogen to helium is 3 : 1.
- The core of the Sun acts like a gigantic nuclear reactor and converts huge quantity of hydrogen into helium. In this process of **nuclear fusion**, the Sun releases tremendous amount of energy in all directions.
- The Sun radiates energy (both heat and light) in all directions.
- Because of its small size in relation to the Sun, the Earth intercepts only a small part of the Sun's radiant energy.
- Solar radiations are the primary source of heat and light to the Earth.

Insolation

- The incoming solar radiation (energy intercepted by the Earth) is known as **insolation** and it is received in the form of short waves.

Terrestrial Radiation

- > The Sun's energy absorbed by the Earth's surface when radiated out into space is called **terrestrial radiation**.

Weather and Climate

- > **Weather** is the description of the atmospheric conditions of a particular place at a particular time for a short period of time.
- > **Climate** is the composite or integrated picture of the weather conditions over a long period of time.
- > **Climatic data** is based on calculated averages of data recorded over a period of 35 years. The classical period is 30 years, as defined by WMO.

Atmospheric Pressure

- > Atmospheric pressure is the pressure at any point on the surface of the Earth due to the weight of the column of air above that point.
- > Standard sea level pressure is 76 cm or 29.92 inches on this scale.
- > Another pressure unit used by meteorologists in drawing weather charts is millibars (mb).
- > One bar is divided into 1000 millibars. Millibars are now known as **hectopascals**.

Winds

- > Wind is the movement of air caused by the uneven heating of the Earth by the Sun.
- > Sometimes wind blows gently, refreshing us. At other times, it blows strongly creating storms that cause widespread damages.
- > We need measurements of two quantities : direction and speed, to give a description of the wind.

Trade Winds

- > They blow from the Sub-tropical High Pressure Belt to the Equatorial Low Pressure Belt in the tropics between 30° North and 30° South latitudes.
- > They blow as the **N.E. Trades** in the Northern Hemisphere and as the **S.E. Trades** in the Southern Hemisphere.
- > The name '**Trade**' is derived from a nautical expression 'to blow tread' meaning to blow along a regular path or 'tread'.

Westerlies

- > They blow from the Sub-tropical high Pressure Belt to the Sub-polar low Pressure Belt in the temperate latitudes between 30° and 60° , on either side of the Equator.
- > They are more constant and stronger in the Southern Hemisphere because there are **no large landmasses** to interrupt them.
- > In places they become so strong that these winds are known as the **Roaring Forties** or the **Brave West Winds** and the **Furious Fifties**.
- > The belts of the Westerlies move north and south following the Sun's movement. These are known as Westerlies because they blow out of the west.

Pressure Measuring Instruments

1. Mercurial Barometer (or Fortin's Barometer)
2. Aneroid Barometer
3. Altimeter or Altitude Barometer
4. Barograph (automatic recording Aneroid Barometer)
5. Microbarometer
6. Microbarovariograph

Wind Measurement Instruments

Windvane or Weather-cock measures the wind-direction.

Anemometer measures the wind velocity.

- Polar Winds**
- > They blow from the Polar High Pressure Belt to the Sub-polar Low Pressure Belt between latitudes 60° and the poles on both sides of the Equator.
 - > These winds blow from the east to form the **Polar Easterlies**.
 - > They are more regular in the Southern Hemisphere.
 - > Polar winds are extremely cold and dry.

Climatic Winds or Periodic Winds

- > These winds change their direction along with change in time or change in climate. **Land** and **sea breezes** and the **Monsoon winds** are typical examples of periodic winds.

Monsoon Winds

- > Monsoon winds are **seasonal winds** characterised by a complete reversal in their direction from one season to another.
- > They blow from the **sea to the land** in summer.
- > They blow from the **land to the sea** in winter.

Internal Structure of The Earth**The Earth's Crust**

- > The outermost solid cover or shell of the earth is known as the earth's **crust**.
- > The thickness of the crust is about 30 km.
- > It is thicker in the region of the continents and thinner in the region of the ocean floors.
- > The density of the rocks in the earth's crust ranges from 2.7 to 3 g/c.c (grams per cubic centimeter).
- > The upper part of the crust consists of silica and aluminium in greater proportions. That is why, it is called '**Sial**'.
- > Whereas the lower part of the crust is called '**Sima**' because the proportion of silica and magnesium is higher in this part.

Mantle

- > This layer lies below the crust.
- > Its thickness is about 2900 km and the density of substances in the mantle ranges from 3.0 to 4.7.

Core

- > The earth's **core** lies below the mantle. Its thickness may be about 3,471 km.
- > Its **radius** is 6,371 km., according to IUGG.
- > It is divided into two parts—the outer core and the inner core. The outer core is probably in a liquid state and the inner core in a solid state.
- > The core mainly consists of iron with some amount of nickel and sulphur (NIFE).
- > After the mantle, the earth's density goes on increasing rapidly towards its centre and finally is more than 13.
- > The temperature of the central part of the earth may be about 5000°C .
- > The study of the earth's interior helps us to understand the original rocks in the earth's crust and their later transformation.

Rocks

- The solid parts of the earth's crust are called rocks. Most of the rocks are made up of two or more minerals.
- In the same type of rocks, the proportions of minerals may be different in different areas.
- Rocks may not always necessarily be hard.
- Minerals are obtained from rocks.
- Rocks are classified in three main types depending on the process of their formation : (a) Igneous, (b) Sedimentary, (c) Metamorphic.

Igneous rocks

- Hot lava pours out at the time of volcanic eruptions and cools down later on, forming rocks.
- The molten materials known as magma, sometimes cool down beneath the earth's crust, again forming rocks.
- Both these types of rocks are known as Igneous rocks.
- When the earth's surface first became solid after it cooled down from its hot liquid state, the original rocks of the earth's crust were formed. They are the Primary Igneous rocks, which are usually not found today.
- Igneous rocks are generally harder and granular.
- There are no layers in Igneous rocks.
- Fossils are not found in Igneous rocks.
- The formation of Igneous rocks takes place beneath and above the surface of the earth.
- Rocks formed by the cooling of molten matter beneath the earth's surface are called intrusive igneous rocks. 'Granite' and 'Gabbro' are the main examples of these rocks.
- The intrusive rocks are thus crystalline rocks.
- Sometimes, the molten matter oozes out through cracks in the earth's crust and spreads on the surface, forming extrusive igneous rocks.
- Gabbro, Obsidian, Basalt etc are examples of extrusive igneous rocks.
- A very large area of the Deccan Plateau consists of basalt rocks.
- These rocks contain silica from 40 to 80%, others are felspar, magnesium and iron etc.
- Other examples of Igneous rocks are—Granite, Pumic stone, Basalt and Gabbro.

Sedimentary rocks

- They are formed by the deposition, sedimentation and lithification of sediments over a long period of time.
- As layers over layers get deposited, over a period of time, unified sedimentary rocks are formed on account of the tremendous pressure exerted by the layers above.
- Sometimes the remains of plants, dead animals etc are found in the deposited material. Such fossil containing sedimentary rocks are useful for studying life on earth.

Igneous rocks	Metamorphic rocks
Granite	Gneiss
Gabbro	Serpentine

- Sandstone, limestone, shale are some examples of sedimentary rocks.
- Limestone is white as well as black.
- Sandstone is dull white, pink, bright red or sometimes black.

Metamorphic rocks

- The nature of igneous and sedimentary rocks changes due to the effects of tremendous heat or pressure, and new, transformed rocks, called metamorphic rocks, are formed.
- Minerals in the rocks get restructured on account of heat and pressure. This brings about a change in the original formation of the rocks.

Some examples of metamorphic rocks formed from igneous and sedimentary rocks :

Type of rock	Original rock	Metamorphic rock	Type of rock	Original rock	Metamorphic rock
Igneous	granite	gneiss	Sedimentary	coal	graphite coal
Igneous	basalt	homblend	Sedimentary	sandstone	quartzite
Sedimentary	limestone	marble	Sedimentary	shale/clay	slate, mica schist

Earthquakes and Volcanoes**Earthquakes**

- The sudden tremors or shaking of the earth's crust is called an earthquake.
- When a part of the earth's surface moves backward and forward or up and down, the earth's surface 'quakes', and these are called the 'earthquake'.
- The earth's crust is made up of different parts of various sizes. They are called plates.
- Most of the earthquakes in the world are caused by the movements of the plates.
- 'Seismology' is the special branch of Geology. It deals with the study of earthquake.
- 'Richter scale' and 'Mercalli scale' are the instruments to measure/ record the magnitude and the intensity of an earthquake respectively.

Seismic Waves

- The place where the seismic waves originate beneath the earth's surface is called the focus of the earthquake.
- The epicenter is that point on the ground surface which is closest to the focus.
- Seismic waves are recorded on the seismograph. Seismic waves are mainly of three types—1. Primary waves, 2. Secondary waves and 3. Surface or Long waves.

The earthquake zones in India

- The Indian plate is moving from south to north. That is why there are earthquakes in the Himalayan region.
- Earthquakes occur in Assam, Arunachal Pradesh, Nagaland, Tripura, Manipur, Mizoram, Andaman and Nicobar Islands, Jammu and Kashmir, the north-western region of Uttar Pradesh, the northern region of Bihar etc.

Sedimentary rocks Metamorphic rocks

Limestone	Marble
Sandstone	Quartzite
Shale/clay	Slate, Phyllite, Schist
Coal	Diamond

- Quartzite is a hard, non foliated metamorphic rock which was originally pure quartz sandstone. Sandstone is converted into quartzite through heating and pressure usually related to tectonic compression within orogenic belts.

- During the last few years, there have been several earthquakes of varying intensities in Maharashtra and Gujarat.

Volcanic Activity

- Magma or molten rock is formed beneath the ground surface due to various reasons.
- This molten rock ruptures the ground and pours out. Sometimes, it cools down beneath the ground surface instead of pouring out.
- All these activities are called **volcanic activities**.
- Volcanic activities have been taking place since times immemorial.
- There are three types of Volcanoes :
 1. Active Volcanoes
 2. Dormant Volcanoes
 3. Extinct Volcanoes

Volcanic eruptions

- The pouring out of the magma or molten rock through ground surface is called a **volcanic eruption**.
- At the time of eruption, the magma, steam, fragments of rock, dust and gaseous substances are ejected with great force from under the ground surface through a pipe like passage.
- The opening of this pipe on the earth's surface is known as the **vent** which forms a **crater**.
- The **lava** which is thrown into the sky during an eruption, falls to the ground in the form of solid fragments. Dark clouds gather in the sky and it begins to rain heavily.
- The volcanic ash and dust mixes with the rainwater giving rise to hot mud flows.

Types of Volcanic Eruptions

- Volcanic eruptions are classified into two types depending on the manner of ejection of the magma : 1. Central eruption, 2. Fissure eruption.

Central eruption

- This type of eruption is sometimes very explosive, because lava, steam, gas, dust, smoke, stone fragments are ejected from a narrow pipe from under the ground with greater intensity. This type of eruption gives rise to conical or dome-shaped hills.

Some examples of volcanic mountains formed due to central eruption are **Mt. Kilimanjaro** in Africa, the **Fujiyama** in Japan and the **Vesuvius** and **Mount Etna** in Italy.

- It is basically poured acidic lava.

Fissure eruption

- A very long fissure (cracks) develops in the ground surface and so, the molten rock, rock fragments, steam and gases within, pour out slowly.
- These eruptions take place at a very slow speed. Since this lava is more fluid, it spreads over longer distances.
- The lava cools down on the ground over a period of time, increasing the thickness of the surface in that area. **Basalt plateaus** are formed due to these eruptions.

- Basalt plateaus are also found in Brazil in South America and Saudi Arabia in West Asia and Deccan plateau in India.
- In Maharashtra, the fertile black **regur soil** has been formed from basalt rocks. It is also called **black cotton soil**.

Various Landforms

Mainly there are three types of landforms—Mountains, Plateaus, Plains.

Mountains

The height of mountains are over 600 m and have conical peaks. On the basis of origin there are four types of mountains : Block Mountains, Residual Mountains, Accumulated Mountains and Fold Mountains.

Block Mountains

- The middle part of such mountains is lower and the parts on both the sides are higher. The middle lower portion is called as **Rift valley**. The longest rift valley is the valley of the Jordan river.
- Black Forest (Germany), Vindhya and Satpura (India), Salt Range (Pakistan) are some examples of block mountains.

Residual Mountains

- Such mountains are formed as a result of weathering. Examples—Aravalli, Nilgiri, Paraspath, Hills of Rajmahal (India), Sierra (Spain).

Accumulated Mountains

- These are formed due to accumulation of sand, soil, rocks, lava etc on the Earth's Crust, e.g. Sand Dunes.

Fold Mountains

- These are formed because of the folds in the rocks due to internal motions of the earth. These are wavelike mountains which have numerous peaks and lows, e.g. Himalayas, Ural, Alps, Rockies, Andes etc.

Plateaus

- Plateaus are extensive upland areas characterised by flat and rough top surface and steep walls which rise above the neighbouring ground surface at least for 300 m.
- Generally the height of plateau ranges from 300 to 500 feet.

Intermountainous Plateaus : Plateaus formed between mountain, Example—Tibetan Plateau,

Mountainstep Plateaus : The flat region between plain and the base of a mountain.

Continental Plateaus : These are formed when the latolith inside the Earth comes to the surface due to weathering, e.g. the Southern Plateau

Bank Plateaus : These are the plateaus on the banks of the oceans.

Domelike Plateaus : These are formed due to the movement of man and animals on the surface, e.g. Ramgarh Plateau.

Some plateaus having more than average height

Tibetan Plateau	16,000 ft
-----------------	-----------

Bolivian Plateau	11,800 ft
------------------	-----------

Columbian Plateau	7,800 ft
-------------------	----------

Plains can be defined as flat areas with low height (below 500 ft.)

Weathered Plains: The plains formed due to weathering by rivers, glaciars, winds etc.

Loess Plains: These are formed by the soil and sands brought by winds.

Karst Plains: Plains formed due to the weathering of limestone.

Erosional Plains: Plains near the river banks formed by river erosion.

Glacial Plains: Marshy plains formed due to the deposition of ice.

Desert Plains: These are formed as a result of the flow of rivers.

Deposition Plains: Large plains are formed due to the silt brought by the rivers. Such plains are plains of Ganga, Sutlej, Mississippi, Hwang-Ho.

Forests

They are of the following types :

- Tropical Evergreen Rain Forests**: Such forests are found in the equatorial and the tropical regions with more than 200 cms annual rainfall. The leaves of trees in such forests are very wide. Ex-Red wood, palm etc.
- Tropical Semi Deciduous Forests**: Such forests receive rainfall less than 150 cms. Saagwan, saal, bamboo etc are found in such forests.
- Temperate mixed Forests**: Such forests are a mixture of trees and shrubs. Cork, Oak etc are the major trees of these forests.
- Coniferous Forests or Taiga**: These are evergreen forests. The trees, in these forests, have straight trunk, conical shape with relatively short branches and small needlelike leaves. Example-Pine, Fir etc.
- Tundra Forests**: Such forests are covered with snow. Only Mosses, a few sladges and Lichens grow here in the summers. This type of vegetation is chiefly confined to the northern hemisphere (e.g. in Eurasia, North America and Greenland Coast).
- Mountainous Forests**: Vegetation varies according to altitude.

Pastures (or Grasslands)

They can be divided into two types :

- I Tropical Pastures and (ii) Temperate Pastures

Tropical Pastures: They have different names in different countries. Savanna in Africa, Campos in Brazil, Lanos in Venezuela and Columbia.

Temperate Pastures: They are known by the following names—Prairies in USA and Canada, Pampas in Argentina, Veld in South Africa, Rangelands or Downs in Australia and New Zealand, Steppes in Eurasia (Ukraine, Russia).

Land forms created by the river system

V-shaped valley

- A river flows with a greater velocity in the mountainous region and big pointed fragments of rock also flow with a great speed along with the water.
- The river bed is scoured and down cutting starts, ultimately giving rise to a deep valley with steep sides. This valley is called a v-shaped valley.
- These valleys are found in mountainous regions.
- A deep and narrow valley with steep sides is called a **gorge**.
- The gorge of the river Ulhas in Thane district in Maharashtra and the gorge of the river Narmada at Bhedaghat near Jabalpur in Madhya Pradesh are well known.
- There are many gorges in the Himalayas.

Waterfall

- If there are both hard (resistant) and soft (less resistant) rocks in the course of the river, the less resistant rock is eroded faster.
- The resistant rock does not erode so easily. That is why, the river falls with a great speed from a cliff-like part of hard rock. This is called a waterfall.
- The **Niagara Falls** on the Niagara river is in North America.

Potholes

- In areas where the river bed consists of hard rock, the stones carried along with the river water due to the whirling impact of water.
- That is why holes of various shapes are formed in the rocky river bed. Such holes are called **potholes**.
- Many potholes are observed in the river bed of the Kukadi, Krishna, Godavari etc. in Maharashtra.

Meanders and ox-bow lakes

- Meanders are formed by lateral erosion. As the erosion increases over a period of time, the meanders in the river again starts flowing in a straight line.
- The loop previously formed then separates from the main course of the river.
- Water accumulates in this separated part.
- As this loop resembles an ox-bow it is called ox-bow lake. It is formed due to impounding of water in the abandoned meander loop.

Fan-shaped plains

- In the region near the source of a river the tributaries joining the main river deposit materials carried by them on the banks of the main river.
- This deposition creates fan-like plains. They are called **fan-shaped** plains or alluvial fans.

Flood plains

- When, during the floods, the river-water overflows its banks and spreads in the surrounding areas, the silt carried by the water gets deposited in those areas. This creates flat plains on both the banks of the river. Plains created by this depositional work done during floods are called **flood plains**.
- The Gangetic Plain is a flood plain.

Natural levees

- When a river is over flooded, its water crosses its banks. At that time, the speed of the water is reduced, and the pebbles and stones carried by the river get deposited near the banks.
- On account of frequent floods, the area where these sediments are deposited near the bank of the river rises higher than the flood plain.
- This high wall is called a **natural levee** or natural embankment.
- Such levees are found on the banks of the Mississippi, the Huang-Ho etc., Southern bank of river Ganga.

Delta

- Delta was coined by Herodotus (the 'Father of History') after the Greek letter delta (Δ) because of the deltoid shape at the mouth of the Nile.
- A delta is a land form that is formed at the mouth of a river where that river flows into an ocean, sea, estuary, lake, reservoir, flat arid area or another river.

- Deltas are formed from the deposition of the sediment carried by the river as the flow leaves the mouth of the river. Over long periods of time, this deposition builds the characteristic geographic pattern of a river delta.

Delta region

- A river meets a sea or a lake. The silt carried by the river is deposited on the bed near its mouth.
- The area near the mouth of the river gets gradually filled up by this deposition and gets raised causing an obstruction for the river to flow in a single channel. It, therefore, splits into two branches and meets the sea.
- Over a period of time, there is deposition also at the mouth of these branches. In this manner, the main course of the river gets split into a network of small channels. These sub-channels are called **distributaries**.
- A triangular region of innumerable such distributaries is formed near the mouth of the river. This region is called the **delta region**.
- There are delta regions near the vent (opening) of the rivers Godavari, Ganga, Nile, Mississippi etc. Deltas are very fertile.
- The largest delta of the world is 'Ganges Delta' / 'Sunderbans Delta' (350 km).

Glacier

- A mass of ice sliding down the slope from a snow-clad region is called a glacier. On an average a glacier moves 1 to 15 metres a day.
- While a glacier is moving, the friction of the ice at the bottom slows down the movement of the bottom layers.
- There are two main types of glaciers : 1. Continental Glacier and 2. Alpine Glacier.

Continental Glacier

- An extensive sheet of ice spreading across a vast region sometimes begins to move due to the pressure of the ice.
- This moving sheet of ice is called a **continental glacier**.
- Such glaciers are seen in Antarctica and Greenland.

Alpine or mountain glacier

- There are snow-fields in the mountainous regions of the Himalayas, the Alps, the Andes, the Rocky mountains etc.
- The ice accumulating in these areas starts sliding down the slopes.
- This mass of ice sliding down from the mountains is called a **mountain glacier** or an **alpine glacier**.

Iceberg

- Blocks of ice break off from the continental glaciers and float away into the sea.
- A block of ice floating in the sea is called an **iceberg**. These icebergs are huge in size.

Land forms created by the actions of river

Erosion	Erosion Deposition	Deposition
V-shaped valley	Meanders	Fan-shaped plains
Gorge	Ox-bow	Flood Plains
Potholes	Lakes	Delta
Waterfall		Natural Levees

- The density of ice being slightly less than that of water, a very little portion of an iceberg is seen above the water and the rest of it is submerged under water.
- **Land forms of glaciation**
- Various land forms are created on account of the transportation, erosion and depositional work of a glacier. Let us consider the major land forms thus created.

Cirque

- When the snow from the mountain peaks slides, it gets deposited in a hollow, if there is one on any side of the peak.
- The accumulated snow starts sliding down the slope. This causes friction at the floor and at the sides of the hollow, thus enlarging it further. This is called a **cirque**.
- The back wall of a cirque is like a high cliff and the floor is concave and huge in size. The total shape resembles an armchair.
- When a glacier melts completely, water accumulates in the cirque and forms a lake which is known as **tarn**.

Fjord

- Where the lower end of the trough is drowned by the sea it forms a deep steep-side inlet called '**Fjord**' as on the Norwegian and South Chilean Coasts.

U-shaped valley

- When a glacier is flowing through a valley in a mountainous region, the sides of the valley get eroded. Ice causes friction on the sides of the valley.
- As the erosion of the sides is greater than that of the floor, a valley is formed with vertical sides and a wide floor. This valley is called a **U-shaped valley**.

Hanging valley

- In the mountainous region, many tributaries join the main glacier.
- The quantity of ice in a tributary is comparatively smaller. Hence, it causes less friction.
- The valley of a tributary is at a higher level than a valley of the main glacier, the valley of the tributary appears to be hanging. That is why, such a valley is called a **hanging valley**.

Moraine

- The material transported and deposited by a glacier is known as **moraine**.
- Moraines are made up of pieces of rocks that are shattered by frost action and are brought down the valley.
- Moraines are of the following types : 1. lateral moraine, 2. medial moraine, 3. terminal moraine and 4. ground moraines.
- After a glacier has melted, different land forms of deposition are seen.
- The oval-shaped hills of lesser height are called **drumlins**.
- Zig-zag hills, with many steep slopes, made up of long stretches of sand and gravel are called **eskers**.
- **Land forms created by the action of wind**
- **Mushroom rock**
- The wind blowing in desert regions erodes the rock near the ground surface

to a great extent. At the same time, the upper part of the rock gets eroded to a lesser extent.

- > As this is a continuous process, the foot of the rock becomes narrow.
- > The top portion of the rock then looks like an umbrella. This land form is called a **mushroom rock**.

Sand dunes

- > Sand gets transported from one place to another along with the wind.
- > At a spot where the wind meets an obstruction or where the speed of the wind reduces, dunes are formed out of the sand which gets deposited.
- > The side of the dune facing the wind has a gentle slope and the opposite side has a steep slope.
- > Because of the slow speed of the wind, the sand on the gentle slope gets carried to the top and comes down the steep slope on the other side. Sand dunes gradually move forward in this manner.

Barkhan

- > The fine sand particles carried by the wind get deposited when the speed of the wind is reduced forming crescent shaped dunes. Such hills are called **barkhans**.

Loess

- > Loess is a soil finer than sand.
- > Loess is a silt transported by the wind from the desert regions and deposited much further way.
- > Loess transported from the desert regions of Central Asia has been deposited in layers in China. The plain they form is known as the **Loess plain**.

Groundwater

- > Some water from the rainfall received on the earth's surface seeps through the ground.
- > This water trickles down until it reaches an impervious rock.
- > Water accumulated under the ground surface in this manner, is called **ground water**.
- > Some rocks on the earth's surface are porous and some have cracks or joints. Water seeps in through these pores or joints.
- > Groundwater gushes out in the form of **springs**.

Land forms created by the actions of groundwater

- > Water on the ground surface seeps through limestone. Some portion of the limestone dissolves in that water. If this process takes place continuously, it makes holes in these rocks.
- > As this process continues over a number of years, these holes get enlarged. These holes are called **sink holes**.

Caves

- > In limestone region, water goes very deep through sink holes.
- > If there is a layer of impervious and hard rock underneath, water flows horizontally on the impervious rock instead of going deeper.
- > Hence, soft rocks get eroded and a **cave** is formed.

Solutes and stalagmites

Inside the cave created by groundwater under the ground surface in a limestone region, water is always seeping through the roof. This water contains calcium carbonate.

As the seeping water evaporates, some of the calcium carbonate it contains, is deposited on the cave's roof. This deposition continues to grow very slowly. Hence a column is seen growing from the roof towards the floor. It is called a **stalactite**.

The water dripping on the floor of the cave also evaporates leaving behind calcium carbonate which accumulates over a period of time.

A column then starts growing from the floor to the roof. This column which grows upwards is called a **stalagmite**.

Stalactites and stalagmites are observed in the Parner Taluka of Ahmadnagar district, in Bastar District in Chhattisgarh and also in the Karst region of former Yugoslavia now Serbia and Montenegro.

Land forms created by the actions of sea waves

Sea Cliff

- > The base of the rocks on the coast get eroded because of the impact of the ocean waves and notches develop in these rocks.
- > The crest of the rock overhangs the notch. These notches in the rocks gradually extend landwards over a period of time. Then the crest falls and a steep **cliff**, which has receded away from the sea is formed.

Sea cave

- > Rocks on the coast have many cracks. They become wider and wider with the impact of the waves, creating small caves. They are called sea caves.
- > Such sea cliffs and sea caves are observed at Shrivardhan, Ratnagiri, Malvan, Vengurle etc.

Beach

- > The fine sand and other material that flows along with the waves get deposited in a direction parallel to the sea coast.
- > This deposition of sand is called a **beach**.
- > There are extensive beaches in the coastal regions of the states of Maharashtra, Goa, Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Odisha and West Bengal in India and in other countries like Bangladesh and Canada.

Sand bar

- > A deposition of sand which results in a long, narrow embankment in the sea near the coast is called a **sand bar**.

Lagoon

- > A shallow lake is formed between the sand and the sea coast. It is called a **lagoon**. Such a lake is called **Kayal** in Kerala.

The Indian Subcontinent : Position, Extent and Physical Features

Location of the Sub Continent

- > Mainland of the Indian subcontinent, comprising India, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Nepal and Bhutan extends between 8°4'N and 37°6'N latitudes and between 68°7'E and 97°25'E longitudes.

- If the sixth country of this subcontinent Sri Lanka, is included, then it lies from 6°N latitude.
- The Tropic of Cancer (23½°N) passes through the middle of India.

Size and Extent of Subcontinent

- Total area of the Indian subcontinent is 44.9 lakh sq. km i.e. India 32,87,253 sq. km, Pakistan 7,96,095 sq. km, Bangladesh 1,48,393 sq. km, Nepal 1,47,161 sq. km., Bhutan 46,500 sq. km and Sri Lanka 65,610 sq. km From North to South this subcontinent stretches over 3,200 km and from east to west it is 3,000 km. 82°30'E meridian helps in calculating the Indian Standard Time (IST) which is 5 hours 30 minutes ahead of the Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).
- This very meridian (82½° E) dictates time in Sri Lanka and Nepal also.

Political Divisions of India

- India is divided into 29 States and 7 Union Territories.

Position and Extent of India and its Locational Advantage

- India forms part of the large continental land mass of Eurasia.
- It is located on one of the peninsulas of Southern Asia. The country extends from Kashmir in north to Kanyakumari in the south.
- The Arabian sea and the Bay of Bengal are situated on western and eastern side of peninsular India respectively.
- The latitudinal extent of the country is from 8°4' North to 37°6' North.
- The Tropic of Cancer (23½° N) which passes through the middle of the country measures from 68°7' E to 97°25'E. The location of the country is in the northern and the eastern hemispheres.
- The importance of location of India is that it is located on the world's major sea routes.
- Due to its location, India has maritime contacts with south-west Asia and Africa on the west and south-east Asia in the east. Its location has given India an advantage of the route of the Suez Canal for trade with North America and Europe.

Size of India (in terms of area and population)

- India is the **seventh largest country** (in terms of area) in the world.
- The area of India is about 3.28 million sq. km.
- The area of India is nearly equal to the area of the continent of Europe excluding Russia.
- India is eight times as large as Japan. India ranks as the **second largest country** in terms of population (next to China only).
- No continent of the world except Asia has a largest population than that of India.
- India contains about one-sixth of the total population of the world.

Physical Divisions of the Indian Subcontinent

- A chain of high mountains radiate out from the Pamir Knot which lies just in the north of India.
- In these mountains the Hindu Kush, the Sulaiman and the Kirthar in the east and the Himalayas in the west separate the Indian subcontinent from rest of Asia.

Indian subcontinent can be divided into following physical divisions:

- The Great Mountain Wall of the North
- The Great Northern Plains
- The Great Peninsular Plateau
- The Coastal Plains
- The Great Indian Desert
- The Island Groups

The Great Mountain wall of the North

- The Himalayas, the highest mountain wall of the world, are situated on the northern boundary of India like an arc.
- From west to east the Himalayas are 2500 km long. The average breadth of the Himalayas is between 250 to 400 km.
- Mount Everest, the highest peak in the world, lies in these mountains in Nepal.

Division of the Himalayas

- The Himalayas consist of three parallel mountain ranges : (i) The Greater Himalayas, (ii) The Lesser Himalayas and (iii) The Outer Himalayas.

The Greater Himalayas (or Himadri)

- This is the loftiest of the three ranges of Himalayas. Mount Everest lies in this range.
- These snow-covered mountains give birth to many glaciers.
- The Ganga originates from this glacier.

Location	Important Passes
Jammu & Kashmir	Burzi-La, Jogi-La
Himachal Pradesh	Bara-La, Cha-La, Shipki-La
Uttarakhand	Niti-La, Lipu-Lekh-La
Sikkim	Jelep-La, Nathu-La
Arunachal Pradesh	Bomdi-La

The Lesser Himalayas (or the Himachal Himalayas)

- South of the Greater Himalayas, the range also lies parallel to it from west to east. This ranges 60 to 80 km wide and its average height ranges between 3500 to 4500 metres.
- Tourist centres like Shimla, Mussorie and Nainital are situated in this range.

The Outer Himalayas (or Shiwaliks)

- This is the southernmost and the third parallel range of the Himalayas with an average height of 900 to 1200 metres.
- Its breadth is only 10 to 50 km. Shivalik range is broader in the west.

Heights of Major Mountain Peaks in India

Peaks	Elevation● (in mts.)	Peaks	Elevation● (in mts.)
Godwin Austin (K-2)	8,611*	Masher Brum ¹ (East)	7,821*
Kanchenjunga	8,586	Nanda Devi	7,817
Nanga Parbat	8,126*	Masher Brum (West)	7,806*
Gasher Brum	8,068*	Rakaposhi	7,788*
Broad Peak	8,051*	Kamet	7,756
Dasteghil Sar	7,885*	Saser Kangri	7,672

* Height in metres above mean sea level * Situated in Pak occupied Kashmir (PoK)

1. Masher Brum is also known as K-1

The Great Northern plains

- > The northern plains are divided into three sub-divisions. These are the Punjab and Haryana plains. The Ganga plains and the Brahmaputra valley.
- > The Ganga plains form the largest lowland drained by the Ganga and its tributaries.
- > The Yamuna is the most important tributary of the Ganga.
- > The Ghaghara, the Gandak, the Kosi and the Tista are other tributaries of the Ganga.
- > The Sone and the Damodar are tributaries of the Ganga while the Chambal and the Betwa are tributaries of the Yamuna from the peninsular plateau.
- > The Ganga plain has an extremely gentle slope. Parts of the plain are subject to floods in the rainy season. In the lower course, the Ganga divides itself into tributaries to form a large delta along with the Brahmaputra.
- > The Punjab and Haryana plains represent a part of the Indus basin.
- > A low watershed separates these plains from the Ganga plains.

The Great Pensinsular Plateau

- > Anamudi or Anaimudi (2,695 m) situated in Sahyadri range is the highest peak of the peninsula.
- > The Deccan plateau includes the area to the south of the Vindhya.
- > The western edge of the plateau rises steeply from the Arabian Sea to form the **Western Ghats** (which includes the **Sahyadri**).
- > The Deccan plateau slopes gently towards the east. The surface of the plateau is dissected into a rolling upland by a number of rivers.
- > The elevation ranges from 300 to 900 metres.
- > The eastern edge of the plateau is known as the **Eastern Ghats**.
- > The north-western region of the Deccan plateau is covered by nearly horizontal sheets of lava. This region is called '**Deccan trap region**'. The Deccan plateau is drained by many long east flowing rivers. These rivers originate in the Western Ghats, flow towards the east and enter the Bay of Bengal.
- > The Godavari, the Mahanadi, the Krishna and the Cauvery are the major rivers that have built deltas along the coast.
- > The Narmada and the Tapti rivers are west flowing.
- > Both the rivers enter the Arabian Sea along the Gujarat coast.
- > These rivers do not have deltas.

Major Plateaus : Marwar Upland, Central Highland, Bundelkhand, Malwa Plateau, Baghelkhand, Chhotanagpur Plateau (Hazaribagh Plateau, Ranchi Plateau, and Raj Mahal Hills), Meghalaya Plateau, Deccan Plateau, Maharashtra Plateau, Karnataka Plateau, Telangana Plateau, Chhattisgarh Plain.

The Coastal Plains

- > Narrow strips of flat land on eastern and western coasts are known as the **East Coastal Plain** and the **West Coastal Plain** respectively.

The West Coastal Plain

- > This plain which lies between the Arabian Sea and the Western Ghats spreads from Gujarat in the north to Kanyakumari in the south.

- > It is broader in the north and narrower in the south. This uneven plain has been dissected by many fast flowing rivers.
- > Its northern part from Gujarat to Goa is called **Konkan**, while southern part from Goa to Kanyakumari is known as **Malabar**. Several lagoons (salt water lakes separated from the main sea by sand bars and spits) are found on the coastal plain.
- > **Important ports** developed on its coast from north to south are : Kandla, Mumbai, New Jawahar Port Mumbai, Marmagao, Mangalore and Cochin.

The East Coastal Plain

- > This broader coastal plain spreads along the Bay of Bengal from Odisha in the north to Kanyakumari in the south.
- > Its northern part is known as Northern Circar plains and the southern part is called **Coromandal Coast**. Rivers like Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna and Cauvery form deltas on this plain.
- > This coast is famous for rice cultivation.
- > A large number of lagoons are also found here.
- > **Chilka** and **Pulicat lakes** are fine examples of **lagoons** on our east coast.

The Great Indian Desert

- > It lies to the west of the Aravali range.
- > It extends over major part of Rajasthan and Sindh in Pakistan.
- > This desert does not get much rain as the Aravali range runs parallel to the south-western monsoon winds.
- > It is in the rain shadow area of the Bay of Bengal current.
- > Lake Sambhar is found here.

The Island Groups

- > **Lakshadweep** is a group of 36 coral islands in the Arabian Sea.
- > It is located 300 km to the west of the coast of Kerala.
- > **Andaman** and **Nicobar** islands are a group of about 324 islands.
- > Most of these islands are uninhabited.
- > Andaman and Nicobar islands are separated by the **Ten Degree Channel** because 10°N latitude passes through this place.

Climatic Diversity in the Indian Subcontinent

- > Due to the vastness of the country and a variety of relief features there are regional variations in the climate of India.
- > The interior of the country, specially in the north, has a continental type of climate.
- > The coastal areas have a more equable climate. In mountainous areas, altitude determines the climate. There is a great deal of variation in the amount of annual rainfall.
- > In June, the highest temperature in Rajasthan may go up to 55°C. But, in Drass and Kargil the night temperature in January may go down to -45°C to -50°C.
- > Mawsynram and Cherrapunji in Meghalaya have an annual rainfall of 11,873 mm (467 in) and 11,430 mm (450 in) respectively. But, in the Thar Desert the annual rainfall is less than 500 mm (20 in)

- Along the Malabar Coast (Kerala) the annual range of temperature is about 3°C. But, it is 20°C in Hissar, Ambala and other parts of the interior.

Soil Resources of the Indian Sub-continent

Soil

- Soil forms the upper layer of the earth's crust capable of supporting life.
- It is made up of loose rock materials and humus.
- The soil forming processes are mainly influenced by the parent rock, climate, vegetation and animal life.

Importance of Soil Resources

- Soil is an extremely important resource, especially in agricultural countries like India, Pakistan and Bangladesh.
- Most food items, like rice, wheat, pulses, fruits and vegetables and much of our clothing are derived from the soil directly or indirectly.
- Soil also gives us firewood, timber, rubber, fibres, etc. Food like milk, meat and eggs are obtained indirectly from the soil. Flowers, grass, plants and trees are also grown out of soil.

Soil Erosion and its types

- Removal of top layer of soil when it is exposed to wind and rain, is easily blown or washed away. This condition is known as **soil erosion**.
- Basically, soil cover is removed by two powerful agents :
 - Running water and
 - Wind.

Types of Soil found in India

- Indian Council of Agricultural Research (ICAR) divides Indian soils into eight groups : (a) Alluvial soil (b) Black soil (c) Red soil (d) Laterites and Lateritic soil (e) Arid and Desert soil (f) Saline and Alkaline soil (g) Forest soil (h) Peaty and other organic soil. However, Indian soils are generally divided into four broad types : 1. Alluvial soils 2. Regur soils 3. Red soils and 4. Laterite soils.

Alluvial Soils

- This is the most important and widespread category. It covers 40% of the land area. In fact the entire Northern Plains are made up of these soils.
- They have been brought down and deposited by three great Himalayan rivers - Sutlej, Ganga and Brahmaputra and their tributaries.
- Through a narrow corridor in Rajasthan they extend to the plains of Gujarat.
- They are common in Eastern coastal plains and in the deltas of Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna and Cauveri.
- Crops Grown :** Suitable for Kharif & Rabi Crops like cereals, Cottons, Oilseeds and Sugarcane. The lower Ganga-Brahmaputra Valley is useful for jute cultivation.

Regur or Black Soils

- These soils are of volcanic origin. These soils are black in colour and are also known as **black soils**.
- Since, they are ideal for growing cotton, they are also called black **cotton soils**, in addition to their normal nomenclature of Regur soils.
- These soils are most typical of the Deccan trap (Basalt) region spread over north-west Deccan plateau and are made up of lava flows.

- They cover the plateaus of Maharashtra, Saurashtra, Malwa and southern Madhya Pradesh and extend eastward in the south along the Godavari and Krishna Valleys.

Crops Grown : Cotton, Jowar, Wheat, Sugarcane, Linseed, Gram, Fruit & Vegetable.

Red Soils

- Formed by weathering of crystalline and metamorphic mixture of clay and sand.
- These soils are developed on old crystalline Igneous rocks under moderate to heavy rainfall conditions.
- They are red in colour because of their high Iron-oxide (FeO) content.
- They are deficient in phosphoric acid, organic matter and nitrogenous material.
- Red soils cover the eastern part of the peninsular region comprising Chhotanagpur plateau, Odisha (Orissa), eastern Chhattisgarh, Telangana, the Nilgiris and Tamil Nadu plateau.
- They extend northwards in the west along the Konkan coast of Maharashtra.
- Crops Grown :** Wheat, Rice, Millets, Pulses.

Laterite Soils

- The Laterite soils are formed due to weathering of lateritic rocks in high temperatures and heavy rainfall with alternate dry and wet period.
- They are found along the edge of plateau in the east covering small parts of Tamil Nadu, Odisha and a small part of Chhotanagpur in the north and Meghalaya in the north-east.
- Laterite soils are red in colour with a high content of iron-oxides; poor in Nitrogen and Lime.
- Crops Grown :** Unsuitable for agriculture due to high content of acidity and inability to retain moisture.

Arid & Desert Soil

- Region :** NW India. Covers entire area of the west Aravallis in Rajasthan and parts of Haryana, Punjab & Gujarat.
- Characteristics :** Rich in Phosphates and Calcium but deficient in Nitrogen and humus.
- Crops Grown :** Fertile if irrigated e.g. Ganganagar area of Rajasthan (Wheat basket of Rajasthan).

Agriculture in India

- About 65-70% of the total population of the country is dependent on agriculture.
- Approximately 48.9% of our population derives its livelihood from agriculture.
- It provides food to the second biggest population and the biggest population of cattle in the world.
- Our agro-based industries are fully dependent on raw material provided by agriculture.
- Agriculture with its allied activities accounts for 45% of our national income.

Types of Agriculture in India :**Subsistence Farming**

- > In this type of agriculture, farmers work hard to grow enough food to support only.
- > In this type of farming the produce is consumed mainly by farmer and his family.
- > There remains no surplus to sell in the market.

Mixed Farming

- > The combination of agriculture and pastoral farming is called **Mixed Farming**.
- > In this type of farming, cultivation of crops and rearing of animals are done together on the same farm.

Jhum/Shifting Cultivation

- > This is a primitive form of agriculture, in which a plot of land is cultivated for a few years and then is deserted.
- > This slash and burn method of farming is carried on in jungles of north-eastern part of India e.g. in Assam, Meghalaya, Mizoram etc.
- > A plot of land is cleared for cultivation. As the yield decreases after two or three years, the plot is abandoned and a fresh clearing is made.

Extensive Farming

- > This is a system of farming in which the cultivator uses a limited amount of labour and capital on relatively large area.
- > This type of agriculture is practised in countries where population size is small and land is enough.
- > Here, per acre yield is low but overall production is in surplus due to less population.
- > Agriculture is done with the help of machines.

Intensive Farming

- > This is a system of farming in which the cultivator uses large amount of labour and capital on a relatively small area.
- > In countries where the size of population is big but land is less, this type of farming is done.
- > Annually two or three crops are grown due to the demand of food for the large size of population.
- > Agriculture is done with the help of manual labour.

Plantation Agriculture

- > In this type of agriculture, trees or bushes are planted on huge estates.
- > A single crop like rubber, sugarcane, coffee, tea or banana is grown.
- > These crops are major items of export.

Problems of Indian Agriculture

- > The low productivity of our agriculture is mainly due to the difficulties faced by our peasants.
- > Indian agriculture is chiefly of subsistence type where a large manual labour is employed to work on farms to grow just enough food for the needs of the family and very little is left for marketing.

- > A major part of the Indian soil has been impoverished because it has been under plough for the last 4000 or 5000 years.
- > Deforestation, overgrazing and heavy rainfall have led to soil erosion.
- > Divisions of land have led to fragmentation.
- > The size of land holding is very small and uneconomic.
- > The farmers are poor, illiterate and ignorant.
- > They use primitive tools and out dated method.
- > They lack financial credit and investment.
- > Good seeds, fertilizers and improved technology are not available to them.
- > They lack irrigation facilities and are still on the mercy of nature.
- > Most of the farmers have no security against crop failure or loss caused by nature.
- > Generally farmers are uneducated and have no scientific approaches.

Three Crop Seasons in India :

1. **Rabi**
- > This season starts after the rainy season. Sowing begins in September-October and harvesting takes place in February-March.
- > Wheat, barley, pulses and some oil seeds are grown in the Rabi season.

2. Kharif

- > The Kharif season begins with the onset of the monsoons in June-July.
- > The crop grows in the rainy season and harvesting takes place after the retreat of monsoon in September-October.
- > Rice, maize, millets, groundnuts, cotton and jute are grown in the Kharif season.

3. Zayad

- > This is the summer season for growing crops which remain till April, May and June.
- > Products are mainly vegetables and fruits.

Green Revolution

- > The increase in agriculture productivity of cereals that has taken place since the 1960s mainly as a result of introduction of high yielding varieties of wheat and rice and use of fertilizers, machines and irrigation etc., is known as **green revolution**.
- > Green revolution has made us self-sufficient in food production.
- > This has not only saved our much precious foreign exchange but has also made us self-reliant.
- > But green revolution has proved more beneficial to rich farmers only, because it involves a lot of investment.

Land use Pattern of India

Uses of land	Percentage (%)	Uses of land	Percentage (%)
Cultivated land	43.41	Wasteland (arid, rocky and sandy areas)	6.29
Forested area	22.57	Area under non-agricultural use	6.29
Fallow land	10.85	Cultivable waste	4.41
		Pastures and meadows	3.45

- The total geographical area of India is 32.88 crore hectares.
- Of this, data is available for only 92.5% land area. Though land is put to different uses, but cultivation of land is its most important use.

Water Resources and Their Utilization in India

- India has 4% of water resources of the world, while it has to support 16% of the world population and 15% of livestock.
- The annual precipitation including snowfall, which is the main source of water in the country, is estimated to be of the order of 4,000 Billion Cubic Metres (BCM).
- The estimated precipitation during the monsoon season (June to September) is of the order of 3,000 BCM.
- The resources potential of the country, which occurs as natural run off in the rivers is about 1869 BCM, considering both surface and ground water as one system.
- Water resources of India can be divided into two parts :
 - Surface Water Resources
 - Underground Water Resources

Surface Water Resources

- According to the estimate, India receives an average of 109 cm of rainfall annually.
- This rainfall amounts to 37,000 million cubic metre. Out of this, 12,500 million cubic metres evaporates and another 7,900 million cubic metres is absorbed by land. Only 16,600 million cubic metres water is available in our rivers.
- Out of this, only 6,600 million cubic metres of water can be used for irrigation.

Underground Water Resources

- Out of total rainfall, only 7,900 million cubic metres of water percolates inside/beneath the earth.
- Out of this, only 4,300 million cubic metres of water is able to reach the upper layer of the soil.
- This water is more important for agricultural production.
- Rest 3600 million cubic metres reaches the impervious rocks which can be used by digging wells or tubewells. Out of this only 2250 million cubic metres of water is economically viable.

Sources of Irrigation in India

	There are various sources of irrigation which are :
(a) Wells & Tubewells	46% of total irrigation
(b) Canals	39% of total irrigation
(c) Tanks	8% of total irrigation
(d) Other Sources	7% of total irrigation (Dongs, Kuhls, Springs etc.)

Power Resources of India

India uses a large amount of fossil fuels as a source of energy along with a number of renewable sources of energy, viz., hydroelectric power, thermal power, petroleum, nuclear or atomic power, solar energy, wind energy, tidal energy, bio-gas etc.

Multipurpose Projects of India

Multipurpose river valley projects, once referred by Jawahar Lal Nehru as 'Temples of Modern India', present an integrating system of controlling floods, generation of hydroelectricity, irrigation, development of fishery and tourists spots, boating, navigation and draining away extra water. These projects aim at all round development of river valleys.

Multipurpose River Valley Projects

Project/River	Purposes	Name of Power Houses
Bhakhra-Nangal Project On river Sutlej 518 m long, 226 m high	1. Irrigation, 2. Hydroelectricity generation, 3. Soil conservation	1. Bhakhra, 2. Ganguwal, 3. Nangal, 4. Kotla
Damodar Valley Project On river Damodar, located in West Bengal and Jharkhand	1. Irrigation, 2. Generation of Hydro and Thermal power, 3. Navigation, 4. Flood control (Damodar has turned from a 'Valley of Sorrow' to 'Valley of Plenty')	1. Maithon, 2. Tilaia, 3. Panchet Hill, 4. Bokaro, 5. Durgapur, 6. Chandrapura
Hirakud Project On Mahanadi river in Odisha; 4800 m long.	1. Irrigation, 2. Production of Hydel power, 3. Navigation for over 480 km.	1. Hirakud, 2. Chiplima
Tungabhadra Project At Malappuram on the river Tungabhadra, it is 2441 m long and 49.3 m high; in Andhra Pradesh and Karnataka.	1. Irrigation, 2. Generation of Hydro electricity	1. At Malappuram, 2. At Hampi, 3. On left side of Malappuram
Rihand Project On river Rihand	Hydroelectricity production.	Pimpri

Transport in India

- The present transport system of the country comprises several modes of transport including rail, road, coastal shipping, air transport etc.

Road Transport

- The total road length of the country increased from 3.99 lakh kms on 31st March, 1951 to 48.65 lakh kms as on 31st March, 2012, growing at a Compound Annual Growth Rate (CAGR) of 4.2%. About 60% freight traffic and 87.4% passenger traffic is carried by the roads.
- At present Indian road network of 48.85 lakh km. is the one of the largest in the world and consists of—

Expressways / National Highways	92,851 km	Major District Roads, Rural and other roads	46,49,462 km
State Highways	1,42,687 km	Total length 48.85 lakh km (approx.)	

(Source : INDIA 2015)

National Highways

- They are constructed and maintained by the central government.
- The National Highways has 79,116 km. length comprising only 2% of the total length of roads, carries about 40% of the total traffic of India.
- The development and maintenance of the National Highways system is carried out through three agencies—1. National Highways Authority of India (NHAI),

- 2. State Public Works Departments (PWDs) and 3. Border Roads Organisation (BRO).
- > In order to give boost to the economic development of the country, the government has embarked upon a massive National Highways Development Project (NHDP) in the country.
- > The NHDP is the **largest highway project** ever undertaken in the country.
- > The NHDP is being implemented mainly by National Highways Authority of India (NHA).
- > As on 31st March, 2012 around 99.1% of SHs (State Highways) was surfaced.
- > The State/UT-wise break-up SHs shows that Maharashtra accounted for the largest share (19.8%) as on 31st March, 2012, followed by Karnataka (12.6%), Gujarat (11.2%), Tamil Nadu (6.6%) and Andhra Pradesh (6.5%). These five states accounted for about 56.7% of the total length of SHs.

Some Important National Highways (As on 23 June, 2012)

- N.H. 1 Delhi - Ambala - Amritsar - Indo-Pak Border (456 km)
 N.H. 2 Delhi - Agra - Kanpur - Varanasi - Kolkata (1,465 km)
 N.H. 3 Agra - Gwalior - Indore - Nasik - Mumbai (1,161 km)
 N.H. 4 Junction with N.H. 3 near Thane - Belgaum - Bangalore - Ranipet - Chennai (1,235 km)
 N.H. 7 Varanasi - Jabalpur - Nagpur - Hyderabad - Bangalore - Madurai - Kanyakumari (2,369 km)
 N.H. 8 Delhi - Jaipur - Ahmedabad - Vadodara - Mumbai (1,375 km)
 N.H. 9 Pune - Solapur - Hyderabad - Vijayawada - Machilipatnam (841 km)
 N.H. 15 Pathankot - Amritsar - Bhatinda - Ganganagar - Bikaner - Jaisalmer - Barmer - Samakhiali (1,526 km).
 N.H. 22 Ambala - Kalka - Shimla - Rampur - Indo-Tibet (China) Border near Shipki-La (459 km)
 N.H. 24 Delhi - Bareilly - Lucknow (438 km)
 N.H. 39 Numaligarh - Imphal - Pale - Indo - Myanmar Border (436 km)
 N.H. 44 Nongstoin and connecting Shillong - Passi Badarpur - Agartala - Sabroom (723 km)
 N.H. 47 Salem - Coimbatore - Trichur - Ermakulam - Thiruvananthapuram - Cape Comorin - Kanyakumari (640 km)
 N.H. 48 Bangalore - Hassan - Mangaluru (328 km)
 N.H. 49 Kochi - Madurai - Dhanushkodi (440 km)
 N.H. 55 Siliguri - Darjeeling (77 km)
 N.H. 80 Mokama - Raj Mahal - Farakka (310 km)
 N.H. 102 Chhapra - Rewaghata - Muzaffarpur (80 km)
 N.H. 205 Ananthpur - Renugunta - Chennai (442 km.)
 N.H. 217 Raipur (Chhattisgarh) - Gopalpur (Odisha) - (508 km)
 N.H. 229 Tawang - Bomdila - Ziro - Aalong - Pasighat (Arunachal Pradesh) (1,090 km)
 N.H. 327 Bangaon (Bariyahi Bazar) on NH 107 - Supaul - Pipra (106) - Tribeniganj - Bhargam - Araria - Bahadurganj - Raniganj - Thakurganj - Galgalia (225 km)
 Ex. N.H. 947 Sarkhej - Virungaon - Jamnagar - Dwarka - Okha (461 km)
 N.H. 953 Vyara (NH-6) - Netang - Rajpipla - Bodali (190 km)

- > **The longest National Highway in India is NH-7** (from Varanasi to Kanyakumari); which has a length of 128 kms in Uttar Pradesh, 504 kms in Madhya Pradesh, 232 kms in Maharashtra, 753 kms in Andhra Pradesh (including Telangana), 125 kms in Karnataka, 627 kms in Tamil Nadu i.e. **total 2,369 kms**.

State Highways and other Roads

- > They are constructed and maintained by the state government.
- > As on 31st March, 2012—
 - ★ Average road density of India—148 km per 100 sq. kms.
 - ★ Average road length per lakh population (census 2011)—402.03 kms.
 - ★ The length of NHs per 100 sq. kms of area—2.34 kms and the length of NHs per lakh population—6.35 kms.
 - ★ U.P. has the largest share (10.2%) of the total length of NHs, followed by Rajasthan (9.3%), M.P. (6.6%), Tamil Nadu (6.4%) and Rajasthan (5.9%). These five states accounted for about 38.4% of the total road length of NHs.
- > Roads on the borders are constructed and maintained by the Border Roads Organisation (BRO).
- > BRO was established in May 1960.
- > BRO is a premier construction agency roads airfields, bridges, buildings, hospitals and schools.
- > The BRO, through 'Project Dantak' is constructing and maintaining a large road infrastructure and executing other prestigious projects in Bhutan.
- > The BRO is doing highly commendable jobs of construction and maintenance in Myanmar and Afghanistan too.

Rail Transport

- > The Indian Railways have been a great integrating force for more than 160 years.
- > From a very modest beginning in 1853, Indian Railways have grown into a vast network of 7,030 stations spread over a route-length of 64,015 km. with a fleet of 8,592 (43 steam, 4,963 diesel and 3,586 electric) locomotives, 49,110 passenger service vehicles, 5,985 other coaching vehicles and 2,11,763 wagons as on 31 March, 2009.
- > **Indian Railway network is the largest in Asia and world's second largest under one management.**
- > The first rail in India started in 1853 between Mumbai and Thane (34 kms).
- > Indian Railway Board was established in March, 1905.
- > Indian Railway was nationalised in 1950.
- > There are three types of rail lines in India : 1. Broad Gauge, 2. Meter Gauge and 3. Narrow Gauge.
- > The network runs multigauge operations extending over 1,08,706 (BG—86,526, MG—18,529 and NG—3,651) Track kilometres.

Gauge	Route	Contribution
Broad Gauge (1.676 mts)	54,257 km	84.81 %
Meter Gauge (1.000 mts)	7,180 km	11.22 %
Narrow Gauge (0.762 and 0.610 mts)	2,537 km	3.97 %
Total (as on 31st March, 2010)	63,974 km	100.00 %

- The management and governance of the Indian railways is in the hands of the Railway Board.
- Railways have been divided into 17 zones.
- Kolkata Metro Zone (17th zone) has been established on 29 December, 2010.

Divisions and Headquarters of the Zonal Railways

Zone	Headquarter	Divisions
Zones that started functioning on 1st April, 2003		
East Coast Railway	Bhubaneshwar	Khurda Road, Waltair and Sambalpur divisions of SER
South Western Railway	Hubli	Bangalore and Mysore divisions of SR reorganized Hubli division of SCR, including Hospet-Toraagal (Earlier constituted to have Gutakal division of SCR as well.)
West Central Railway	Jabalpur	Jabalpur and Bhopal divisions of CR, reorganized Kota division of WR
North Central Railway	Allahabad	Reorganized divisions : Allahabad of NR, Jhansi of CR, and new Agra division
South East Central Railway	Bilaspur	Nagpur division and reorganized Bilaspur division of SER, new Raipur division

Zones that were created on 10th October, 2002		
North Western Railway	Jaipur	Jodhpur division and reorganized Bikaner division of NR, reorganized Jaipur and Ajmer division of WR
East Central Railway	Hajipur	Sonepur and Smastipur divisions of NER, Danapur, Mughalsarai and Dhanbad divisions of ER (was earlier constituted to have Katihar division of NFR as well).

Old Zones as they are after April, 2003		
Western Railway	Mumbai	Bhavnagar and Mumbai divisions, reorganized Ratlam, Rajkot and Vadodara divisions, new Ahmedabad division
Eastern Railway	Kolkata	Howrah, Malda, Sealdah and Asansol divisions
Central Railway	Mumbai	Bhusawal and Nagpur divisions, reorganized Mumbai CST and Solapur divisions, new Pune divisions (including Pune Kolhapur)
Southern Railway	Chennai	Chennai, Palghat, Thiruvananthapuram, Tiruchirapalli and Madurai divisions
Northern Railway	New Delhi	Ferozpur, Ambala, Lucknow and Moradabad divisions, reorganized Delhi division
North Eastern Railway	Gorakhpur	Lucknow and Varanasi divisions, reorganized Izzatnagar division
South Central Railway	Secunderabad	Reorganized Secunderabad, Hyderabad, Guntakal (including Bellary-Guntakal (MG) and Bellary-Rayadurg) and Vijayawada divisions, new Guntur and Nanded divisions.
South Eastern Railway	Kolkata	Kharagpur division, reorganized Adra and Chakradharpur divisions, new Ranchi division
North-East Frontier Railway	Guwahati	Katihar, Lumding, Tinsukia divisions, reorganized Alipurduar division, new Rangiya division

Air Transport

- Airways in India started in 1911.
- Indian National Airways Company was started in 1933.
- All the airway companies were nationalised in 1953 and were put under two corporations namely — Indian Airlines and Air India.
- Indian Airlines provides its services to the internal parts of India along with neighbouring countries of Nepal, Bangladesh, Pakistan, Afghanistan, Sri Lanka, Myanmar and Maldives.
- Air India provides its services to the foreign locations.
- Vayudoot was established in 1981 for domestic services, but was later merged in Indian Airlines.

Merger of Air India and Indian Airlines

Indian Airlines operates to 54 domestic stations along with its subsidiary Airlines 'Alliance Air'. Besides it also operates to 18 international stations. The Indian Airlines has a fleet of 75 aircraft. 41 aircraft were expected to be added in its fleet by April 2010.

On the 1st March, 2007 the Union Cabinet approved the proposal to merge Indian Airlines and Air India. Accordingly, a new company, viz. National Aviation Company of India Limited (NACL) has been incorporated on 30th March, 2007 with its Headquarters at Mumbai.

The brand name of the new airlines is Air India (or Indian) and its logo is Maharsaja.

GAGAN

GPS Aided Augmented Navigation (GAGAN) system is a prestigious satellite based augmentation system of India, jointly developed by Airports Authority of India (AAI) and Indian Space Research Organisation (ISRO) for enhanced Air Navigation Services across the country.

Major International Airports of India

Name of Airport	Place
Chhatrapati Shivaji Int. Airport (Santa Cruz Airport)	Mumbai
Subhash Chandra Bose Airport (Dum Dum Airport)	Kolkata
Indira Gandhi International Airport	Delhi
Anna (Meenambakkam) International Airport	Chennai
Trivendram International Airport	Thiruvananthapuram
Guru Ramdasji (Rajasansi) International Airport	Amritsar
B. R. Ambedkar International Airport	Nagpur
Kampagowada (Bangaluru) International Airport	Bangaluru
Devi Ahilyabai Holkar International Airport	Indore (M.P.)
Calicut International Airport	Kozhikode (Kerala)
Veer Savarkar International Airport	Port Blair
Rajeev Gandhi International Airport	Hyderabad
Lokpriya Gopinath Bordoloi International Airport	Guwahati
Loknayak Jai Prakash Narayan International Airport	Patna
Goa International Airport	Goa
Sardar Vallabh Bhai Patel International Airport	Ahmedabad
Mangalore International Airport	Mangalore
Aranmula International Airport	Pathanamthitta
Raja Bhoj International Airport	Bhopal
Lal Bahadur Shastri International Airport	Varanasi
Choudhary Charan Singh International Airport	Lucknow

Water Transport

- The Central Water Tribunal was established in 1887.
- Its headquarter is in Kolkata.
- The waterways of the country have been divided into Internal waterways and Oceanic waterways.

Internal Waterway

- This transport is through rivers, canals and lakes.
- India has got about 14,544 km of navigable waterways which comprise rivers, canals, backwaters, creeks etc.
- About 55 million tonnes of Cargo is being moved annually by Inland Water Transport (IWT).
- The waterway from Haldia to Allahabad was made a National Water way in 1986.
- The Inland Waterways Authority of India (IWAI) came into existence on 27 October, 1986 for development and regulation of inland waterways in the country.

Oceanic Waterway

- The peninsular bank is very important for this purpose.
- There are 13 large and 200 small ports on the major bank of 5600 kms.
- Large ports are maintained by the central government whereas small ports are included in the concurrent list and are managed by the state government.
- As on 31st March, 2014 the capacity of major ports was about 800.52 MMT against cargo traffic of 555.54 MMT handled in 2013-14. Thus the capacity utilization is 70%.
- Largest port of India is Jawahar Lal Nehru Port in Mumbai.
- The largest natural port is in Vishakhapatnam.
- Kandla in Gujarat is a tidal port. It has been made into a free trade zone.
- Haldia Port (WB) is said to be developed as the first Green Port of India.

Major Ports of India

Name	State/UT	River/strait/Ocean
Kolkata	West Bengal	Hoogly River
Mumbai	Maharashtra	Arabian Sea
Chennai	Tamil Nadu	Bay of Bengal
Kochhi	Kerala	Arabian Sea
Vishakhapatnam	Andhra Pradesh	Bay of Bengal
Paradip	Odisha (Orissa)	Bay of Bengal
New Tuticorin	Tamil Nadu	Bay of Bengal
Marmagao	Goa	Arabian Sea
Kandla	Gujarat	Arabian Sea

IWAI

The IWAI came into existence on 27 October, 1986 for developing and regulation of inland waterways for shipping and navigation. The Authority primarily undertakes projects for development and maintenance of infrastructure on national waterways through grant received from Ministry of Shipping. The Head Office of the IWAI is at NOIDA. The authority also has its regional offices at Patna, Kolkata, Guwahati and Kochi and sub-offices at Allahabad, Varanasi, Bhagulpur, Farakka, Hemnagar, Dibrugarh, Kollam, Chennai and Vijaywada.

IWAI came into existence on 27 October, 1986 for development and regulation of inland waterways in the country.

Geography

Name	State/UT	River/Strait/Ocean
Bharat Mangalam Shivshambhu, (Jawahar Lal Nehru Port)	Karnataka Maharashtra	Arabian Sea
Entore	Tamil Nadu	Bay of Bengal
Port Blair	Andaman and Nicobar	Bay of Bengal

India Facts and Figures

- The state and union territory capitals are sorted according to the administrative, legislative and judicial capitals.
- The **administrative capital** is where the executive government offices are located. The **legislative capital** is where the state assembly convenes.
- The **judicial capital** is the location of the state or territorial High Courts of India.
- The date mentioned in the table refers to when the city became the capital of the state or territory.
- In the following table S and W refers to the summer and winter sessions respectively. B refers to the budget session of the legislature.
- The administrative capital is considered to be the **main capital** of the state.
- The former capital refers to a city which was the capital from admission into the Indian Union. An absence of a legislative capital means that it is administered by the Central government.

States and Their Capitals

State / UT	Administrative Capital	Legislative Capital	Judicial Capital	Since
Andaman and Nicobar Islands	Port Blair	—	Kolkata	1956
Arunachal Pradesh	Itanagar	Itanagar	Guwahati	1972
Andhra Pradesh	Hyderabad*	Hyderabad	Hyderabad	1956
Assam	Dispur	Dispur	Guwahati	1972

Former Capital : Shillong (1874-1972)

Bihar	Patna	Patna	Patna	1956
Chhattisgarh	Raipur	Raipur	Bilaspur	2000
Chandigarh	Chandigarh	—	Chandigarh	1966
Dadra and Nagar Haveli	Silvassa	—	Mumbai	1961
Daman and Diu	Daman	Delhi	Delhi	1956
NCT-Delhi	Delhi	Porvorim	Mumbai	1961
Goa	Panaji	Gandhinagar	Gandhinagar	Ahmedabad
Gujarat	Gandhinagar	—	—	1970

Former Capital : Ahmedabad (1960-1970)

Haryana	Chandigarh	Chandigarh	Chandigarh	1966
Himachal Pradesh	Shimla	Shimla	Shimla	1948
Jammu and Kashmir	* Srinagar (S)	* Srinagar (S)	Srinagar	1948
	* Jammu (W)	* Jammu (W)	Jammu (W)	

State / UT	Administrative Capital	Legislative Capital	Judicial Capital	Since
Jharkhand	Ranchi	Ranchi	Ranchi	
Karnataka	Bengaluru	Bengaluru	Bengaluru	2000
Kerala	Thiruvananthapuram	T'puram	Ernakulam	1956
<i>Former Capital : Kochi (1949-1956)</i>				
Lakshadweep	Kavaratti	—	Ernakulam	
Madhya Pradesh	Bhopal	Bhopal	Jabalpur	1956
Maharashtra	Mumbai	*Mumbai (S+B)	Mumbai	1956
Manipur	Imphal	Imphal	Imphal	1960
Meghalaya	Shillong	Shillong	Shillong	2013
Mizoram	Aizawl	Aizawl	Shillong	2013
Nagaland	Kohima	Kohima	Guwahati	1972
Odisha (Orissa)	Bhubaneshwar	Bhubaneshwar	Guwahati	1963
<i>Former Capital : Cuttack (1936-1948)</i>				
Puducherry	Pondicherry	Pondicherry	Chennai	1954
Punjab	Chandigarh	Chandigarh	Chandigarh	1966
<i>Former Capital : Lahore (1936-1947) & Shimla (1947-1966)</i>				
Rajasthan	Jaipur	Jaipur	Jodhpur	1948
Sikkim	Gangtok	Gangtok	Gangtok	1975
Tamil Nadu	Chennai	Chennai	Chennai	1956
Telangana	Hyderabad	Hyderabad	Hyderabad	2014
Tripura	Agartala	Agartala	Agartala	2013
Uttarakhand	Dehradun	Dehradun	Dehradun	2013
Uttar Pradesh	Lucknow	Lucknow	Nainital	2000
West Bengal	Kolkata	Kolkata	Allahabad	1937

* According to the 'Andhra Pradesh Reorganisation Act 2014' Hyderabad is the joint capital of Telangana and Andhra Pradesh states for maximum 10 years period. The ancient town of 'Amaravati', place between Guntur and Vijayawada in central A.P. will be developed as the new Headquarter of Andhra Pradesh.

Population of India, States and UTs (Census 2011)

India	1,210,854,977
Uttar Pradesh	199,812,341
Maharashtra	112,374,333
Bihar	104,099,452
West Bengal	91,276,115
Meghalaya	2,966,889
Madhya Pradesh	72,626,809
Tamil Nadu	72,147,030
Rajasthan	68,548,437
Jammu and Kashmir	12,541,302
Uttarakhand	10,086,292
Himachal Pradesh	6,864,602
Tripura	3,673,917
Andhra Pradesh (including Telangana)	84,580,777
Manipur	2,721,756
Nagaland	1,978,502

Karnataka	61,095,297	Goa	1,458,545
Gujarat	60,439,692	Arunachal Pradesh	1,383,727
Odisha	41,974,218	Puducherry	1,247,953
Kerala	33,406,061	Mizoram	1,097,206
Jharkhand	32,988,134	Chandigarh	1,055,450
Assam	31,205,576	Sikkim	610,577
Punjab	27,743,338	Andaman & Nicobar Islands	380,581
Chhattisgarh	25,545,198	Dadra and Nagar Haveli	343,709
Haryana	25,351,462	Daman and Diu	243,247
Delhi*	16,787,941	Lakshadweep	64,473

Note: After Telangana's birth as the 29th state of India
Population of Andhra Pradesh
Population of Telangana

Union Territories : Facts and Figures (Census 2011)

UT	Capital	Area in sq km	Population
Puducherry	Pondicherry	490	12,47,953
Chandigarh	Chandigarh	114	10,55,450
Andaman & Nicobar	Port Blair	8,249	3,80,581
Dadra & Nagar Haveli	Silvassa	491	3,43,709
Daman & Diu	Daman	111	2,43,247
Lakshadweep	Kavaratti	30	64,473

* National Capital Territory / Region (Census 2011)

State	Capital	Area	Population
Delhi	Delhi	1,483 sq km	1,67,87,941

Top 10 Most Populous Countries (Projected as of June 1, 2015)

Sl.	Country	Population	Sl.	Country	Population
1.	China	1,36,15,12,535	6.	Pakistan	19,90,85,847
2.	India	1,25,16,95,584	7.	Nigeria	18,15,62,056
3.	U.S.A.	32,13,62,789	8.	Bangladesh	16,89,57,745
4.	Indonesia	25,59,93,674	9.	Russia	14,24,23,773
5.	Brazil	20,42,59,812	10.	Japan	12,89,19,659

Source : U.S. Census Bureau, International Data Base

Wildlife Sanctuaries and National Parks in India

Name	Location	Important Species
1. Bandipur National Park	Mysore, Karnataka	Elephant, Tiger, Bear, Sambhar, Panther
2. Balphakram Sanctuary	Garo Hills, Meghalaya	Tiger, Elephant, Bison, Marbled Cat, Red Panda, Wild Water Buffalo,
3. Chandraprabha Sanctuary	Varanasi, UP	Asiatic Lion, Tiger, Panther, Indian Gazelle, Sloth bear

Name of the Project	Location	State	Purpose
Nagarjuna Sagar Multipurpose Project	River Krishna	Andhra Pradesh	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Pochampad Project	River Godawari	Andhra Pradesh	Irrigation
Lower Sileru Project	River Sileru (Godawari)	Andhra Pradesh	Hydro-electricity
Kakarpara Project	River Tapi	Gujarat	Irrigation
Kothagudam Project	Singareni Coalfields	Telangana	Thermal Power
Kosi Project	River Kosi	Bihar	Flood Control, Irrigation

Name	Location	Important Species
4. Corbett National Park	Nainital, Uttarakhand	Elephant, Tiger, Sloth bear, Nilgai, Panther, Sambhar
5. Dachigam Sanctuary	Jammu and Kashmir	Kashmir Stag (Hangul)
6. Dudhwa National Park	Lakhimpur Khiri, UP	Tiger, Panther, Sambhar, Nilgai
7. Ghana Bird Sanctuary	Bharatpur, Rajasthan	Siberian Crane, Spoonbill, Heron teal, Stork
8. Gir National Park	Junagarh, Gujarat	Asiatic Lion, Panther, Sambhar, Nilgai, Crocodile, Rhinoceros
9. Hazaribagh National Park	Hazaribagh, Jharkhand	Tiger, Leopard, Sambhar, Chital
10. Jaldapara Sanctuary	West Bengal	Tiger, Leopard, Sambhar, Chital
11. Kanha National Park	Mandla and Balaghat, MP	Tiger, Panther, Antelope, Barking Deer, Nilgai
12. Kaziranga National Park	Assam	Tiger, Great Indian one horned Rhinoceros, Wild Buffalo, Sambhar
13. Manas	Barpeta, Assam	Tiger, Elephant, Panther, Wild Buffalo, One horned Rhinoceros
14. Mudumalai Sanctuary	Nilgiri Hills, Tamil Nadu	Elephant, Dear, Pigs
15. Namdapha National Park	Tirap district, Arunachal Pradesh	Tiger and Elephant
16. Palamau	Daltonganj, Jharkhand	Tiger, Elephant, Panther, Leopard
17. Pakhal	Warangal, Telangana	Tiger, Panther, Chital, Nilgai
18. Periyar	Idukki, Kerala	Elephant, Tiger, Panther, Wild boar, Gaur, Sambhar
19. Ranganthitoo Bird Sanctuary	Karnataka	Birds
20. Shivpuri National Park	Shivpuri, MP	Tiger, Birds
21. Sunderbans	West Bengal	Tiger, Wild boar, Crocodile, Deer
22. Vedanthangal Bird Sanctuary	Tamil Nadu	Birds
23. Wild Ass Sanctuary	Little Rann of Kutch, Gujarat	Wild Ass, Wolf, Nilgai, Chinkara

Important Irrigation and Power Projects

Name of the Project	Location	State	Purpose
Gandak Project	River Gandak	Uttar Pradesh, Bihar	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Dhuvaran Power Station	Kheda District	Gujarat	Thermal Power
Sabarigiri (Pamba-Kakki) Project	River Pamba-Kakki	Kerala	Hydro-electricity
Idduki Project	Rivers Periyar Cherutheni Idukki	Kerala	Hydro-electricity
Tawa Project	River Tawa (Narmada)	Madhya Pradesh	Irrigation
Chambal Project	River Chambal	Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Korba Project	Near Korba Coalfields	Chhattisgarh	Thermal Power
Satpura Power	Patharkada Station	MP Coalfield	Thermal Power
Koyna Project	River Koyna	Maharashtra	Hydro-electricity
Nagpur Power Station	Koradi, Near Nagpur City	Maharashtra	Thermal Power
Tungabhadra	River Tungabhadra Multipurpose Project	Karnataka and Telangana	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Upper Krishna Project	River Krishna	Karnataka	Irrigation
Sharavati Project	River Sharavati	Karnataka (near Jog Falls)	Hydro-electricity
Hirakud Multipurpose Project	River Mahanadi	Odisha	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Mahanadi Delta Project	River Mahanadi	Odisha	Irrigation
Talcher Power Station	Near Talcher	Odisha	Thermal Power
Bakra-Nangal Multipurpose Project	River Sutlej	HP, Punjab, Haryana	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Rajasthan Canal Project	River Sutlej in Punjab	Rajasthan Headworks in Punjab	Irrigation
Kundah Project	River Kundah	Tamil Nadu	Hydro-electricity
Neyveli Power Station	Neyveli	Tamil Nadu	Hydro-electricity
Ramganga Multipurpose Project	Chuisot stream (near Kalagarh)	Uttarakhand	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Matatilla Multipurpose Project	River Betwa	Uttar Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Rihand Scheme	River Rihand	Uttar Pradesh	Hydro-electricity
Obra Power Station	Obra	Uttar Pradesh	Thermal Power
Damodar Valley Project	River Damodar	Jharkhand shared with West Bengal	Flood Control
Ukai Project	River Tapi	Gujarat	Hydro-electricity
Mahi Project	River Mahi	Gujarat	Irrigation
Ghataprabha Project	River Ghataprabha	Karnataka	Irrigation

Name of the Project	Location	State	Purpose
Bhima Project	River Bhima	Maharashtra	Irrigation
Sardar Sarowar Project	River Narmada	Gujarat and Madhya Pradesh	Irrigation and Hydro-electricity
Bana Sagar Project	River Sone	Chhattisgarh, MP, UP and Jharkhand	Irrigation
Dui Hasti Project	River Chenab	Jammu and Kashmir	Hydro-electricity
Salai Project	River Chenab	Jammu and Kashmir	Hydro-electricity
Thein Dam Project	River Ravi	Punjab	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Malaprabha Project	River Malaprabha	Karnataka	Irrigation
Jaykawadi Project	River Godavari	Maharashtra	Irrigation
Beas Project	River Beas	Punjab and Haryana	Hydro-electricity
Sharda Shayak	River Ghaghra	Uttar Pradesh	Irrigation
Mayurakshi Project	River Mayurakshi	West Bengal	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Rana Pratap Sagar	River Chambal	Rajasthan	Hydro-electricity
Suratgarh Super Thermal Project	Suratgarh	Rajasthan	Thermal Power
Mettur	River Cauvery	Tamil Nadu	Hydro-electricity
Pallivasal	River Mundirapujha	Kerala	Hydro-electricity
Papanasam Project	River Tambiraparani	Tamil Nadu	Hydro-electricity
Loktak Project	Lake Loktak	Manipur	Hydro-electricity
Tehri Project	River Bhagirathi (Ganga)	Uttarakhand	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Farakka Project	Ganga	West Bengal	Irrigation

Indian Satellites : At a Glance

Satellite	Launch Date	Wt (Kg.)	Launching Station	Launch Vehicle	Purpose
Aryabhatta	19 Apr, 1975	360	R.R.L.S., USSR	ICR	Scientific (S)
Bhaskar-1	07 June, 1979	442	R.R.L.S., USSR	ICR	Earth Scanning (S)
Rohini RS-1	10 Aug, 1979	35	R.L.C., Sriharikota	SLV-3	Earth Scanning
Rohini RS-2	18 July, 1980	35	R.L.C., Sriharikota	SLV-3	Earth Scanning
Rohini RSD-1	31 May, 1981	38	R.L.C., Sriharikota	SLV-3	Scientific
Apple	19 June, 1981	670	E.R.L.S., Kourou	Ariane-1	Commun.(S)
Bhaskar-2	20 Nov, 1981	436	R.R.L.S., USSR	ICR	Earth Scanning (S)
INSAT-1A	10 Apr, 1982	1160	A.R.L.S., USA	Delta 3910	Multipurpose(S)
Rohini RSD-2	17 Apr, 1983	41.5	R.L.C., Sriharikota	SLV-3	Scientific (S)
INSAT-1B	30 Aug, 1983	1193	K.S.C., USA	Shuttle (PAM-D)	Multipurpose (S)

Satellite	Launch Date	Wt (Kg.)	Launching Station	Launch Vehicle	Purpose
SROSS-1	24 Mar, 1987	150	R.L.C., Sriharikota	ASLV-D1	R. Sensing
IRS-1A	17 Mar, 1988	980	R.S.S., Baikonour	Vostok	R. Sensing (S)
SROSS-2	13 July, 1988	150	R.L.C., Sriharikota	ASLV-D2	R. Sensing
INSAT-1C	21 July, 1988	-	E.R.L.S., Kourou	Ariane-3	R. Sensing
INSAT-1D	12 June, 1990	650	K.S.C., USA	Delta 4925	Multipurpose
IRS-1B	29 Aug, 1991	985	R.S.S., Baikonour	Vostok	Multipurpose
SROSS C-1	20 May, 1992	106	R.L.C., Sriharikota	ASLV-D3	R. Sensing (S)
INSAT-2A	10 July, 1992	1416	E.R.L.S., Kourou	Ariane	R. Sensing (S)
INSAT-2B	23 July, 1993	1906	E.R.L.S., Kourou	Ariane	R. Sensing(S)
IRS-1E	20 Sep, 1993	850	R.L.C., Sriharikota	PSLV-D1	R. Sensing
SROSS C-2	04 May, 1994	113	R.L.C., Sriharikota	ASLV-D4	R. Sensing(S)
IRS-P2	15 Oct, 1994	870	R.L.C., Sriharikota	PSLV-D2	R. Sensing(S)
INSAT-2C	7 Dec, 1995	2050	E.R.L.S., Kourou	Ariane	Multipurpose (S)
IRS-1C	29 Dec, 1995	1250	B.L.S., Kazakhstan	Molniya	R. Sensing(S)
IRS-P3	21 Mar, 1996	930	R.L.C., Sriharikota	PSLV-D3	R. Sensing(S)
INSAT-2D	04 June, 1997	2070	E.R.L.S., Kourou	Ariane-4	Multipurpose(S)
IRS-1D	29 Sep, 1997	1200	R.L.C., Sriharikota	PSLV-C1	R. Sensing (S)
INSAT-2E	03 Apr, 1999	2550	E.R.L.S., Kourou	Ariane 42P	Multipurpose (S)
IRS-P4	26 May, 1999	-	R.L.C., Sriharikota	PSLV-C2	R. Sensing(S)
INSAT-3B	22 Mar, 2000	2070	E.R.L.S., Kourou	Ariane-5G	-
GSAT-1	18 Apr, 2001	1540	S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	GSLV-D1	CC
TES	22 Oct, 2001	1109	S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV - C3	Techno. Ex(S)
INSAT-3C	24 Jan, 2002	-	E.R.L.S., Kourou	Ariane-4	Comm.(S)
METSAT*	12 Sep, 2002	1060	S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV - C4	Mete. (S)
INSAT-3A	10 Apr, 2003	2958	A.L.S.C., Kourou	Ariane-5G	Comm. Met. and Tele. (S)
GSAT-2	08 May, 2003	1800	Sriharikota, Andhra Pradesh	GSLV-2	Comm. (S)
INSAT-3E	28 Sep, 2003	2795	Kourou	Ariane-5G	Comm. (S)
RESOURCE SAT-1	17 Oct, 2003	1360	Sriharikota, Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C5	R. Sensing (S)
EDUSAT	20 Sep, 2004	1950	Sriharikota, Andhra Pradesh	GSLV-F01	Education (S)
CARTOSAT-1	05 May, 2005	1560	S. S.C., Sriharikota, Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C6	Mapping Satellite (S)

Satellite	Launch Date	Wt (Kg.)	Launching Station	Launch Vehicle	Purpose
HAMSAT	05 May, 2005	—	S.S.C., Sriharikota, Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C6	Radio Comm. (S)
INSAT-4A	22 Dec, 2005	3080	Kourou	Ariane	Comm.(S)
INSAT-4C	10 July, 2006	2168	S.S.C., Sriharikota	GSLV-F02	Comm.
INSAT-4B	12 Mar, 2007	3025	Arianespace's Ariane	5-ECA	DTH and Comm. (S)
INSAT-4CR	02 Sep, 2007	2130	S.S.C., Sriharikota, Andhra Pradesh	GSLV-F04	Comm. (S)
CARTOSAT-2A	28 April, 2008	690	S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C9	R. Sensing (S)
IMS-1 (TWSat) ¹	28 April, 2008	83	S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C9	Micro Satellite Imaging
Chandrayaan-1 ²	22 Oct, 2008	1380	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R.	PSLV-C11	R. Sensing (S)
RISAT-2 ³	20 April, 2009	300	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R.	PSLV-C12	R. I. Satellite Research
ANUSAT	20 April, 2009	40	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R.	PSLV-C12	Microsatellite
Oceansat-2 ⁴	23 Sep., 2009	960	S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C14	R. Sensing (S)
GSAT-4	15 April, 2010	2180	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	GSLV-D3	Commun.(S)
CARTOSAT-2B	12 July, 2010	694	S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C15	R. Sensing (S)
GSAT-5P ⁵	25 Dec, 2010	2310	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	GSLV-F06	C-band Comm.
RESOURCESAT-2 ⁶	20 April, 2011	1206	S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C16	R. Sensing (S)
GSAT-8/INSAT-4G	21 May, 2011	3093	Kourou	Ariane-5	Comm.(S)
GSAT-12	15 July, 2011	1410	S.H.A.R., A. P.	PSLV-C17	Comm.(S)
Megha-Tropiques ⁷	12 Oct., 2011	1000	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C18	Tracking Weather
RISAT-1 ⁸	26 April, 2012	1858	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C19	R. Sensing (S)
GSAT-10 ⁹	29 Sep., 2012	3400	Kourou	Ariane-5	Comm.(S)
SARAL ¹⁰	25 Feb. 2013	407	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C20	Earth Observation (S)
INSAT-3D ¹¹	26 July, 2013	2026	Kourou	Ariane-5	Mete. (S)
GSAT-7	30 Aug., 2013	—	Kourou	Ariane-5	Geost. (S)
Mangalyaan ¹²	05 Nov., 2013	1350	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C25	Mars mission (S)
GSAT-14 ¹³	05 Jan., 2014	1982	Shriharikota, Andhra Pradesh	GSLV-D5	Comm.(S)
IRNSS-1B	04 April, 2014	1432	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C24	Navigation Satellite (S)

Satellite	Launch Date	Wt (Kg.)	Launching Station	Launch Vehicle	Purpose
Foreign Satellites ¹⁴	30 June, 2014	—	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R. Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C23	(S)
IRNSS-1C ¹⁵	16 Oct., 2014	1425.4	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R. Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C26	Navigation Satellite (S)
GSAT-16	07 Dec., 2014	3181.6	Kourou, French Guiana	Ariane-5	Comm.(S)
IRNSS-1D ¹⁶	28 March, 2015	1425	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R. Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C27	Navigation Satellite (S)

Abbreviations used in the above table :

- R.R.L.S. : Russian Rocket Launching Station, Cosmodrome
- R.I.S. : Radar Imaging Satellite
- R.L.C. : Rocket Launching Centre, Sriharikota Range, A.P.
- E.R.L.S. : European Rocket Launching Station, Kourou, French Guiana
- A.R.L.S. : American Rocket Launching Station, Cape Canaveral, USA
- K.S.C. : Kennedy Space Centre, Cape Canaveral, USA
- R.S.S. : Russian Space Station, Baikanour, USSR
- S.H.A.R. : Sriharikota High Altitude Range, Andhra Pradesh (A.P.)
- S.S.C. : Satish Dhawan Space Centre, Sriharikota, A.P.
- A.L.S.C. : Ariane Launching Space Centre, South America

* (named after Kalpana Chawla)

Note : (CC) — Commercial Communication; (S) — Successful; (Comm.) — Communication; (Techno. Ex.) — Technology Experiments; (Mete.) — Meteorological

1. **Third World Satellite (TWSAT)** : Launched as co-passenger with CARTOSAT-2A for low cost micro satellite imaging.
2. Unmanned lunar probe, that carried 11 scientific instruments built in India, USA, UK, Germany, Sweden and Bulgaria.
3. Co-passenger with ANUSAT
4. IRS-P4 : Gathers data for oceanographic, coastal and atmospheric applications. Continues mission of Oceansat-1.
5. **INSAT-4D** : Indian communication satellite, failed to reach orbit due to GSLV-F06 failure.
6. PSLV-C16 placed three satellites with a total payload mass of 1404 kg - RESOURCESAT-2 weighing 1206 kg, the Indo-Russian YOUTHSAT weighing 92 kg and Singapore's X-SAT weighing 106 kg - into an 822 km polar Sun Synchronous Orbit (SSO).
7. PSLV-C18 is configured to carry four satellites in which, one satellite, developed by India and France will track the weather, two were developed by educational institutions, and the fourth is from Luxembourg.
8. First indigenous all-weather Radar Imaging Satellite.
9. India's advanced communication satellite.
10. The Satellite with ARGOS and ALTIKA (SARAL)
11. Advanced meteorological satellite, enhancing India's capability in Weather Forecasting and Disaster warning areas.
12. Mangalyaan reached in to Mars Orbit and Captured first image of Mars on Sept. 24, 2014. Total journey - 680 million km.

13. The successful use of indigenous cryogenic engine in the GSLV-D5 puts India among a league, five other nations—the US, Russia, France, Japan and China, that possess the technology that is considered the ultimate frontier in rocket science.
14. The five satellites—a 714 kg French Earth Observation Satellite 'SPOT-7', a 14 kg Canadian satellite 'AISAT' two 15 kg satellites from Canada CAN-X4 & CAN-X5 and a 7 kg satellite of Singapore VELOX-1. These satellites were launched under commercial arrangement of ANTRIX (ISRO's commercial arm) with foreign agencies.
15. IRNSS-1C is the 3rd navigation satellite of the 7 satellites constituting the IRNSS space segment. Its predecessors, IRNSS-1A and IRNSS-1B were launched by PSLV-C20 and PSLV-C24 in July 2013 and April 2014 respectively. The configuration of IRNSS-1C is similar to that of IRNSS-1A and IRNSS-1B.
16. IRNSS-1D is the fourth navigational satellite and one of the seven of the IRNSS constellation of satellites slated to be launched to provide navigational services to the region.

Note : IRNSS (Indian Regional Navigation Satellite System) is an independent regional navigation satellite system being developed by India. It is designed to provide accurate position information service to users in India as well as the region extending up to 1500 km from its boundary, which is its primary service area. The IRNSS space segment consists of seven satellites, with three satellites in geostationary orbit and four satellites in inclined geosynchronous orbit.

General Introduction to Asia

- > The word 'Asia' is derived from the word 'Asu' (of Hebrew language), which literally means 'the rising sun'.
- > Asia is the largest of all the seven continents of the world.
- > With 44.6 million sq km area, it covers 30% (about one-third) of the land surface of the world.
- > With 4.299 million people, it contains about 60% of the world population and emerges as the most populous continent of the world.
- > This vast continent comprises the greatest diversity in terms of physical features, climate, vegetation, wildlife and people.
- > It has the highest mountain peak on the Earth, Mount Everest (8850 m) and the lowest point, the Dead Sea (396.8 m below sea level).
- > It has the coldest place, Vostok, Antarctica has winter temperature of -89.2°C.
- > Jacobabad in Sindh is the hottest place on the Earth.
- > Mawsynram, near Cherrapunji (India) has the world's highest average rainfall of 11,873 mm. Simultaneously, it has desert areas of central Asia.
- > Asia has the world's deepest fresh water lake, i.e. Baikal Lake (Russia) which is 1741 meters deep.
- > It has the largest delta 'Sunderbans', the most fertile river valleys (Ganga, Indus, Brahmaputra, Yangtze Kiang and Huang-Ho etc) and the extensive barren lands of Baluchistan.
- > It has rich and varied wildlife which is peculiar to this continent.
- > Asia has been the cradle of ancient civilizations like the Mesopotamian Civilization, the Indus Civilization and the Chinese Civilization which sustained in the fertile river valleys of Asia.

- > Asia has the privilege of being the birthplace of major religions of the world—Judaism, Hinduism, Christianity, Islam, Taoism, Shintoism, Jainism, Sikhism, Buddhism and Zoroastrianism etc.
- > Asia wholly lies in the Northern Hemisphere.
- > Latitude : It lies between 10°S to 80°N latitudes, i.e. it spans over 90° of latitudes.
- > Longitude : It lies almost entirely in the Eastern Hemisphere.
- > It extends from 25°E to 170°E. This large longitudinal extent brings about a difference of 11 hours between the local times of the easternmost part and the westernmost part of Asia.
- > Boundaries : The continent is bounded by oceans on three sides—Arctic Ocean in the north, Pacific in the east and the Indian Ocean in the south.
- > In the west, Asia is separated from Europe by the low Yural Mountains, the Yural river and the Caspian Sea. The Red Sea and Suez Canal separate it from Africa.
- > In the north-east, the Bering strait separates it from North America.

Geography of the Indian Subcontinent

Introduction : India, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Nepal, Bhutan, Myanmar and Sri Lanka, collectively constitute the Indian subcontinent.

These six countries are India's closest and nearest neighbours and share a common heritage of history and geography.

Pakistan

Location : Pakistan is our western neighbour. It is bordered by Iran in the west, India in the east the Arabian Sea in the south and Afghanistan in the North.

Latitude : Pakistan lies between 24°N and 37°N latitudes.

Longitude : It lies between longitudes 61°E and 75°E.

Area and composition : Pakistan has an area of about 3,12,685 sq km.

It comprises of West Punjab, Sind, Baluchistan, N.W.F.P. and a few tribal areas.

Physical Divisions of Pakistan : Pakistan may be divided into following four physical divisions :

The Northern and Western Highlands : The Hindukush mountains which extend from the Pamir Knot form a mountain wall in the north of Pakistan. Tirich Mir (7690 m) is the highest peak of the Hindukush.

> The famous Khyber Pass lies in this region.

> Other important mountain ranges are Sulaiman range and Kirthar range.

> These ranges spread in north-south direction.

The Baluchistan Plateau : Situated in the south-west of Pakistan.

> It is a dry and rocky plateau with little vegetation.

The Indus Plain : Without the Indus, Pakistan would have been a complete desert.

> It is a 2700 km long fertile plain in the eastern Pakistan made by rich alluvial soil brought down by Indus and its five tributaries.

216

The Thar Desert: It is located in south-eastern part of Pakistan and continues into India.

Climate of Pakistan: The climate of Pakistan is one of the extremes.

- > It is very hot in summer and very cold in winter.
- > It gets little rainfall in summer.
- > The average rainfall in Pakistan is less than 25 cm in a year.
- > There is some rainfall in winter brought by the Western disturbances coming from the Mediterranean Sea.

Natural Vegetation

- > In plateaus, plains and desert mostly bushes, shrubs and coarse grasses are found.
- > In mountainous area in the north and west temperate deciduous trees, coniferous trees and alpine vegetation is found.

Language-Urdu, **Currency**-Rupee, **Religion**-Islam.

Economic Development

Agriculture: Rainfall in this agricultural country is very low and unreliable.

- > Rivers and a developed network of canals make irrigation possible.
- > Pakistan is known as the 'Land of Canals'. Mangla Dam and Tarbela Dam in Pakistan are very famous.
- > Wheat, millets, cotton, rice, sugarcane and oil seeds are cultivated.

Animal Rearing: People of Pakistan rear milch cattle.

- > Drought animals are also reared. Sheep and goats are reared in dry Baluchistan Plateau and the mountainous areas.

Mining: Mineral position of Pakistan is not satisfactory.

- > It has some deposits of petroleum, coal, iron and copper.
- > The gas fields of Sui is important.
- > Salt deposits near Khewra are well known.

Industrial Development: Industrialy Pakistan is now well developed.

Cotton textile, woolen textile, chemicals, cement, sugar, paper, etc are important industries of Pakistan. Carpets, embroidered goods, pottery and handicrafts are also manufactured here.

Population: Pakistan has a population of 182,142,594 (2013) excluding 4 million residents of Pakistan ruled Jammu and Kashmir and 01 million Afghan refugees.

- > The density of population is 236 persons per sq km. (in 2013).
- > 90% people are Muslims, who follow Islam. Urdu is the state language.

Bangladesh

Bangladesh is our eastern neighbouring country.

Location: It is bordered on the north, west and east by India and on the south by the Bay of Bengal.

Latitude: Bangladesh lies between latitudes 21°N and 26°30'N. The Tropic of Cancer passes through the middle of it.

Longitude: It lies between longitudes 88°E and 92°30'E.

Physical Division of Bangladesh: Nearly whole of Bangladesh lies in the largest delta of the world.

It is a vast flat alluvial plain. It is a land of big rivers, lakes, swamps and marshes. A large part of Bangladesh is flooded every year during rainy season.

It has an area of 1,47,570 sq km.

The Jamuna (Brahmaputra), Padma (Ganga) and Meghna are the important rivers.

A small hilly area in the south-east forms the Chittagong Hill tract.

Climate

- > It has hot and humid climate.
- > Rainfall varies from 250 to 40 cm. It has distinct dry and rainy season.
- > In early summer, Bangladesh experiences cyclone storms.

Natural Vegetation

- > In the fringes of delta Mangrove forests are found.
- > Sundari and bamboo trees are found in these Sunderbans.

Agriculture

- > Because of fertile alluvial soil and abundant water supply, rice is the main crop of Bangladesh as it covers 85% of the cultivated area.
- > Jute the main cash crop.
- > Tea plantations are found in some areas in the north.
- > Sugarcane, cotton and tobacco are also grown.

Animal Rearing

- > Most of the animals reared in Bangladesh work as beasts of burden.
- > Bangladesh has become a leading supplier of animal hides and skins.

Fishing

- > Large number of rivers and nearness to the sea make fishing an important activity in Bangladesh.

Language-Bangla, **Currency**-Taka, **Religion**-Islam

Minerals

- > Bangladesh is not rich in mineral resources.
- > Coal, natural gas and oil are mined in a small quantity.

Industries

- > The important industries of Bangladesh include jute and cotton textiles, cement, fertilizers, sugar, paper, glass etc.

Population, Language and Religion

- > The population of Bangladesh is about 156,594,962 (2013).

- > The density of population here is 1,203 persons per sq km. (in 2013)

- > Bengali is the official language of Bangladesh.

- > Most of the people follow Islam.

- > Dhaka, Chittagong, Khulna and Narayanganj are some of the important cities of Bangladesh.

Countries with Their Capital & Currency

Country	Capital	Currency
Afghanistan	Kabul	Afghani
Algeria	Algiers	Dinar
Angola	Luanda	Kwanza
Argentina	Buenos Aires	Argentino Sentavos
Australia	Canberra	Australian Dollar
Austria	Vienna	Shilling
Azerbaijan	Baku	Manat
Bahrain	Manama	Bahrain Dinar
Bangladesh	Dhaka	Taka
Belgium	Brussels	Euro
Belarus	Minsk	Belaros Rubbe
Bhutan	Thimphu	Nugultram
Brazil	Brasilia	Real (BRC)
Brunei	Bander Seri Begawan	Brunei Dollar or Ringgit
Bulgaria	Sofia	Lev
Cambodia	Phnom Penh	Rial
Canada	Ottawa	Dollar
China, Peoples Republic	Beijing	Yuan
Cuba	Havana	Peso
Cyprus	Nicosia	Cyprus Pound
Denmark	Copenhagen	Danish Krone
Egypt	Cairo	Pound
Ethiopia	Adis Ababa	Birr
Fiji	Suva	Dollar
Finland	Helsinki	Euro
France	Paris	Euro
Germany	Berlin	Euro
Ghana	Accra	Euro
Greece	Athens	Cedi
Guatemala	Guatemala City	Euro
Hong Kong	Victoria	Quetzal
Hungary	Budapest	Dollar
Iceland	Reykjavik	Florint
India	New Delhi	Krona
Indonesia	Jakarta	Rupee
Iran	Teheran	Rupiah
Iraq	Baghdad	Rial
Ireland	Dublin	Iraqi Dinar
		Euro

Country	Capital	Currency
Israel	Jerusalem	New Shekel
Italy	Rome	Euro
Jamaica	Kingston	Dollar
Japan	Tokyo	Yen
Jordan	Amman	Dinar
Kazakhstan	Almati	Ruble
Kirghizstan	Bishkek	Ruble
Korea (North)	Pyongyang	Won
Korea (South)	Seoul	Won
Kuwait	Kuwait	Dinar
Laos	Vientiane	New Kiplao
Lebanon	Beirut	Pound
Libya	Tripoli	Dinar
Luxembourg	Luxembourg Ville	Euro
Macau	Macau	Pataka
Malaysia	Kuala Lumpur	Ringgit
Maldives, Republic of	Male	Rufia
Mauritius	Port Luis	Rupee
Mexico	Mexico City	New Peso
Mongolia	Ulan Bator	Tugrik
Myanmar	Naypyidaw	Kyat
Mozambique	Maputo	Metical
Nauru	Yaren	Dollar
Nepal	Kathmandu	Rupee
Netherlands	Amsterdam	Euro
New Zealand	Wellington	Dollar
Nigeria	Abuja	Naira
Norway	Oslo	Kroner
Oman	Muscat	Rial
Pakistan	Islamabad	Rupee
Panama	Panama City	Balboa
Philippines	Manila	Peso
Poland	Warsao	Zloty
Portugal	Lisbon	Euro
Qatar	Doha	Riyal
Romania	Bucharest	Lau
Russia	Moscow	Rouble
Saudi Arabia	Riyadh	Riyal
Senegal	Dakar	CFA Franc